ELEMENTARY
NEW TESTAMENT
GREEK

Owen Ewald

Elementary New Testament Greek

Owen Ewald

Dear Students,

This is a textbook that will help you to read the New Testament in Greek. If it seems more "readerly" and less conversational than other language textbooks you have read, that is not an oversight. Still, there are periodic nods to conversation, such as model conversations or suggested topics.

Dear Instructors,

Please see Appendix A for some notes about how to use this book in different academic calendars.

Contents

Chapter 1: Alphabet, words, and names; Nominal Sentences

Alphabet

The first thing you need to learn is the Alphabet. Fun Fact: the word "alphabet" comes from the first two letters of the Greek alphabet, alpha and beta. Also, you need to learn the letters in order so that you can look up words in a dictionary. Use Capital letters mainly to start names or the first word in a sentence or quotation, and lower-case letters everywhere else. Originally the Greeks wrote in ALL CAPS, but the lower-case letters were invented around 1000 AD as a kind of cursive to speed up copying manuscripts.

Letter: Capital, lower-case	Letter name	Pronunciation	Tips and Tricks
Α, α	Alpha	"ah" as in "flaw", Vowel	"Broader" than omicron, open your mouth wider towards the sides of your mouth
Β, β	Beta	"v" as in "vet", Voiced	
Γ, γ	Gamma	Before most vowels, "gh"; before "e"and "i" sounds, "y" as in "yet", Voiced	γαρ = "ghar" γε = "yeh" Never like "y" in "fly"
Δ, δ	Delta	"th" as in "the", Voiced	
Ε, ε	Epsilon	"e" as in "pet", Vowel	
Ζ, ζ	Zeta	"z" as in "zip", Voiced	
Η, η	Eta	"ee" as in "free", Vowel	Same as Iota and Upsilon
Θ, θ	Theta	"th" as in "thigh", De-voiced	
Ι, ι	Iota	"ee" as in "free", Vowel	Same as Eta and Upsilon; when it is written extra-small underneath another vowel, it is called "subscript" and not pronounced: ᾳ = "ah," ῃ = "ee"
Κ, κ	Kappa	"k" as in "kick", De-voiced	
Λ, λ	Labda	"l" as in "lane", Voiced	
Μ, μ	Mu	"m" as in "met", Voiced	
Ν, ν	Nu	"n" as in "name", Voiced	The knights who say "Nee!"
Ξ, ξ	Xi	"x" as in "fox", De-voiced	Can start a word, like ξιφος = "sword"
Ο, ο	Omicron	"o" as in "hot", Vowel	"Narrower" than Alpha, letter shape comes from mouth shape
Π, π	Pi	"p" as in "pit", De-voiced	Aspirate (breathe out) as little as possible
Ρ, ρ	Rho	"r" as in"burro", Voiced	Roll the "r" if you can
Continued	On	Next	Page

Σ, σ/ς	Sigma	"s" as in "sing", De-voiced before vowels or devoiced consonants, BUT "s" as in "rose", Voiced before voiced consonants: β, γ, δ, λ, μ, ν, ρ	lower-case has two forms, ς at the end of a word, σ elsewhere, as in σεισμος = "earthquake"
Τ, τ	Tau	"t" as in "tip", De-voiced	Aspirate (breathe out) as little as possible
Υ, υ	Upsilon	"ee" as in "free", Vowel	Same as Eta and Iota
Φ, φ	Phi	"f" as in "fox", De-voiced	
Χ, χ	Chi	"kh", aspirate (breathe out) while pronouncing, as in German "Ich", De-voiced	Never as in "church"
Ψ, ψ	Psi	"ps" as in "apse", De-voiced	Can start a word, like ψαλμος = "psalm, song"
Ω, ω	Omega	"o" as in "hot", Vowel	Same as omicron

All vowels that begin words need breathing marks, either rough (ἡ) or smooth (ἠ). Pronounce the rough breathing as an "h", even though it does not seem to have been consistently pronounced in Jesus' day, since it will help you distinguish between confusing words. For example, ἡ = "the" with feminine nouns, while ἠ = "or, than." Moreover, the "h" appears in transliteration. For example, Ἡρῳδης is Herod, not Erod. When a rho, ρ, appears at the beginning of a word, it always has a rough breathing: ῥαββι, Ῥαχαηλ. Smooth breathing is not pronounced and indicates the lack of an "h."

Why are so many vowels pronounced the same? These vowels originally had distinct pronunciations, but they became the same over time, as we know from spelling mistakes in written material. These vowels underwent a process called "iotacization," where their pronunciation migrated to the top of the mouth over time. Similar things happened in English, where the spelling reflects an older pronunciation: "The tough coughs as he ploughs the dough."

Exercise: How would you pronounce the following words?

ψαλμος, γη, Σαλωμη, Πετρος, Φιλιππος, ἐργον

Dipthongs ("Two Voices")

Some weird things happen when certain letters are combined. Two vowels together is called a "diphthong," Greek for "two voices." By convention, breathing marks go on the second letter of a diphthong: Αἴγυπτος, αἵρησις, εὔλογω, εὑρισκω

Letter Combination	Names	Pronunciation	Tips and Tricks
αι	Alpha-Iota	"e" as in "pet"	Like Epsilon
αυ	Alpha-Upsilon	"av" before vowel or voiced consonant, "af" before devoiced consonant	Use the easier pronunciation, αὐτος is "af-tos" rather than "av-tos"
ει	Epsilon-Iota	"ee" as in "free"	Like Eta, etc.
ευ	Epsilon-Upsilon	"ev" before vowel or voiced consonant, "ef" before devoiced consonant	Use the easier pronunciation, εὐαγγελιον is "ev-ang-yelion" rather than "ef-ang-yelion"
ηυ	Eta-Upsilon	"eev" before vowel or voiced consonant, "eef" before devoiced consonant	Use the easier pronunciation, ηὐξαμεθα is "eef-xametha" rather than "eev-xametha"
οι	Omicron-Iota	"ee" as in "free"	Like Eta, etc.
ου	Omicron-Upsilon	"oo" as in "too" or "ou" in "rouge"	
υι	Upsilon-Iota	"ee" as in "free"	Like Eta, etc.; six letters and letter-combinations have the same sound
γγ	Gamma-Gamma	"ng-g" or "ng-y" before e or i	First gamma changes to "-ng" sound
γκ	Gamma-Kappa	"ng-k" as in "sink"	
γξ	Gamma-Xi	"ng-x" as in "thanks"	
γχ	Gamma-Chi	"ng-kh"	
μπ	Mu-Pi	"mp" as in "empty" before consonants, "mb" as in "imbue" before vowels	Before vowels, the only way to get a "b" sound in Koine Greek
ντ	Ni-Tau	"nd" as in "and" (always before a vowel)	The only way to get a "d" sound in Koine Greek

If it seems odd to you that six letters and letter-combinations have the same sound, consider the following English sentence: You too knew the true thing to do.

Exercise: How would you pronounce the following words?

ἄγγελος, πεμπω, σου, εἰρηνη, ὀγκος, εὔλογω, υἱος, ἤγγικα, αὔριον, αὐτο, ηὐαγγελισαμεθα

Punctuation. Greek has a lot less punctuation than English, and punctuation was not original to the New Testament.

Mark	Name	Function
.	Period	Ends sentence
·	Semicolon	Also called "raised dot", Indicates pause in sentence
;	Question Mark	Ends question
,	Comma	Indicates a unit of meaning, the end of a list item, or that something has been left out.
«»	European Quotation Marks	Indicates where a quotation begins or ends, sometimes replaced by ὅτι at start.

Example: Read the following sentences, and pause after every punctuation mark or combination of punctuation marks.

σχίσμα πάλιν ἐγένετο ἐν τοῖς Ἰουδαίοις, διὰ τοὺς λόγους. ἔλεγον δὲ πολλοὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν, «δαιμονιον ἔχει, καὶ μαίνεται. τί αὐτοῦ ἀκούετε;». ἄλλοι ἔλεγον, «ταῦτα τὰ ῥήματα οὐκ ἔστιν δαιμονιζομένου. μὴ δαιμονιον δύναται τυφλῶν ὀφθαλμους ἀνοῖξαι;». (John 10:19-21)

Nominal Sentences

An easy way to start generating meaningful sentences in Greek is to put nouns next to each other and insert the English words "is" or "are" between them.

Ἰωσηφ ῥαββι. = Joseph is a rabbi.

Ἰακωβ Ἰσραηλ. = Jacob is Israel (Jacob gets the name Israel after wrestling with the angel in Genesis 23)

Ἀβρααμ καὶ Ἰσαακ Ἰσραηλ. = Abraham and Isaac are Israel (they are important ancestors of Israel).

Final Consonants

All Greek words must end in a vowel or the sounds of ν, ρ, ς (nu, rho, or sigma, remember with the memory word NuRSe). This is a sound rule, and not a spelling rule, so ξ and ψ can also end words. Nevertheless, Hebrew words and names can break this rule. If you see a word or name ending in another consonant like δ, it is probably Hebrew or Aramaic.

Vocabulary for Chapter 1

και = and, also, even

ἀμην = truly, really, indeed

Ἀβρααμ = Abraham

Σαρρά = Sarah

Ἰσαακ = Isaac

Ῥεβεκκα = Rebekah

Ἰωσηφ = Joseph

Μαριαμ = Mary

Ἰσραηλ = Israel

Δαυιδ = David

Ἰακωβ/ Ἰακωβος = Jacob in Hebrew Scriptures, James in New Testament

Τρυφωσα = Tryphosa

Φιλιππος = Philip

Σαλωμη = Salome (Feminine of "Solomon")

Πετρος = Peter

ἀποστολος = apostle

ῥαββι = rabbi, teacher

If you need vocabulary in alphabetical order, see Appendix D.

Family Story: Genealogies

The main word you need to know is ἐγεννησε = he fathered, she gave birth to (same word in Greek), δε = and, but, τον/την – ignore this word for now, but we will learn it in the next chapter.

Mini-genealogy of the family in our text: Ἀβρααμ ἐγεννησε τον Ἰσαακ, Σαρρά δε ἐγεννησε τον Ἰσαακ.

Ἰσαὰκ ἐγεννησε τὸν Ἰακωβον, Ῥεβεκκα δε ἐγεννησε τον Ἰακωβ (Jacob, not James). μετα πολλα ἐτη

("after many years"), ἡ Τρυφωσα ἐγεννησε τον Φιλιππον, ὁ δε Ἰακωβος (James, not Jacob) ἐγεννησε τον

Φιλιππον. ἡ Τρυφωσα ἐγεννησε την Σαλωμην, ὁ δε Ἰακωβος ἐγεννησε την Σαλωμην.

Scripture: Genealogy

Here is the beginning of the original genealogy of Jesus from Matthew's Gospel, including accents. All the subjects of ἐγέννησε are men, so "fathered" is its translation. The only woman in these verses is Thamar, but Rahab, Ruth, and Bathsheba appear later.

Ἀβραὰμ ἐγέννησε τὸν Ἰσαάκ· Ἰσαὰκ δὲ ἐγέννησεν τὸν Ἰακώβ· Ἰακὼβ δὲ ἐγέννησε τὸν Ἰούδαν καὶ τοὺς

ἀδελφοὺς αὐτοῦ. Ἰούδας δὲ ἐγέννησε τὸν Φάρες καὶ τὸν Ζάρα ἐκ τῆς Θαμάρ· Φάρες δὲ ἐγέννησε τὸν

Ἐσρώμ· Ἐσρὼμ δὲ ἐγέννησε τὸν Ἀράμ. (Matthew 1:2-3)

Fun exercise: what would your name look like in Greek? Are there sounds in your name that Greek just does not have? What is the closest equivalent?

Typing in Greek

First, get or turn on a Greek Polytonic Keyboard for your computer. The word "Polytonic" is very important for breathing marks and subscripts.

Windows: Greek-Unicode-Keyboard-Input-Windows-10.pdf (ctsfw.edu)

Mac: Typing Greek Letters on the Mac | Ken Martin's Blog (kpmartin.com).

Second, turn on the Greek keyboard. For Windows users, find the Language designator next to the date and time in the lower right corner. Click on "ENG", and use the menu to change the designator to "ΕΛ," for "Ellenike Glossa" = "Greek Language."

Third, practice typing, since the keyboard mapping is not always what you expect. For example, the Y key = upsilon, and the U key = theta, which makes sense only if you look at the capital letters. For Windows, breathing marks are controlled by the quote or ["/'] key; typing SHIFT-["/'] before a vowel gives it a rough breathing, while ["/'] alone gives it a smooth breathing. Accents are a huge pain in the neck and are mostly not taught in this book, but most of them are keys you type with your right pinky finger. SHIFT-[{/[ ] before a vowel will give you a iota-subscript, which is not pronounced, but useful for telling forms apart. You will need to type in Greek for the quizzes, but you will need only breathing marks, not accents.

How would you type these words?

λογος, σεισμος, ἐργον, Ῥεβεκκα, ῥαββι, ἐρρωσο, λεγομεν

Scripture: Lord's Prayer

πάτερ ἡμῶν ὁ ἐν τοῖς οὐρανοῖς,

ἁγιασθήτω τὸ ὄνομά σου,

ἐλθέτω ἡ βασιλεία σου,

γενηθήτω τὸ θέλημά σου,

ὡς ἐν οὐρανῷ καὶ ἐπὶ γῆς.

τὸν ἄρτον ἡμῶν τὸν ἐπιούσιον δὸς ἡμῖν σήμερον,

καὶ ἄφες ἡμῖν τὰ ὀφειλήματα ἡμῶν,

ὡς καὶ ἡμεῖς ἀφήκαμεν τοῖς ὀφειλέταις ἡμῶν,

καὶ μὴ εἰσενέγκῃς ἡμᾶς εἰς πειρασμόν,

ἀλλὰ ῥῦσαι ἡμᾶς ἀπὸ τοῦ πονηροῦ.

Assignment 1

Name:_____

All students: Copying from pages 1-2, write out the small letters of the Greek alphabet in order horizontally twice, with their English pronunciation beneath them, then write the capital letters of the Greek alphabet in order once.

Greek Small	
English	
Greek Small	
English	
Greek capitals	

Write the following Biblical names in Greek with correct breathing; e = epsilon, ē = eta; o = omicron, ō = omega

Mariam _____   Jacōb _____

Routh _____   Abraam _____

Kain _____   Hermōn _____

The illustration at left shows an excerpt from a tenth-century-AD Byzantine manuscript of the Septuagint, the Greek translation of the Hebrew Bible.   Which Greek letters can you pick out? Note that the letters that look like "C"'s are actually "lunate [moon-shaped]" sigmas!

Grad Assignment 1

Graduate students: Write the following Biblical names in Greek with correct breathing

Deborach _____   Issachar _____

Moloch _____   Rachaēl _____

Hērōdēs _____   Toubalkain _____

Graduate students: Identify these Greek letters from a variety of different fonts by their Greek names:

μ_____   ß_____   Ω_____

∂_____   φ_____   ι_____

Assignment 2

Name:_____

All students: A Nominal Sentence is a sentence in which you have to supply a form of the verb "be" to make it make full sense. English cannot really use them, except in pidgin dialects, but Greek and Hebrew feature them all the time. Review vocabulary for Chapter 1, and punctuation.

For example:
Ἰωσηφ ῥαββι. = Joseph rabbi . = Joseph is a rabbi.
Ἰωσηφ ἀμην ῥαββι; = Joseph really rabbi? = Is Joseph really a rabbi?

Translate the following sentences, either Greek into English or English into Greek:

1. Ἀβρααμ ῥαββι;

2. Δαυιδ ἀμην ῥαββι.

3. Πετρος ἀποστολος.

4. Ἀβρααμ Ἰσραηλ. Σαρρα Ἰσραηλ.

5. Ἀβρααμ καὶ Σαρρα Ἰσραηλ.

6. Μαριαμ ῥαββι;

7. Mary is a rabbi.

8. Jacob is really Israel.

9. Are Abraham and Sarah Israel?

10. Is Tryphosa an apostle?

Grad Assignment 2   Name:_____

Graduate students: please translate the following sentences as well, with the aid of the following word:
οὐ, οὐκ (before smooth breathing), οὐχ (before rough breathing) = not

1. Σαλωμη ἀποστολος;

2. Σαλωμη οὐκ ἀποστολος.

3. Δαυιδ Ἰσραηλ;

4. Ἰσραηλ οὐ Δαυιδ.

5. Πετρος οὐχ ῥαββι. Πετρος ἀποστολος.

6. Τρυφωσα Ῥεβεκκα; Τρυφωσα οὐχ Ῥεβεκκα.

7. Is Tryphosa a rabbi?

8. Salome is not Mary.

9. Is Mary an apostle?

10. Are Joseph and Mary Israel?

Assignment 3

Name:_____

All students: Copy the following scripture passage, but make sure to get all the capital letters, breathing marks, and punctuation right. Accents (ά, ὰ, ᾶ) are optional. Τὸν μὲν πρῶτον λόγον ἐποιησάμην περὶ πάντων, ὦ Θεόφιλε, ὧν ἤρξατο Ἰησοῦς ποιεῖν τε καὶ διδάσκειν ἄχρι ἧς ἡμέρας ἐντειλάμενος τοῖς ἀποστόλοις διὰ πνεύματος ἁγίου οὓς ἐξελέξατο ἀνελήμφθη: οἷς καὶ παρέστησεν ἑαυτὸν ζῶντα μετὰ τὸ παθεῖν αὐτὸν ἐν πολλοῖς τεκμηρίοις, δι᾽ ἡμερῶν τεσσεράκοντα ὀπτανόμενος αὐτοῖς καὶ λέγων τὰ περὶ τῆς βασιλείας τοῦ θεοῦ. καὶ συναλιζόμενος παρήγγειλεν αὐτοῖς ἀπὸ Ἱεροσολύμων μὴ χωρίζεσθαι, ἀλλὰ περιμένειν τὴν ἐπαγγελίαν τοῦ πατρὸς ἣν ἠκούσατέ μου: ὅτι Ἰωάννης μὲν ἐβάπτισεν ὕδατι, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐν πνεύματι βαπτισθήσεσθε ἁγίῳ οὐ μετὰ πολλὰς ταύτας ἡμέρας. οἱ μὲν οὖν συνελθόντες ἠρώτων αὐτὸν λέγοντες Κύριε, εἰ ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ τούτῳ ἀποκαθιστάνεις τὴν βασιλείαν τῷ Ἰσραήλ;

Grad Assignment 3

Name:_____

Graduate students: please copy the following passage as well. Παυλος δοῦλος Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ, κλητὸς ἀπόστολος, ἀφωρισμένος εἰς εὐαγγέλιον θεοῦ ὃ προεπηγγείλατο διὰ τῶν προφητῶν αὐτοῦ ἐν γραφαῖς ἁγίαις περὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ, τοῦ γενομένου ἐκ σπέρματος Δαυὶδ κατὰ σάρκα, τοῦ ὁρισθέντος υἱοῦ θεοῦ ἐν δυνάμει κατὰ πνεῦμα ἁγιωσύνης ἐξ ἀναστάσεως νεκρῶν, Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν, δι᾿ οὗ ἐλάβομεν χάριν καὶ ἀποστολὴν εἰς ὑπακοὴν πίστεως ἐν πᾶσιν τοῖς ἔθνεσιν ὑπὲρ τοῦ ὀνόματος αὐτοῦ, ἐν οἷς ἐστὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς κλητοὶ Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ, πᾶσιν τοῖς οὖσιν ἐν Ῥώμῃ ἀγαπητοῖς θεοῦ, κλητοῖς ἁγίοις: χάρις ὑμῖν καὶ εἰρήνη ἀπὸ θεοῦ πατρὸς ἡμῶν καὶ κυρίου Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ.

Something to ponder: What words do these two passages have in common?

Chapter 2: Verbs and basic clauses; Contract Verbs; the Definite Article ("the"); Negation

Subject, Verb, and Direct Object

Important terms for this chapter will be Subject, Verb, and Direct Object. In English, the Verb is the Action or Equivalency in the sentence. Examples, with Verb in **boldface**: Gina **throws** the ball. Gina **is** a baseball player.

The Subject either performs the Action of the verb or is defined in the Equivalency.

Examples, with Subject in **boldface**: **Gina** throws the ball. **Gina** is a baseball player.

The Direct Object receives the Action of the verb.

Example, with Direct Object in **boldface**: Gina throws **the ball**.

Are there other kinds of Objects? Yes, but right now, the only other one we will see is the Internal Object, mainly with the verb "teach." In the following example, the Internal Object in **boldface** shows what you are teaching, as an add-on to the verb: Gina teaches Sally **baseball**. "Sally" is the Direct Object of "teaches."

Verbs

Verbs have five characteristics, Person, Number, Tense, Mood, and Voice. Person is who is the Subject of the Verb: the speaker or a group including the speaker (1st person), the addressee or addressees (2nd Person), or someone else or other people (3rd person). Number is how many in the Subject, 1 person or 2 or more people. English shows Person and number mostly by Pronouns:

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	I	We
2nd	You (singular)	You (plural)
3rd	He, she, it, they (sing.)[1]	They (plural)

However, the examples above, "Gina **teaches** Sally baseball" and "Gina **throws** the ball", have English Verbs with personal endings, -es/-s, that both show 3rd Person Singular. Watch what happens to these verbs when we switch to 3rd Person Plural: "Gina and Sally **teach** the girls baseball." "Gina and Sally **throw** the ball to one another." The endings are gone!

Tense in English and Greek is Time plus Aspect. Time can be Past, Present, or Future, while Aspect can be Progressive/Repeated, Simple, or Completed/Stative.

English: I release (Present Time, Simple Aspect), I am releasing (Present Time, Progressive Aspect), I will release (Future Time, Simple Aspect), I was releasing (Past Time, Progressive Aspect), I have released (Present Time, Completed Aspect), I had released (Past Time, Completed Aspect). There are actually

---

[1] The use of "they" to refer to one person in English is older than Shakespeare.

fifteen tenses in English (see Appendix A), but only six in Greek: Present, Imperfect, Future, Aorist, Perfect, and Pluperfect.

Greek: λύω = I release, I am releasing (Present Tense, Simple or Progressive Aspect) ←This is the only important tense for now

Mood does not refer to an emotional state, but to how much of a fact a verb is. The Indicative Mood shows facts, while the Imperative Mood shows commands. Why aren't commands facts? Because not everyone obeys commands. The Infinitive Mood is the "unlimited" form of the verb, shown in English with "to ---," as in "to release" or "to speak." Depending on your cultural frame of reference, it is the Hamlet mood, "**to be** or not **to be**" or the Star Trek mood, "**to** boldly **go** where no one has gone before." The Subjunctive Mood shows goals or polite commands, while the Optative mood can show wishes or potentials. The Participle Mood is a weird one, because Participles are hybrids of Adjectives and Verbs— they describe a noun, but also contain an action or equivalency; Participles are often, but not always, facts.

Voice refers to the relationship among the Subject, the Verb, and the Object. A Verb in the Active Voice shows the Subject performing the Action of the Verb on the Object, and all the Verbs we see until Chapter 8 will be Active.

Looking Ahead: The Middle voice shows the Subject performing the Action of the Verb, but the relationship with the Object is trickier. Sometimes, the Subject and the Object are the same, as when you wash your own body or clothe yourself, the Reflexive use. Sometimes, there is no Object, and the Verb is Intransitive, like "I go". Sometimes, the Subject causes something to happen to the Object, but not directly, "I have my son educated" (i.e. by a tutor or paidagogos), the Causative. Sometimes, Subject and Object change places: "We discussed with one another", the Reciprocal use. The Passive Voice is simpler. The Subject receives the Action of the Verb, and the Agent may or may not be specified. Example: The ball **is thrown**. "ball" is the Subject, "is thrown" is the Passive Verb. The ball **is thrown** by Gina. "ball" is the Subject, "is thrown" is the Passive Verb, and "Gina" is the Agent. Confusingly, in Greek, the Middle and Passive look alike in certain tenses (Present, Imperfect, and Perfect, and Pluperfect).

This chapter will focus on the Present Indicative Active of Verbs for all Persons and Numbers. To generate all these forms, lop off the –ω of the form given in the Vocabulary and add the Personal Endings of the Present Indicative Active.

Verbs: Personal Endings of the Present Indicative Active

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	-ω	-ομεν
2nd	-εις	-ετε
3rd	-ει	-ουσι(ν)

So for ἄγω = "I bring," here are all the Persons and Numbers that could bring anything in the Present Indicative Active. How does the pronunciation of gamma (γ) change across the forms?

Personal Endings of the Present Indicative Active:
Example verb

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	ἀγω = I bring, am bringing	ἀγομεν = we bring, are bringing
2nd	ἀγεις = you (sing.) bring, are bringing	ἀγετε = you (pl.) bring, are bringing
3rd	ἀγει = he, she, it brings, is bringing / they (sing.) bring, are bringing	ἀγουσι(ν) = they (pl.) bring, are bringing

The parentheses around the nu in the 3rd Person Plural show a Moveable Nu which is only present before vowels or a punctuation mark: ἀγουσιν οἱ ἀγγελοι. οἱ ἀγγελοι ἀγουσιν; ἀγουσι τον λογον.

Exercise: What do the following forms mean?

λυω, διδασκουσιν, ἀκουομεν, ἐχει, βλεπετε, λαμβανεις

Exercise: How would you say the following in Greek?

You (pl.) are releasing, we teach, you (sing). are hearing, they have, she is watching, I take

Epsilon-Contract Verbs

Some verbs are epsilon-Contract Verbs. They have an epsilon in the stem, which creates contractions with the Personal Endings to avoid having too many vowels in a row. You can recognize epsilon-Contract Verbs because they end in –εω in the Vocabulary list.

Epsilon Contract Rules:
ε+ο = ου
ε+ε = ει
ε+η,ω, or diphthong = ε vanishes

Contract Verbs: Personal Endings of the Present Indicative Active

Person	Singular	Plural
1st	ε- + -ω = -ω	ε- + -ομεν = -ουμεν
2nd	ε- + -εις = -εις	ε- + -ετε = -ειτε
3rd	ε- + -ει = -ει	ε- + -ουσι(ν) = -ουσι(ν)

For example, here is what happens with λαλεω = I talk, speak. The form after the arrow is what you will see and write, but the form before the arrow is the uncontracted form that explains the usual form.

	Greek Form	Translation	Greek Form	Translation
1st	λαλεω → λαλω	I talk, am talking	λαλεομεν → λαλουμεν	we talk, are talking
2nd	λαλεεις → λαλεις	you (sing.) talk, are talking	λαλεετε → λαλειτε	you (pl.) talk, are talking
3rd	λαλεει → λαλει	he, she, it talks, is talking/they (sing.) talk, are talking	λαλεουσι(ν) → λαλουσι(ν)	they (pl.) talk, are talking

Note that the end result looks like the non-Contract Verbs except in the 1st and 2nd plural.

Exercise: What do these words mean?

ζητουμεν, τηρουσιν, ποιειτε, καλει, φιλω, λαλεις

Exercise: How would you say the following in Greek?

They are seeking, we keep, he is calling, you (pl.) are speaking, you (sing.) are making, I seek

Fun exercise: create two stacks of cards, one with the Stems of verbs, and with one the Present Active Personal Endings. Take turns drawing one Stem and one Ending from each stack to create a full verb. If the verb is an epsilon-Contract verb, contract the Stem and Ending according to the rules. Say the form aloud, and translate it into English.

Cases: Nominative and Accusative

Greek also uses endings with nouns to show whether a noun is Singular or Plural and how the nouns function in a sentence. These endings are called "case" endings from a Latin word, *casus*, that means "accident" or "situation."

The Nominative Case shows that a noun is the Subject of a sentence, no matter where it occurs. In contrast, English shows that a noun is the Subject by putting it first. In the following examples, all the **boldface** words would be Nominative in Greek.

Gina throws the ball.

The ball is thrown by Gina.

When a Verb shows Equivalency, the defining noun is also in the Nominative Case, a function called the Predicate Nominative. Greek can put two Nominative nouns together to create a complete sentence, a Nominal Sentence, whereas English needs a Linking Verb like "is" or "are." In the following example, all the **boldface** words would be Nominative in Greek.

Gina is a **baseball player**.

The Accusative Case shows that a noun is the Direct Object, or rarely, the Internal Object. In the following examples, all the **boldface** words would be Accusative in Greek.

Gina throws **the ball**.

Gina teaches **Sally baseball**.

To change the case endings on nouns to show functions, find the noun in the vocabulary and lop off its Nominative Singular ending to get the stem, then add the right ending to the stem. For now, let's focus on one set of Noun endings, Masculine Singular Nouns in –os, also known as the Second Declension.

Nouns: Case Endings for the Second Declension Masculine	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-ος	-οι
Accusative	-ον	-ους

Take one noun from the Vocabulary, ἄγγελος, lop off -ος, and add the different endings, and you get:

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ἄγγελος	ἄγγελοι
Accusative	ἄγγελον	ἄγγελους

Whereas Verbs can stand on their own, Nouns have to appear in sentences, as in the following examples:

ἄγγελος βλεπει. ἄγγελον βλεπω. Ἰακωβος καὶ Φιλιππος ἄγγελοι. ἄγγελους βλεπω.

Fun exercise: the word for pencil or pen is "στυλος" and let's talk about things we can do with/to one or more of these things—see, keep, even throw them.

The Article

In English, the word "the" is the Definite Article, a word to use when you have a particular noun in mind or, sometimes, an abstraction or an entire class of things: "the pencil" (not just any pencil), "the prophet" (the one we were just talking about), or "the good" (the concept of goodness, not a particular good thing). The major difference between English and Greek here is that English does not use the definite article with names, but Greek does, because we have a particular person in mind.

ὁ ἄγγελος = "the messenger", ὁ κοσμος = "the world", το πονηρον = "the evil," "evilness," "the concept of evil"

ὁ Ἰακωβος = "James", not "the James", ἡ Τρυφωσα = Tryphosa, not "the Tryphosa", ὁ θεος = God

The Definite Article has cases, too, and the case, number, and gender matches the noun they modify or specify.

Article: Forms used with Masculine Nouns	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ὁ	οἱ
Accusative	τον	τους

So if you see a particular messenger, you say τον ἄγγελον βλεπω, NOT just ἄγγελον βλεπω. Remember to use the article with names, and some names show our case endings: ὁ Ἰακωβος, τον Ἰακωβον. Other names do not, so the article is really important to know what the situation is with the person.

Exercise: Which forms are Subject, and which is the Direct Object? ὁ Ἀβρααμ τον Ἀβρααμ

English has Definite and Indefinite articles, "the" and "a/an", respectively, but Greek only has Definite Articles. So Greek words without definite articles sometimes need to be translated with "a/an" or even "some" to avoid awkward English.

Negatives

Greek has two ways of negating words and ideas, the words οὐ and μη. Greek uses οὐ to negate facts, and μη to negate non-facts. We will use οὐ with Indicative Verbs, and μη with other Moods later in the book. οὐ also changes forms depending on the following word.

Before a consonant or punctuation mark	οὐ	οὐ βλεπει
Before a vowel with smooth breathing	οὐκ	οὐκ ἀκουομεν
Before a vowel with rough breathing	οὐχ	οὐχ ὁ Ἀβρααμ

Fun exercise: Repeat the exercise with στυλος = "pen, pencil, column" since we actually have particular στυλοι in mind! Or add οὐ = "not" to talk about the things we are pointedly NOT doing to pens/pencils/columns.

Vocabulary for Chapter 2

One adverb:

οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ = not (for facts)[2]

Lots of Verbs

ἀγω = I lead, bring

ἀκουω = I hear

βαλλω = I throw

βλεπω = I see, watch

διδασκω = I teach, instruct

ἐχω = I have, hold

λαμβανω = I take, receive

λεγω = I speak, talk

λυω = I release, let go

Some Contract Verbs

ζητεω = I seek

καλεω = I call

λαλεω = I speak, talk

ποιεω = I make, do

τηρεω = I keep, preserve

φιλεω = I like, love

Nouns, all Masculine Second Declension: from now on, nouns will have articles to indicate their gender

ἀγγελος, ὁ = messenger

ἀδελφος, ὁ = brother

ἀνθρωπος, ὁ = person, human being (as opposed to animal)

ἀρτος, ὁ = bread

δουλος, ὁ = enslaved person, slave

θεος, ὁ = God, god

---

[2] οὐ before consonants, οὐκ before smooth breathing, οὐχ before rough breathing.

κοσμος, ὁ = world, order

κυριος, ὁ = lord, master

λαος, ὁ = people, nation

λογος, ὁ = word, account, story, order, message

νομος, ὁ = law, custom

οἰκος, ὁ = household, house

οὐρανος, ὁ = heaven, sky

ὀχλος, ὁ = crowd, mob

υἰος, ὁ = son, male descendant

Χριστος, ὁ = Christ, Messiah, Annointed

Family Story: Thursday versus the Sabbath

Again, ignore the following words before names since they are forms of the Article: ὁ, ἡ, τον, την, τα.

ἐστι (it is) πεμπτη (fifth) ἡμερα (day). ὁ Ἰακωβος ἀρτον ποιει. ζητει ὁ Φιλιππος σκυβαλα (garbage) και

ἐξαγει (brings out). ἡ Τρυφωσα την Σαλωμην τον νομον διδασκει. ἀγει ὁ ἀγγελος τον λογον. ὁ ὀχλος

λαλει. ἐστι (it is) τα Σαββατα (the Sabbath), τηρουσιν δε (and, but) τα Σαββατα. ὁ Ἰακωβος ἀρτον οὐ

ποιει. οὐ ζητει ὁ Φιλιππος σκυβαλα (garbage), οὐ δε ἐξαγει (brings out). οὐχ ἡ Τρυφωσα την Σαλωμην

τον νομον διδασκει. οὐκ ἀγει ὁ ἀγγελος τον λογον. ὁ ὀχλος οὐ λαλει.

Scripture: on the Sabbath

Exodus 20:8-10. read without translating. What words do you recognize?

μνήσθητι τὴν ἡμέραν τῶν σαββάτων ἀγιάζειν αὐτήν. ἓξ ἡμέρας ἐργᾷ καὶ ποιήσεις πάντα τὰ ἔργα σου.

τῇ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ τῇ ἑβδόμῃ σάββατα κυρίῳ τῷ θεῷ σου, οὐ ποιήσεις ἐν αὐτῇ πᾶν ἔργον, σὺ καὶ ὁ υἱός σου

καὶ ἡ θυγάτηρ σου ὁ παῖς σου καὶ ἡ παιδίσκη σου ὁ βοῦς σου καὶ τὸ ὑποζύγιόν σου καὶ πᾶν κτῆνός σου

καὶ ὁ προσήλυτος ὁ παροικῶν ἐν σοί.

Assignment 4

Name:_____

All students: Contract and translate the following uncontracted forms of the verb τηρεω = "I keep" following the example of the 1ˢᵗ person singular.

Present Active Indicative	Singular	Plural
1ˢᵗ	τηρεω = τηρω = I keep, I am keeping	τηρεομεν =
2ⁿᵈ	τηρεεις =	τηρεετε =
3ʳᵈ	τηρεει =	τηρεουσιν =

Now write out the following Present Active Indicative forms of the verb λαμβανω = I take, receive and translate them:

Present Active Indicative	Singular	Plural
1ˢᵗ	λαμβανω = I take, I am taking	
2ⁿᵈ		
3ʳᵈ		

Review the verbs in the vocabulary list for this chapter. Translate the following sentences, either Greek into English or English into Greek:

1. ἀκουομεν.

2. λαλειτε;

3. Σαρρα ἀμην διδασκει.

4. Σαλωμη καὶ Τρυφωσα ἀγουσιν.

5. Does Peter watch?

6. Salome really throws.

7. Rebecca and Tryphosa are calling.

8. Are you (singular) listening?

Assignment 5

Name:_____

All students: Write out all the forms we know of "the brother" ὁ ἀδελφος. Include both article & noun.

	Singular	Plural
Nominative		
Accusative		

Review the nouns and verbs from the vocabulary list. From now on, use articles with all names, including "God." Translate the following sentences, either Greek into English or English into Greek:

1. τους ἀδελφους βλεπεις;

2. τον λογον ἀκουομεν.

3. καλει ὁ θεος τον οὐρανον τον οἰκον.

4. ὁ Ἀβρααμ και ὁ Ἰακωβ νομους τηρουσιν;

5. τον ἀρτον ποιει ὁ Δαυιδ.

6. τον ἀρτον και τον υἱον ἀμην ζητουμεν.

7. Does the rabbi teach the laws?

8. I really seek the brothers.

9. Do you (plural) see the messenger?

10. The masters untie the enslaved people.

Grad Assignment 5

Name:_____

Graduate students: please translate the following sentences as well with the aid of the following extra words ὄνος, ὁ = donkey, οἰκονδε = homeward

1. τον νομον τηρειτε;

2. ὁ Ἰωσηφ τους ἀδελφους φιλει.

3. καλει ὁ θεος τον υἱον τον Χριστον.

4. δουλοι τον ἀρτον ποιουσι και ἀγουσι τον ὀνον.

5. ὁ θεος τον κοσμον φιλει, και ὁ κοσμος τον θεον οὐ βλεπει.

6. ὁ Χριστος λυει τον ὀνον. τον ὀνον ἀγεις;

7. Does David have bread?

8. Christ is the rabbi, and we seek Christ.

9. The donkey throws the master, and the slave brings the master homeward.

10. You (pl.) love the word and the messenger.

Assignment 6

Name:_____

All students: Translate the following sentences from Greek to English or from English to Greek.

1. ὁ λαος τους νομους τηρει. _____

2. οἱ ἀνθρωποι ἀρτον ζητουσιν. _____

3. ὁ Δαυιδ ἀμην τον θεον φιλει. _____

4. ἀκουει ὁ Πετρος λογους. _____

5. ὁ θεος τον Ἰωσηφ τηρει. _____

6. οἰκους ποιουμεν. ἀρτον ποιειτε. _____

7. The masters throw bread; the enslaved people receive bread.

    _____

8. Are the brothers enslaved people? Are the brothers masters?

    _____

9. We speak the words, and the people listen.

    _____

10. Are you (pl.) really watching the heavens?

    _____

Grad Assignment 6

Name:_____

Graduate students: please translate the following story from Greek into English with the help of the following words: ἁμαρτανω = I sin; σῳζω = I save; ἀλλα = but, ἡ = "the" for women or feminine nouns.

ὁ θεος τον κοσμον ποιει. ὁ κοσμος τον θεον οὐ βλεπει, ἀλλα ὁ θεος ἁμην τον κοσμον φιλει. ὁ θεος τους

ἀνθρωπους ποιει και φιλει. οἱ ἀνθρωποι ἁμαρτουσιν. ὁ θεος λογον λεγει, και ὁ Ἀβρααμ και ἡ Σαρρα

τον λογον τηρουσιν. ὁ Ἀβρααμ και ἡ Σαρρα λαον ποιουσιν. ὁ Ἰωσηφ τον λαον σῳζει και ἀρτους ἀγει. ὁ

θεος τον Χριστον ἀγει, και ὁ Χριστον τον κοσμον ἁμην σῳζει.

Chapter 3: Cases and Gender

Other Cases: Genitive, Dative, and Vocative

The Genitive usually shows Possession and corresponds to English "of" or apostrophe-s (or s-apostrophe). Which words in the following English sentences would be Genitive in Greek?

We catch Gina's ball. You (pl.) preach the word of God. The sisters' children will be taught here.

The Dative shows the Indirect Object or Beneficiary of an action. It often corresponds to "to" or "for" when used with a Person. It is often used with a Direct Object in the Accusative. Which words in the following English sentences would be Dative in Greek?

You say kind words to us. They make bread for the children. I gave them another chance.

Watch out for confusion of Direct and Indirect Objects, as in this old joke:

Rob: "I'm tired. Call me a taxi." (Here "me" is the Indirect Object, "Call a taxi for me").

Bob: "Okay, Rob, you're A Taxi." (as if "me" is the Direct Object, "Call me [by the name] 'A Taxi'.")

The Vocative is the least-used case, but it is used for Direct Address or calling someone's name. In Greek, it often looks like the Nominative, so it is often marked by the particle ὦ. Which words in the following English sentences would be Vocative in Greek?

Okay, Rob, you're a taxi. Hello, Gina! Holy prophets, what is God saying to you?

Here is the complete diagram of case endings for Masculine nouns of the Second Declension:

Nouns: Case Endings of Second Declension Masculine (complete)

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-ος	-οι
Accusative	-ον	-ους
Genitive	-ου	-ων
Dative	-ῳ	-οις
Vocative	-ε	-οι

Again, for a given noun, take the Vocabulary form, lop off the -ος, and add the endings.

Example Noun: Case Endings of Second Declension Masculine

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	ἀγγελος	ἀγγελοι
Accusative	ἀγγελον	ἀγγελους
Genitive	ἀγγελου	ἀγγελων
Dative	ἀγγελῳ	ἀγγελοις
Vocative	ἀγγελε	ἀγγελοι

Special Uses of the Genitive and Dative

A few verbs seem to take Genitive Objects, but you can see how these evolve.

We hear the words of James. = τους λογους του Ἰακωβου ἀκουομεν.

We hear James. = του Ἰακωβου ἀκουομεν.

A few verbs seem to take Dative Objects, but again, many of them evolved from earlier constructions.

We speak the words to James. = τους λογους τῳ Ἰακωβῳ λεγομεν.

We speak to James. = τῳ Ἰακωβῳ λεγομεν.

We worship God. = We give worship to God. = τῳ θεῳ προσκυνουμεν.

Some are a bit trickier:

We believe Jesus (We give belief to Jesus). = τῳ Ἰησου πιστευομεν.

Another way to think about this verb is that it has an implied "self" in it, "We entrust ourselves to Jesus." See John 2:24, "Jesus was not entrusting himself **to them**." Ἰησοῦς οὐ ἐπίστευεν ἑαυτον **αὐτοις**. The **boldfaced** word is Dative in Greek, and translated "to them."

We follow James. = τῳ Ἰακωβῳ ἀκολουθουμεν.

This verb is usually positive, and perhaps James benefits from having followers.

Gender in Greek

All Greek nouns have a gender, Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter ("neither"). While names correspond to the gender of the person, other nouns are harder to predict. For example, many abstract nouns, like "love" or "beginning" are feminine, while many jobs, like "student" or "messenger," are masculine. Remember that gender is often a matter of convention, so do not read too much into it.

But the reason I bring them up here is that we are learning some Feminine Nouns, which have a pattern of Case endings different from the Masculine nouns. This pattern is sometimes called the First Declension because its endings come earlier in the Greek alphabet than the Masculine endings of the Second Declension.

Feminine First Declension: Eta, Alpha, Mixed

There are three types of Feminine First Declension Nouns, eta-type, alpha-type, and mixed. Eta-type is the most common, and these nouns end in eta (-η) in the Vocabulary. Examples include ἀρχη = beginning, start; ἀγαπη = love (of God and neighbor); ζωη = life

Here are the endings:

Nouns: Case Endings of the First Declension Feminine, eta-type

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-η	-αι
Accusative	-ην	-ας
Genitive	-ης	-ων
Dative	-ῃ	-αις
Vocative	-η	-αι

Here is an example noun, ἀρχη = beginning

Example Noun of 1st Decl. Fem., eta-type	**Singular**	**Plural**
Nominative	ἀρχη	ἀρχαι
Accusative	ἀρχην	ἀρχας
Genitive	ἀρχης	ἀρχων
Dative	ἀρχῃ	ἀρχαις
Vocative	ὠ ἀρχη	ὠ ἀρχαι

The name Σαλωμη also follows this pattern.

Alpha-type only occurs when the Stem ends in epsilon, iota, or rho (ε, ι, ρ), and the Vocabulary Form ends in alpha (-α) for smoother pronunication.

Nouns: Case Endings of the First Declension Feminine, alpha-type

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-α	-αι
Accusative	-αν	-ας
Genitive	-ας	-ων
Dative	-ᾳ	-αις
Vocative	-α	-αι

Example noun: βασιλεια = kingdom

Example Noun of 1st Decl. Fem., alpha-type	Singular	Plural
Nominative	βασιλεια	Βασιλειαι
Accusative	βασιλειαν	Βασιλειας
Genitive	βασιλειας	Βασιλειων
Dative	βασιλεια	Βασιλειαις
Vocative	βασιλεια	Βασιλειαι

Mixed-type nouns are rare, but their stem ends in sigma, xi, or zeta (σ, ξ, ζ), and the Vocabulary form ends in alpha (-α).

Nouns: Case Endings of the First Declension Feminine, mixed-type

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-α	-αι
Accusative	-αν	-ας
Genitive	-ης	-ων
Dative	-ῃ	-αις
Vocative	-α	-αι

Example noun: δοξα = glory

Example Noun of 1st Decl. Fem., mixed type	Singular	Plural
Nominative	δοξα	Δοξαι
Accusative	δοξαν	Δοξας
Genitive	δοξης	Δοξων
Dative	δοξῃ	Δοξαις
Vocative	δοξα	Δοξαι

The name Τρυφωσα also follows this pattern.

We are also learning Neuter Nouns, and they follow a pattern of case endings similar to the Masculine nouns, but their vocabulary forms end in –ον rather than –ος. The pattern is sometimes called the Second Declension Neuter.

Nouns: Case Endings of the Second Declension Neuter

	Singular	Plural
Nominative	-ον	-α
Accusative	-ον	-α
Genitive	-ου	-ων
Dative	-ῳ	-οις
Vocative	-ον	-α

Example noun: τεκνον = child

Example Noun of 2ⁿᵈ Decl. Neuter	Singular	Plural
Nominative	τεκνον	Τεκνα
Accusative	τεκνον	Τεκνα
Genitive	τεκνου	Τεκνων
Dative	τεκνῳ	Τεκνοις
Vocative	ὠ τεκνον	ὠ τεκνα

Special Neuter Plural Rule

Here is an exception to the rule that Subjects and Verbs must have the same number: in other words, usually Singular Subjects have Singular Verbs, and Plural Subjects have Plural Verbs.

Special Neuter Plural Rule: Neuter Plural Subjects have Singular Verbs

Perhaps this rule originated in the fact that neuter nouns sometimes act as collectives:

τα προβατα τῳ κυριῳ ἀκολουθει. = the sheep follow their master.

τα τεκνα ἀρτους ἀγει. = the children bring loaves of bread.

The name "Jesus" in Greek is somewhere between Greek and Hebrew in not having a full Greek declension. Use His Name with the article, but it only has 3 different endings:

Nouns: Declension of Jesus	Singular
Nominative	ὁ Ἰησους
Accusative	τον Ἰησουν
Genitive	του Ἰησου
Dative	τῳ Ἰησου
Vocative	ὠ Ἰησου

Article (complete declension)

Let's take one more look at the Article, since we need to use it for nouns of all Genders. The Article agrees with the noun it modifies or specifies in Gender, Number, and Case. This does not mean that the endings will be the same (see ὁ Ἰησους above). Even though there are three types of Feminine Nouns, the Article is consistently eta-type.

Article: Declension of the Article (complete), can be used with ANY noun

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nom.	ὁ	ἡ	το	οἱ	αἱ	Τα
Acc.	τον	την	το	τους	τας	Τα
Gen.	του	της	του	των	των	Των
Dat.	τῳ	τη	τῳ	τοις	ταις	Τοις
Voc.	ὠ	ὠ	ὠ	ὠ	ὠ	ὠ

The article will also appear in the Vocabulary to mark the genders of nouns. ὁ = Masculine, ἡ = Feminine, το = Neuter. Memorize the Article Declension, since we will use it a lot, and it will help you learn new declensions. You can also use it to reinforce what we have already learned, as below.

Declensions with Articles; -- = "put the stem of a noun from this declension here"

	2nd Declension Masculine Endings with Articles		1st Declension Feminine, Alpha-type (could also do other types), Endings with Articles		2nd Declension Neuter Endings with Articles	
	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
Nom.	ὁ --ος	οἱ --οι	ἡ --α	αἱ --αι	το --ον	τα --α
Acc.	τον --ον	τους --ους	την --αν	τας --ας	το --ον	τα --α
Gen.	του --ου	των --ων	της --ας	των --ων	του --ου	των --ων
Dat.	τῳ --ῳ	τοις --οις	τη --ᾳ	ταις --αις	τῳ --ῳ	τοις --οις
Voc.	ὠ --ε	ὠ --οι	ὠ --α	ὠ --αι	ὠ --ον	ὠ --α

3rd Person Pronoun

Like the article, the Third Person Pronoun appears in all three Genders, both Numbers, and in every case but the Vocative.

αὐτος, αὐτη, αὐτο = he, she, it, they; -self; the same

Pronoun: Declension of the Pronoun αὐτος (complete)

	Masc.Sing.	Fem.Sing.	Neut.Sing.	Masc.Pl.	Fem.Pl	Neut.Pl.
Nom.	αὐτος	αὐτη	αὐτο	αὐτοι	αὐται	αὐτα
Acc.	αὐτον	αὐτην	αὐτο	αὐτους	αὐτας	αὐτα
Gen.	αὐτου	αὐτης	αὐτου	αὐτων	αὐτων	αὐτων
Dat.	αὐτῳ	αὐτη	αὐτῳ	αὐτοις	αὐταις	αὐτοις

It has three different uses:

1. If you get tired of repeating the same noun or name, you can use αὐτος as a substitute, usually not in the Nominative Case. Example: την Μαριαν βλεπομεν, και **αὐτη** λεγομεν. = We see Mary, and we speak **to her**. The gender of the pronoun follows the gender of the antecedent or referent. For example, since a house is feminine, you would refer to it with a Feminine pronoun in Greek. ὁ Φιλιππος οἰκιαν ἐχει. **αὐτην** βλεπομεν. = Philip has a house. We see **it**.

2. If you see αὐτος in the Nominative, it usually emphasizes the Subject with some form ending in –self. Example: οἱ ἀγγελοι **αὐτοι** τῳ Φιλιππῳ λεγουσιν. = The messengers **themselves** are speaking to Philip. Question: How do we know that the messengers are not speaking **to themselves**?

3. If you see αὐτος preceded by the article, that is, in Attributive Position, translate it as "the same". Weirdly, most of the words for "same" in European languages are preceded by the article if possible: the same, la même, la misma, la stessa. Example: το αὐτο ἱερον βλεπομεν; = Are we seeing the same temple? την αὐτην γαμεις; = Are you (sing.) marrying the same woman?

What would it look like if all three uses were in the same sentence?

ὁ ἀποστολος αὐτος τον αὐτον λογον αὐτη λεγει.

Fun exercise: Try to write a Greek sentence asserting that two things are "the same," and figure out what the gender of αὐτος is. When nouns have different genders but are modified by the same adjective, the hierarchy is Neuter > Masculine > Feminine. So a Neuter and a Feminine noun would be modified by a Neuter Adjective, and the verb would be singular to follow the Neuter Plural Rule.

Vocabulary for Chapter 3

Feminine Nouns of the First Declension, eta-type

ἀγαπη, ἡ = love

ἀδελφη, ἡ = sister

ἀρχη, ἡ = beginning

γη, ἡ = earth, land, soil

ζωη, ἡ = life

φωνη, ἡ = voice, sound

ψυχη, ἡ = soul, life-breath

Feminine Nouns of the First Declension, alpha-type

ἀμαρτια, ἡ = sin, mistake

βασιλεια, ἡ = kingdom

ἐκκλησια, ἡ = assembly, church (as organization)

ἡμερα, ἡ = day

καρδια, ἡ = heart

Μαρια/Μαριαμ, ἡ = Mary/Miriam

οἰκια, ἡ = house

ὡρα, ἡ = hour, season

Feminine Nouns of the First Declensions, mixed-type

δοξα, ἡ = glory, splendor

θαλασσα, ἡ = sea, lake

τραπεζα, ἡ = table, meal

Neuter Nouns of the Second Declension

βιβλιον, το = book, scroll

δαιμονιον, το = demon, spirit

ἐργον, το = work, task

εὐαγγελιον, το = good news, gospel

ἱερον, το = temple

πλοιον, το = boat, skiff

προσωπον, το = face, identity

σαββατον, το = Sabbath (often plural because it wraps from one day to another)

σημειον, το = sign, signal, miracle

τεκνον, το = child

Third-Person Pronoun

αὐτος, αὐτη, αὐτο = he, she, it, they; -self; the same

A few more names

Ἰησους, ὁ = Jesus

Παυλος, ὁ = Paul

Πετρος, ὁ = Peter

Three more verbs

ἀκολουθεω = I follow + Dative

γαμεω = I marry

πιστευω = I believe + Dat. or with the Preposition εἰς followed by an Accusative

Family Story: Marriage Discussion
James and Tryphosa discuss whom their son Philip should marry

Ἰακωβος --- χαιρε (hello), ὦ Τρυφωσα.

Τρυφωσα --- χαιρε (hello), ὦ Ἰακωβε.

Ἰακωβος --- ὁ Φιλιππος πεφυκεν (has grown up). τίνα (whom) γαμει;

Τρυφωσα --- ζητει νυμφην (bride), μητερα (mother, Acc.) τεκνων ἐσομενων (future).

Ἰακωβος --- τίνα (whom) βλεπεις ἱκανην (suitable);

Τρυφωσα --- οὐ νυν (now) βλεπω, ζητω δε.GR

Ἰακωβος --- καλω νυμφην (bride) ἀπο (from) της γης της Μωαβ (Moab), καθως (just like) την Ῥουθ (Ruth);

Τρυφωσα --- οὐχ, αἱ Μωαβιτιδαι (Moabite women) θεοις ἀλλοτριοις (foreign) ἀκολουθουσιν.

Scripture: Ruth and Naomi
Ruth 1:2-5: Read aloud without translating. How many words do you recognize?

καὶ ὄνομα τῳ ἀνδρὶ Ἀβιμελεχ καὶ ὄνομα τη γυναικὶ αὐτοῦ Νωεμιν καὶ ὄνομα τοῖς δυσὶν υἱοῖς αὐτοῦ

Μααλων καὶ Χελαιων Ἐφραθαῖοι ἐκ Βαιθλεεμ τῆς Ιουδα καὶ ἤλθοσαν εἰς ἀγρὸν Μωαβ καὶ ἦσαν ἐκεῖ.

καὶ ἀπέθανεν Ἀβιμελεχ ὁ ἀνὴρ τῆς Νωεμιν καὶ κατελείφθη αὐτὴ καὶ οἱ δύο υἱοὶ αὐτῆς. καὶ ἐλάβοσαν

ἑαυτοῖς γυναῖκας Μωαβίτιδας ὄνομα τη μια Ὀρφα καὶ ὄνομα τη δευτέρᾳ Ῥουθ καὶ κατῳκησαν ἐκεῖ ὡς

δέκα ἔτη. καὶ ἀπέθανον καί γε ἀμφότεροι Μααλων καὶ Χελαιων καὶ κατελείφθη ἡ γυνὴ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς

αὐτης καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν δύο υἱῶν αὐτῆς.

Assignment 7

Name:_____

All students: Translate the following sentences from Greek to English or from English to Greek.

1. We keep the laws of God.

    _____

2. Are you (s.) speaking a message to the people?

    _____

3. ὁ ὄχλος του Χριστου ἀκουει. _____

4. βλεπουσιν οἱ ἀνθρωποι του Ἰσραηλ. _____

5. οἱ νομοι του θεου κυριοι του λαου. _____

6. δουλους των ἀδελφων λυεις; _____

7. τοις ἀγγελοις λογους λεγομεν. _____

8. λαλειτε τῳ Ἰακωβ, και του ῥαββι ἀκουετε;

    _____

9. The master loves the bread of Jacob. _____

10. The brothers make houses for the sons. _____

Grad Assignment 7

Name:_____

Graduate students: please translate the following sentences from Greek to English or from English to Greek, with the aid of the following words: λιθος, ὁ = stone, ποταμος, ὁ = river

1. ὁ Ἀβρααμ του θεου ἀκουει. _____

2. τοις ἀνθρωποις λογους λαλεις; _____

3. οὐ ποιει ὁ ῥαββι τῳ λαῳ ἀρτους. _____

4. ὁ Δαυιδ τον λαον του Ἰσραηλ ἀγει. _____

5. οἱ υἱοι του Ἰακωβ τον Ἰωσηφ οὐ φιλουσιν.

    _____

6. βαλλομεν λιθους του ποταμου. τον οἰκον ποιουμεν.

    _____

7. You (pl.) make bread for the masters. _____

8. The slaves of the rabbi keep the laws. _____

9. We do not throw the stones of the house.

    _____

10. Do they love the words of Jacob and of Abraham?

    _____

Assignment 8

Name:_____

All students: Sort the following unfamiliar nouns into masculine, feminine, or neuter based on their endings by putting them into the boxes below: ζωον = animal, γλωσσα = tongue, language, ἡλιος = sun, ἀνεμος = wind, προβατον = sheep, διακονια = ministry, service, ἀργυριον = silver coin, μνημειον = tomb, κωμη = village, στρατηγος = general, εἰρηνη = peace, ἐχθρος = enemy

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter

All students: Translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. καλει ἡ φωνη του θεου τον Χριστον.

2. τοις βιβλιοις ἀμην πιστευεις;

3. τον λογον του Χριστου ἀκουομεν. [more than one possible translation!]

4. ὠ Πετρε, τον ἀρτον της ζωης λαμβανεις;

5. ὁ λαος τα σημεια βλεπει.

6. διδασκουσιν αἱ ἀδελφαι το εὐαγγελιον τῃ δοξῃ της ἐκκλησιας.

7. We love the face of the earth.

8. Do you (sing.) see the sins of human beings?

9. Paul says to the crowd, "I speak truly." (Capitalize start of quote)

10. Sisters, do you (pl.) seek the temple of the Lord?

Grad Assignment 8

Name:_____

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English

into Greek:

1. ὁ Πετρος την ἀγαπην ἀμην διδασκει.

2. ὠ ἀδελφε και ἀδελφη, τῳ λογῳ του θεου πιστευετε;

3. το εὐαγγελιον του κυριου ἀμην ἀκουομεν.

4. βαλλει ἡ θαλασσα το πλοιον του Πετρου.

5. τα δαιμονια το τεκνον ἐχει, και οὐ τον ῥαββι ἐχει.

6. ἀρτον τῃ οἰκιᾳ ποιουμεν. το Σαββατον τηρουμεν;

7. Do you see, Paul, the miracles of God?

8. The churches receive the bread of life.

9. Mary says to the son, "O child, you bring the kingdom of the Lord." (Capitalize start of quote)

10. Do the people love the splendor of the world?

Assignment 9

Name:_____

All students: Translate the underlined words into Greek, using αὐτος, αὐτη, αὐτο.

We have heard the gospel, and we love it. _____

They are speaking to her. _____

You (pl.) like his bread (the bread of him). _____

The sisters hear them (what case?). _____

We see our sister and her house (the house of her). _____

We did the tasks but did not like them (= the tasks). _____

All students: Translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. τῳ Ἰησου πιστευω και αὐτο φιλω.

2. ἐχει τα βιβλια το εὐαγγελιον; [more than one possible translation!]

3. καλει ἡ ἐκκλησια τους ἀνθρωπους.

4. τα δαιμονια τῳ Ἰησου λεγει, «Ὦ υἱε ἀνθρωπου».

5. διδασκουσιν αἱ ἀδελφαι, και αὐταις λαλουμεν.

6. Do you (pl.) do the works of the church?

7. The human beings love sin, and God seeks them.

8. The voice of God says, "Truly, [it is] the day of the Lord." (don't translate the part in brackets [])

9. We make the house for the sisters, and they have it. (what is the gender of "house"?)

Grad Assignment 9

Name:_____

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek with the help of the following vocabulary: ἰατρος, ὀ = doctor, πλεω = I sail

1. ὁ ἰατρος την καρδιαν του τεκνου ἀκουει.

2. ὠ Ἰησου, την βασιλειαν της γης της Ἰσραηλ ἀγεις; [Israel is feminine]

3. αἱ ἀδελφαι ἀρχην των ἐργων ποιουσιν.

4. ποιει ἡ ἀδελφη ἀρτον, και αὑτον φιλουμεν.

5. πλω το πλοιον, και ἡ θαλασσα αὑτο βαλλει.

6. την ὠραν της ἀρχης του εὐαγγελιου βλεπετε;

7. Love keeps the church and leads it. (gender of "church"?)

8. Mary sees the miracle of a child and loves it truly. (gender of "child"?)

9. Paul says to the people , "Jesus is Lord of the earth and of heaven." (Capitalize start of quote)

10. Salome sails the boat, and Jesus speaks to her.

Chapter 4: Prepositions

Prepositions

Prepositions are words that locate nouns in time, space, causality, or reference. English has them, too:

in the tree   around the lake   after sunset   because of rain   about anxiety

The above examples are all prepositional phrases. But frequently, they are used in sentences with potential ambiguity:

Alice saw the boy on the hill with the telescope.

It is pretty clear that the boy is "on the hill," but where is the telescope? Is Alice holding it and using it to see the boy? Is the boy holding it, possibly merely carrying it around? Or is the telescope installed on the hill and possibly coin-operated?

In Greek, prepositions cover a lot of functions that cases do not. Although there is no Greek word for "of", most of the other English prepositions have Greek equivalents. Also, Greek prepositions usually come before the nouns they locate, like English, but also as an exception to the usual flexible word order. Greek prepositions are usually followed by a noun in a particular case, or by different cases for different functions.

Case Used With Preposition	Function 1	Function 2
Accusative	Motion toward	Causation
Genitive	Motion from	Region/circle
Dative	Fixed position	Accompaniment

For example, the preposition ἐν is used only with the Dative Case, but can mean "in," "on," or even "by" or "with," so it can express either function of the Dative, either Function 1 or Function 2. If you know Hebrew, it translates the preposition *be* (בְּ).

Prepositions that take only one case:

Case	Meaning	Example
Accusative	ἀνα + Acc. = up to, up along εἰς + Acc. = into, to προς + Acc. = to, towards	ἀνα το ἱερον = up to the temple εἰς το ἱερον = into the temple προς το ἱερον = towards the temple
Genitive	ἀπο + Gen. = from ἐκ/ἐξ + Gen. = from, out of ἐνωπιον + Gen. = in front of ἐξω + Gen. = outside of	ἀπο του ἱερου = from the temple ἐκ του ἱερου = out of the temple ἐνωπιον του ἱερου = in front of the temple ἐξω του ἱερου = outside of the temple
Genitive, continued	ἑως + Gen. = until προ + Gen. = before (time)	ἑως της ἡμερας = until the day προ της ἡμερας = before the time
Dative	ἐν + Dat. = in, on, by, with συν + Dat. = with, together with	ἐν τῳ ἱερῳ = in the temple συν τοις ἀδελφαις = with the sisters

The preposition δια has two different meanings with two different cases. With the Accusative, it means "because of," but with the Genitive, it means "through," like diameter.

Here is a list of the main prepositions that take two cases:

Case and Meaning	Examples
δια + Acc. = because of **δια + Gen. = through**	δια την ἀγαπην = because of love δια του ἱερου = through the temple
κατα + Acc. = according to **κατα + Gen. = against (as in slander)**	κατα την ἀγαπην = according to love κατα της ἀδελφης = against the sister
μετα + Acc. = after **μετα + Gen. = with (person)**	μετα την ἡμεραν = after the day μετα της ἀδελφης = with the sister
περι + Acc. = around (in space) **περι + Gen. = about (topic), concerning**	περι το ἱερον = around the temple περι της ἀγαπης = about love, concerning love
ὑπερ + Acc. = over **ὑπερ + Gen. = on behalf of**	ὑπερ το ἱερον = over the temple ὑπερ της ἀγαπης = on behalf of love
ὑπο + Acc. = under **ὑπο + Gen. = by (person)**	ὑπο το ἱερον = under the temple ὑπο της ἀδελφης = by the sister

Do you notice any patterns for Accusative uses versus Genitive uses?

Finally, the prepositions ἐπι, παρα, and προς have three different meanings with three different cases. Where do you see the different case functions?

Case	**Meaning**	**Examples**
Accusative	ἐπι + Acc. = onto, against (militarily)	ἐπι την τραπεζαν = onto the table ἐπι τους Ἰουδαιους = against the Judeans
	παρα + Acc. = to the side of	παρα το ἱερον = to the side of the temple
	προς + Acc. = to, toward	προς την οἰκιαν = to the house
Genitive	ἐπι + Gen. = on (region), in the time of	ἐπι της γης = on the earth ἐπι του Παυλου = in the time of Paul
	παρα + Gen. = from the side of	παρα του ἱερου = from the side of the temple
	προς + Gen. = from	προς την οἰκιαν = from the house
Dative	ἐπι + Dat. = in, on, on the basis of	ἐπι τοις οὐρανοις = in the heavens ἐπι τῳ εὐαγγελιῳ = on the basis of the gospel
	παρα + Dat. = at the side of	παρα τῳ ἱερῳ = at the side of the temple
	προς + Dat. = next to	προς τη οἰκια = next to the house

Phonology: prepositions before vowels

Drop last vowel ἀπο, δια, ἐπι, κατα, μετα, παρα, ὑπο

If the vowel starting the next word has a rough breathing, make the additional transformation of adding aspiration to the final consonant: π→φ, τ→θ

Don't drop last vowel: ἐξω, περι, προ

Add sigma before a vowel: ἐκ → ἐκ + ς → ἐξ

Examples: ἀπο + ἀγγελου = ἀπ'ἀγγελου, ἐπι + ἡμερᾳ = ἐφ'ἡμερᾳ, μετα ἀγγελων = μετ' ἀγγελων,

προ ἡμερας = προ ἡμερας, ἐκ + ἀγορας = ἐξ ἀγορας

For a more intuitive explanation of prepositions, see PrepositionsLION.05.htm (biblicalgreek.org).

Instruments and Agents

The Genitive of Agent, "by (a person)" is expressed with the preposition ὑπο + Genitive: ὑπο της Τρυφωσης, ὑπο του Φιλιππου. The Genitive of Agent is most frequent with Passive Voice Verbs, but we will see it other places as well.

The Dative of Instrument, "by/with (a thing)" is expressed by the Dative case without any preposition: λογῳ, ἐργοις

ὁ Ἰησους τα δαιμονια λογοις ἐκβαλλει.

Compound Verbs

Compound Verbs usually consist of a preposition added onto the front of a verb, often with a significant change in meaning.

In English, we see: under + stand = understand, off + load = offload, with + hold = withhold

In Greek, we see

ἐκ + βαλλω = ἐκβαλλω = I throw out, I cast out (demons)

ἀνα + βλεπω = ἀναβλεπω = I see again, I regain my sight

περι + πατεω = περιπατεω = I walk around, I live

προς + κυνεω = προσκυνεω = I worship

ὑπο + ἀγω = ὑπαγω = I depart, leave

Examples: ἐκβαλλομεν ἀναβλεπουσιν περιπατεις   προσκυνω   ὑπαγει ἐκβαλλετε

Note that the prefix will often be repeated as a preposition elsewhere in the sentence, but English does not have to translate both the same way.

Example: τα δαιμονια ἐκ των τεκνων ἐκβαλλω. = I cast the demons out of the children. OR I cast out the demons from the children. NOT I cast out the demons out of the children.

Vocabulary for Chapter 4

Prepositions:

ἀνα + Acc. = up; (as prefix) up, again

ἀπο + Gen. = from, away from

δια + Acc. = because of; + Gen. = through

εἰς + Acc. = into

ἐκ/ἐξ + Gen. = from, out of

ἐν + Dat. = in, on, by, with

ἐνωπιον + Gen = in front of, before (space)

ἐξω + Gen. = outside of

ἐπι + Acc. = upon; + Gen. = on, in (region), in the time of; + Dat. = in, on, on the basis of

ἑως + Gen. = until

κατα + Acc. = according to; + Gen. = against

μετα + Acc. = after; + Gen. = with (person)

παρα + Acc. = to the side of; + Gen. = from the side of; + Dat. = at the side of

περι + Acc. = around (place); + Gen. = about (topic), concerning

προ + Gen. = before (time)

προς + Acc. = to, toward; + Gen. = from; + Dat. = next to

συν + Dat. = with (person), together with

ὑπερ + Acc. = over; + Gen. = on behalf of

ὑπο + Acc. = under; + Gen = by (person)

Verbs, including Compound Verbs

ἀνα-βλέπω = I see again, I regain my eyesight; (rarely) I look up

ἀπο-βλεπω = I look away

ἀπο-λυω = I divorce, I let go

ἐκ-βαλλω = I cast out (often demons)

ἐπι-καλεω = I call upon

κατ-οικεω = I dwell in, I inhabit

παρα-καλεω = I encourage, comfort

παρα-λαμβανω = I take, receive, recruit

περι-πατεω = I walk, live

προσ-κυνεω = I worship + Dative

συν-αγω = I gather, assemble

ὑπ-αγω = I depart, leave

Two nouns we need for the Story

ἀγορα, ἡ = marketplace

πιθηκος, ὁ = monkey

Family Story: Salome and the Monkey

ἡ Σαλωμη εἰς ἀγοραν περιπατει, ἐκει (there) δε (and) πιθηκον βλεπει. ὁ κυριος ψαλμον (song) αὐλῳ (flute) ἀγει, ὁ δε πιθηκος χορευει (dances). ὁ πιθηκος τελει (stops), και ἀργυρια (coins) ἀπο των ἀνθρωπων ἐν τῃ ἀγορᾳ λαμβανει. ἡ Σαλωμη νομιζει (thinks), «πως (how) ὁ πιθηκος ἀνθρωπους βλεπει;»

Scripture: Baptism of Jesus

Mark 1:9-10; first, read without translating, and then, find words you can recognize.

καὶ ἐγένετο ἐν ἐκείναις ταῖς ἡμέραις, ἦλθεν Ἰησοῦς ἀπὸ Ναζαρὲτ τῆς Γαλιλαίας, καὶ ἐβαπτίσθη εἰς τὸν Ἰορδανην ὑπο Ἰωαννου. καὶ εὐθὺς ἀναβαίνων ἐκ τοῦ ὕδατος εἶδεν σχιζομένους τοὺς οὐρανοὺς καὶ τὸ πνεῦμα ὡς περιστερὰν καταβαῖνον εἰς αὐτόν.

Assignment 10

Name:_____

All students: Translate the underlined phrases into Greek, using the new prepositions in this chapter; please see also the lion cartoon for a more conceptual explanation of case use with prepositions.

1. We are sacrificing <u>in the temple</u>. _____

2. They are traveling <u>together with the sisters</u>. _____

3. The heretics spread slander <u>against Christ</u>. _____

4. <u>In the time of Paul</u>, philosophers seek truth. _____

5. We climbed <u>into the boat</u>. _____

6. We came <u>alongside them</u> in their work. _____

All students: Translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. τα βιβλια ἐν τῃ οἰκιᾳ ἐχομεν.

2. το εὐαγγελιον κατα τον Χριστον λεγεις;

3. δια την δοξαν, ὁ Χριστος κυριος. (Hint: where is the verb?)

4. ποιειτε περι το ἱερον τας οἰκιας.

5. το δαιμονιον ἐκ του τεκνου λυω.

6. συν αὐτῃ την ἀγαπην λαμβανεις.

7. We see her, together with Mary.

8. According to Paul, Jesus is the son of God.

Grad Assignment 10

Name:_____

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek with the help of the following vocabulary: πλεω = I sail, Ῥωμη, ἡ = Rome

1. ὡ Παυλε, πλοιον ἀπο της γης της Ἰσραηλ πλεις;

2. το πλοιον εἰς την Ῥωμην πλω, και διδασκω.

3. τον ῥαββι βλεπομεν ἐν τῳ ἱερῳ, και αὐτῳ λαλουμεν.

4. διδασκει ὁ Ἰησους τον λαον παρα τη θαλασση.

5. ἐπι του Πετρου, αἱ ἀδελφαι ἐν τῳ Χριστῳ σημεια ποιουσιν.

6. ἑως της ἡμερας του κυριου, τους νομους τηρουμεν.

7. After the beginning of the gospel, Christ does miracles.

8. We bring bread for the children, and they like it. [hint: no prepositions]

9. Paul speaks the message of Christ through(out) the kingdom.

10. The children are throwing soil in the house.

Assignment 11

Name:_____

All students: Review the compound verbs, then translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. προς το ἱερον του κυριου περιπατουμεν.

2. πως δαιμονια ἐκβαλλεις; αὐτα ἀπολυεις;

3. ὑπαγω ἐκ της γης του Ἰακωβ.

4. παρακαλει ὁ Παυλος τας ἀδελφας τῳ εὐαγγελιῳ.

5. In the land of Israel (feminine) we worship God.

Grad Assignment 11

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. που = Where? (from the next chapter)

6. ἐνωπιον του Πετρου, ἀναβλεπομεν.

7. ἐπικαλει ἡ Μαρια το τεκνον τον Ἰησουν.

8. τους ἀδελφους παρα τῳ θαλασσῳ οὐ συναγω.

9. τους ἀρτους ὑπερ της ἐκκλησιας παραλαμβανομεν.

10. Where do you (pl.) live? Do you live in the houses of the brothers?

Assignment 12

Name:_____

All students: Just so that your hard-won knowledge is not lost, supply the correct form of the article in front of the following nouns:

_____ ὀχλου   _____ ἱερα   _____ εὐαγγελιῳ

_____ ἀρτον   _____ ψυχης   _____ δοξα (2 possibilities!)

_____ ἀδελφων   _____ οἰκιαις   _____ ἁμαρτιας (2 possibilities!)

All students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. τα πλοια αὐτων παρα τῳ ἱερῳ βλεπομεν.

2.   τῳ θεῳ της Ἰσραηλ συν αὐτῳ οὐ προσκυνειτε.

3. How do they make the bread of the church on behalf of the people?

Grad Assignment 12

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. λεγει ἡ Τρυφωσα τους λογους της ζωης δια της βασιλειας.

2. οἱ κυριοι των δουλων τας οἰκιας αὐτοις οὐ ποιουσιν.

3. κατοικει ὁ Ἰησους μετα της Μαριας ἐν τῳ οἰκῳ.

4. τον ἀρτον της ψυχης φιλουμεν, οὐ τον ἀρτον των ἀνθρωπων.

5. How do you seek God outside the church and outside the household?

Chapter 5: Adjectives; Predicate and Attributive positions

Adjectives

Adjectives are words that describe nouns. English: the **tall** tree, the trees are **tall**.

In Greek, adjectives agree with the nouns they describe in Gender, Number, and Case, just like the Article. The adjectives we will learn soon follow the patterns of endings we already learned for nouns. Masculine adjectives look like λογος, Feminine adjectives look like ἀρχη or βασιλεια depending on their stem, and Neuter adjectives look like πλοιον. Look at the Feminine Singular for a place where the adjective and noun have endings that match but are not identical.

Examples of Noun-Adjective Pairs, arranged by Case, Number, and Gender

	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Sing.	Neut. Pl.
Nom.	λογος ἀγαθος	λογοι ἀγαθοι	ψυχη δικαια	ψυχαι δικαιαι	τεκνον ἁγιον	τεκνα ἁγια
Acc.	λογον ἀγαθον	λογους ἀγαθους	ψυχην δικαιαν	ψυχας δικαιας	τεκνον ἁγιον	τεκνα ἁγια
Gen.	λογου ἀγαθου	λογων ἀγαθων	ψυχης δικαιας	ψυχων δικαιων	τεκνου ἁγιου	τεκνων ἁγιων
Dat.	λογῳ ἀγαθῳ	λογοις ἀγαθοις	ψυχη δικαια	ψυχαις δικαιαις	τεκνῳ ἁγιῳ	τεκνοις ἁγιοις
Voc.	ὠ λογε ἀγαθε	ὠ λογοι ἀγαθοι	ὠ ψυχη δικαια	ὠ ψυχαι δικαιαι	ὠ τεκνον ἁγιον	ὠ τεκνα ἁγια

Attributive and Predicate Positions

The chart above shows adjectives and nouns without articles, but actual sentences will often have articles, and the placement of the article matters. If there is an article right in front of the adjective, it is in Attributive Position and modifies a nearby noun. If there is no article, the adjective can be a Predicate Nominative or can come later in the sentence.

Attributive Positions

1) Article-Adjective-Noun ἡ δικαια ψυχη = the just soul
2) Article-Noun-Article-Adjective ἡ ψυχη ἡ δικαια = the just soul (literally "the soul, the just one")
3) Noun-Article-Adjective ψυχη ἡ δικαια = the just soul (literally, "soul, the just one", like Queen Lucy the Just)

Predicate Positions

1) Article-Noun-Adjective ἡ ψυχη δικαια = the soul is just
2) Adjective-Article-Noun δικαια ἡ ψυχη = the soul is just (literally, "just is the soul").

If there is no article, you have to use context:

Noun Adjective = ψυχη δικαια = a just soul (same as Attributive) or a soul is just (same as Predicate)

Adjective Noun = δικαια ψυχη = a just soul (same as Attributive) or a soul is just (same as Predicate)

Verb "Be" in Greek

As we saw with some of the sentences above, Greek does not need a word for "is" or "they (are)" when equating nouns and adjectives in the Nominative, in a Nominal Sentence. But sometimes this word cannot be left out. If you want to let people know that you are a rabbi, you cannot always say «ῥαββι» while pointing at yourself. For clarity, you would have to say «εἰμι ῥαββι»= I am a rabbi.

Like English, the forms of "be" in Greek are irregular and given below. As usual, the nu in parentheses is a "moveable nu" used only before vowels and punctuation. In the Second Person Singular, the circumflex accent over the iota helps differentiate "you (sing.) are" from the Greek word for "if," but it makes no difference in pronunciation. On Windows keyboards, type [+/=], then [I].

Verbs: Conjugation (Verb Pattern) of εἰμι = "I am" in the Present Indicative Active

	Sing.	Pl.
1st	εἰμι = I am	ἐσμεν = we are
2nd	εἶ = you (sing.) are	ἐστε = you (pl.) are
3rd	ἐστι(ν) = he, she, it is, they (sing.) are	εἰσι(ν) = they (pl.) are

Remember that this verb has the same case on both sides of it, usually the Nominative.

Right: ὁ Ἰακωβος ἐστι καλος, καὶ εἰμι καλη.

Wrong: ὁ Ἰακωβος ἐστι καλον, καὶ εἰμι καλην.

When nouns have different genders but are modified by the same adjective, the hierarchy is Neuter > Masculine > Feminine.

Example: a Neuter noun and a Feminine noun would be modified by a Neuter Plural Adjective, and the verb would be singular to follow the Neuter Plural Rule.

το τεκνον και ἡ ἐκκλησια ἐστιν ἀγαθα.

Example: a Masculine and a Feminine noun would be modified by a Masculine Plural adjective:

ὁ ἀδελφος και ἡ ἀδελφη εἰσιν ἀγαθοι.

But in a sentence like, οἱ ἀδελφοι εἰσιν ἀγαθοι, you cannot be sure that there are no ἀδελφαι among the ἀδελφοι!

Note on Gender in the Bible: mixed-gender groups are described by Masculine Plural Adjectives, while a group must be all-female to be described by the Feminine Plural. This tendency means that whenever a group of people appear in the Bible, you must assume that women are present unless explicitly told otherwise.

Fun exercise: describe something or someone you can see, using an adjective and a form of εἰμι.

Substantive Adjectives

Sometimes you need to understand an adjective as a noun when it has nothing to modify.

ἡ τυφλη ἀναβλεπει. = the blind **woman** regains her sight.

Notice how we had to put in the word "woman" to make the English make sense.

Here is how to do it for all genders and numbers:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Adjectives: Translation Help for Substantives			
Singular	Add "man"	Add "woman"	Add "thing"
Plural	Add "people, men"	Add "women"	Add "things"

English can make adjectives substantive more easily with the plural: μακαριοι οἱ πτωχοι = "blessed are the poor people" OR "blessed are the poor."

Irregular Adjectives "Much" and "Large"

Here are two commonly-used adjectives with odd declensions. The oddity is mainly that they have two different stems, but they also have endings from other declensions. The different Stem/Ending combinations are **boldfaced** below.

πολυς, πολλη, πολυ = much (sing.), many (pl.)

Adjective: Odd/Irregular Declension of πολυς with trickiest forms in boldface

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nom.	**πολυς**	πολλη	**πολυ**	πολλοι	πολλαι	πολλα
Acc.	**πολυν**	πολλην	**πολυ**	πολλους	πολλας	πολλα
Gen.	πολλου	πολλης	πολλου	πολλων	πολλων	πολλων
Dat.	πολλῳ	πολλη	πολλῳ	πολλοις	πολλαις	πολλοις
Voc.	**πολυ**	πολλη	**πολυ**	πολλοι	πολλαι	πολλα

μεγας, μεγαλη, μεγα = great, large

Adjective: Odd/Irregular Declension of μεγας with trickiest forms in boldface

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nom.	**μεγας**	μεγαλη	**μεγα**	μεγαλοι	μεγαλαι	μεγαλα
Acc.	**μεγαν**	μεγαλην	**μεγα**	μεγαλους	μεγαλας	μεγαλα
Gen.	μεγαλου	μεγαλης	μεγαλου	μεγαλων	μεγαλων	μεγαλων
Dat.	μεγαλῳ	μεγαλη	μεγαλῳ	μεγαλοις	μεγαλαις	μεγαλοις
Voc.	**μεγα**	μεγαλη	**μεγα**	μεγαλοι	μεγαλαι	μεγαλα

Examples: πολυν ἀρτον ποιουμεν. ἐν τη μεγαλη γη ἐστε; το μεγα ἱερον βλεπουσιν.

Sandwich Constructions/Nesting

Sometimes, Greek will separate an article or adjective from the noun it modifies by putting another noun or verb between them. For convenience, you can call this construction a "sandwich construction" or "nesting." For example, instead of writing "We see the great glory of God" as την μεγαλην δοξαν του θεου βλεπομεν, a writer might arrange the words as την μεγαλην του θεου δοξαν βλεπομεν to stress that the great glory really belongs to God. Or, less commonly, the writer could write την μεγαλην βλεπομεν δοξαν του θεου to stress that we are right in the middle of God's glory.

Vocabulary for Chapter 5

Adjectives

ἀγαθος, -η, -ον = good, noble

ἀγαπητος, -η, -ον = beloved

ἁγιος, -α, -ον = holy

δικαιος, -α, -ον = righteous, just

ἑκαστος, -η, -ον = each

ἑτερος, -α, -ον = other, the other

ἰδιος, -α, -ον = private, one's own

Ἰουδαιος, -α, -ον = Jewish, Judaean

κακος, -η, -ον = evil

καλος, -η, -ον = beautiful, handsome

καινος, -η, -ον = new, fresh

κωφος, -η, -ον = deaf

μακαριος, -α, -ον = blessed, happy

μονος, -η, -ον = alone, only

νεκρος, -α, -ον = dead

οἰος, -α, -ον = such, of such a kind

ὁσος, -η, -ον = so great, so many, of such size

πιστος, -η, -ον = faithful

πονηρος, -α, -ον = wicked

τυφλος, -η, -ον = blind

Odd Adjectives

μεγας, μεγαλη, μεγα = big

πολυς, πολλη, πολυ = much, many

Feminine Nouns

Γαλιλαια, ἡ = Galilee

εἰρηνη, ἡ = peace

κεφαλη, ἡ = head

συναγωγη, ἡ = synagogue

Masculine Noun

καιρος, ὁ = time, opportunity

A Very Important Verb

εἰμι = I am

Adverbs/Question words

που = Where? (always at the beginning of the question)

πως = How? (always at the beginning of the question)

Conjunctions

ἀλλα = but (stronger than δε)

εἰ = if (no accent!), whether

ἠ = or, than (note smooth breathing)

ὡς = as, like

Family Story: Philip Describes his Relatives

φιλος = dear, friendly; (as noun) relative, friend

ὁ Φιλιππος περι των φιλων τω Πετρω λεγει. «ὁ Ἰακωβος ἐστι μακαριος, ἡ δε Τρυφωσα ἐστιν ἀγαπητη. ἡ Σαλωμη ἐστιν ἀγαθη, και ἐν εἰρηνη περιπατουμεν. εἰμι δικαιος. ἐσμεν Ἰουδαιοι και πιστοι. πιστος εἶ;»

Story 2: the Miracles of Jesus

θεραπευω = "I heal"

ὁ Ἰησους πολλους θεραπευει. ὁ κωφος ἀκουει, ἡ δε τυφλη ἀναβλεπει. το χωλον (lame) τεκνον περιπατει. πολλοι βλεπουσι και δοξαν τω θεω λεγουσιν. οἱ πονηροι οὐ πιστευουσι, τους δε λογους πονηρους λαλει, «ὁ Ἰησους τα Σαββατα οὐ τηρει, ὁτε (when) θεραπευει.»

Scripture: Oaks of Mamre

Abraham and Sarah entertain guests at the oaks of Mamre, Genesis 18:1-4: read without translating, and then recognize words.

ὤφθη δὲ αὐτῷ ὁ θεὸς πρὸς τῇ δρυὶ τῇ Μαμβρη καθημένου αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τῆς θύρας τῆς σκηνῆς αὐτοῦ μεσημβρίας. ἀναβλέψας τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς αὐτοῦ εἶδεν καὶ ἰδοὺ τρεῖς ἄνδρες εἱστήκεισαν ἐπάνω αὐτοῦ καὶ ἰδὼν προσέδραμεν εἰς συνάντησιν αὐτοῖς ἀπὸ τῆς θύρας τῆς σκηνῆς αὐτοῦ καὶ προσεκύνησεν ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν. καὶ εἶπεν, κύριε, εἰ ἄρα εὗρον χάριν ἐναντίον σου μὴ παρέλθῃς τὸν παῖδά σου. λημφθήτω δὴ ὕδωρ καὶ νιψάτωσαν τοὺς πόδας ὑμῶν καὶ καταψύξατε ὑπὸ τὸ δένδρον.

Assignment 13

Name:_____

Review adjectives. All students: supply the correct form of the adjective in parentheses between the article-noun pair:

1. (πονηρος) τον _____ ὀχλον

2. (πιστος) της _____ ἐκκλησιας

3. (μακαριος) τοις _____ ἀνθρωποις

4. (κακος) το _____ δαιμονιον

5. (ἰδιος) αἰ _____ ἀδελφαι

All students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ἀναβλεπουσιν οἱ τυφλοι ἀνθρωποι ὑπο του Ἰησου.

2. ὁ Πετρος τω πονηρω δαιμονιω οὐ προσκυνει.

3. κατοικουμεν ἐν ταις ἰδιαις οἰκιαις, οὐκ ἐν τω ἁγιω ἱερω.

4. καινον ἀρτον ἀπο της ἐκκλησιας προς τας ἀγαθας ἀδελφας ἀγετε;

5. ζωη κατα το δικαιον εὐαγγελιον ἡ μονη ζωη. [insert a form of "be" in translation]

6. Where do we see the beautiful boat?

7. How do you (plural) do just tasks?

8. Paul the Judaean casts out evil demons beside the Dead Sea.

Grad Assignment 13

Name:_____

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ἐνωπιον του ἀγαπητου Πετρου τους λογους της ἀγαθης ζωης λεγομεν.

2. ἀκουει ὁ Ἰουδαιος του Ἰησου τον μακαριον λογον.

3. ὁσοι τω εὐαγγελιω πιστευουσι, ἐργα δικαια ποιουσιν.

4. ἡ ψυχη ὑπο του Χριστου καινη ἀρχη. [insert a form of "be" in your translation]

5. τας πονηρας ἁμαρτιας ἑτερων ἀνθρωπων, οὐκ ἰδιας βλεπομεν.

6. I do not teach a different gospel, but the only gospel.

7. We love each new day in the presence of holy God.

8. The bad man departs before the beginning of the assembly.

Assignment 14

Name:_____

Review the verb εἰμι = "be"

All students: supply the correct form of the verb "be" in the blank to translate the underlined words from English into Greek.

1. We are the faithful people of God. _____   4. O wicked demons, you are evil! _____

2. You are a good rabbi. _____   5. I am the bread of life. _____

3. The good woman is Jacob's sister. _____   6. The churches are beloved. _____

All students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. Review πολυς and μεγας, and begin learning the nouns in the chapter vocabulary.

1. ὁ μεγας ὀχλος του Πετρου οὐκ ἀκουει.

2. αἱ ἀδελφαι αἱ πολλαι του Ἰωσηφ ἐν τῃ Γαλιλαιᾳ κατοικουσιν.

3. δια το ἑτερον εὐαγγελιον, πολλοι ἀνθρωποι οὐκ εἰσι πιστοι.

4. εἶ δικαια, εἰ τον ἁγιον νομον του θεου τηρεις. [how do εἶ and εἰ differ?]

5. ὠ ἀγαπητοι ἀδελφοι, ἀπ' αὐτων ἐν εἰρηνῃ ὑπαγετε;

6. The time for new bread is after the time of the assembly.

7. Before the sabbath, we bring the dead people away from the synagogue.

8. Hey, brothers—you are just, but not holy! [no Greek way to render "!"]

Grad Assignment 14

Name:_____

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences fom Greek into English, or from English into Greek. New word: χοιρος, ὁ = pig

1. ὁ καιρος του θεου οὐκ ἐστιν ἡ ὡρα των ἀνθρωπων.

2. ὁσα τεκνα τα βιβλια παραλαμβανει, την ἀρχην του εὐαγγελιου ἐχει.

3. τα δαιμονια λεγει, « Ἐσμεν πολλα, ἀλλ᾽ ὑπαγομεν εἰς τους κακους χοιρους.»

4. πως προσκυνουσιν ἀνθρωποι ἀγαθοις θεοις ἠ κακοις θεοις;

5. ἑκαστη την οἰκιαν την ἰδιαν τηρει, ἀλλ᾽ ὁ ῥαββι αὐτην προς την συναγωγην καλει.

6. Are you (sing.) truly evil if you are speaking evil words against them?

7. We teach the kingdom of the Lord beside the sea of Galilee.

8. "Where are you (sing.)?"   "I am with the faithful Judaeans in the large synagogue."

Assignment 15

Name:_____

Review the idea of "sandwich constructions" or "nesting." The whole purpose of this homework is to "rattle your cage" by coming up with some of the most twisted word orders possible.

All students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. Review all vocabulary from the back of Chapter 5.

1. τον της ἀμην ζωης ἀρτον φιλουμεν.

2. ποιειτε μεγαλα τοις μετα των νεκρων ἀδελφοις σημεια.

3. που ἐστε; πως το ἀγιον ἐν τη αὐτου οἰκιᾳ σαββατον οὐ τηρειτε;

4. πιστοι εἰσιν, εἰ κατα την του περιπατουσι Χριτου εἰρηνην.

5. ἐως των της του θεου βασιλειας καιρων, ἐν τῳ του πιστου Δαυιδ οἰκῳ κατοικουμεν.

6. μεγα το του Παυλου βιβλιον.

7. They bring their children toward the temple of the Lord of glory.

Grad Assignment 15

Name:_____

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences fom Greek into English, or from English into

Greek.

1. λεγει τη καλη ἀδελφῃ τους περι μεγαλης ἀγαπης λογους ἡ Μαρια.

2. ὡ Ἰουδαιοι, εἰς τας των νεκρων οἰκιας ἀπο της Γαλιλαιας περιπατειτε;

3. ὑπαγουσιν οἱ ἑτεροι ἀδελφοι προς την του Ἰωσηφ μεγαλην βασιλειαν.

4. τους του θεου νομους τηρει ἡ ἐν τη συναγωγη Ἰουδαια, εἰ ἡ ἀγαθη ἡ δικαια ἐστιν.

5. ὡ ἀγαπητον τεκνον, εἶ οὐ νεκρον, ἀλλα τον καλον της ἐχεις ζωης ἀρτον.

6. την του κυριου ἡμεραν ἐπικαλουμεν τον των μεγαλων βιβλιων καιρον.

7. In the time of Peter the faithful, we do not see the new scroll, but hear only the good words.

8. If they do not encourage each sister, she departs from their house.

Chapter 6: Verb tenses

Verb Tenses: Imperfect, Future, and Aorist

Greek has five other tenses besides the Present, and we will learn three of them next. First, we need the **Imperfect** for Past Action with Progressive/Repeated Aspect. This tense in Greek corresponds most closely to the English Past Progessive, "she was doing," but sometimes more closely to "she used to do," "she tried to do," "she began to do" or "she kept doing." Imperfect is Latin for "unfinished," and that adjective describes a lot of the possible translations.

Next, we need the **Future** for almost all actions in the Future, whether Simple Aspect, "she will do," or Progressive/Repeated Aspect, "she will be doing."

Finally, we need the **Aorist** for Past Action with Simple Aspect, "she did," which in English is sometimes called the Preterite. The Aorist occasionally is translated as a Simple Present, "she does," when it is talking about something general or proverbial, the so-called "Gnomic Aorist."

Tense Formation: Imperfect

Create your Imperfect stem by taking the Vocabulary form and lopping off the –ω. Then go to the left side of the word and add the Past Indicative Augment or PIA. The PIA will be an epsilon, or when the verb already starts with a vowel, you will see the following transformations. ε + α = η, ε + ε = η, ε + ο = ω, or the epsilon simply disappears; if the verb starts with a diphthong containing iota, the iota becomes subscript. If the verb has a prefix, augment the left side of the stem rather than the prefix. After adding the PIA to the left side, add these Personal Endings to the right side to show Person and Number:

Verbs: Personal Endings of the Imperfect Indicative Active	Singular	Plural
1st	-ον	-ομεν
2nd	-ες	-ετε
3rd	-ε(ν)	-ον

Here is a regular verb: πεμπω → πεμπ- → ἐ- + πεμπ- → ἐπεμπ- gives us the stem we need for the Imperfect.

Imperfect Indicative Active: Example Verb 1	Singular	Plural
1st	ἐπεμπον	ἐπεμπομεν
2nd	ἐπεμπες	ἐπεμπετε
3rd	ἐπεμπε(ν)	ἐπεμπον

Here is a verb whose Stem begins with a vowel: ἀκουω → ἀκου- → ἐ- + ἀκου → ἠκου-

Imperfect Indicative Active: Example Verb 2

	Singular	Plural
1st	ἤκουον	ἠκούομεν
2nd	ἤκουες	ἠκούετε
3rd	ἤκουε(ν)	ἤκουον

But ἐχω = "I have" forms its Imperfect in a bit of a weird way. With this verb, ἐ- + ε- = εἰ- instead of η.

Imperfect Indicative Active of ἐχω

	Singular	Plural
1st	εἶχον = I was having, I used to have	εἴχομεν
2nd	εἶχες	εἴχετε
3rd	εἶχε(ν)	εἶχον

Watch what happens when an epsilon-Contract Verb goes into the Imperfect:

Contract Verb: Imperfect Indicative Active

	Singular	Plural
1st	ἐτήρεον → ἐτήρουν	ἐτηρέομεν → ἐτηρουμεν
2nd	ἐτήρεες → ἐτήρεις	ἐτηρέετε → ἐτηρειτε
3rd	ἐτήρεε → ἐτήρει	ἐτήρεον → ἐτήρουν

Contraction of the Stem and Endings follows the same rules as in the Present Tense: ε + ε = ει, ε + ο = ου, ε + long vowel or diphthong = ε disappears. Use the space below to generate another example of the Imperfect Indicative Active of an ε -contract verb.

The verb "be" does not really follow these rules, but forms the Imperfect in its own way; the "/" means that the forms are interchangeable. We will get the Future in a later chapter.

Verbs: Conjugation of εἰμι, Imperfect Indicative Active

	Singular	Plural
1	ἤμην	ἤμεθα/ἤμεν
2	ἦσθα/ἦς	ἦτε
3	ἦν	ἦσαν

Exercise: translate the following Imperfect forms:

ἔλυες, περιεπατουμεν, εἶχετε, ἠκολουθουν, ἦτε

Exercise: translate into Greek

She was taking, we used to walk, they (pl.) began to hear, you (sing.) were

Tense Formation: Future

The Future Tense can be formed in two ways. For many verbs, take the Present Stem, add –s- to get the Future Stem, then add the Present Personal Endings.

λυω → λυ- → λυ- + -σ- → λυσ-

Verbs: Formation of Future Indicative Active with Present Personal Endings

	Singular	Plural
1st	λυσω	λυσομεν
2nd	λυσεις	λυσετε
3rd	λυσει	λυσουσι(ν)

Phonology: Note that sigma sometimes produces changes when added to a Stem ending in a consonant:

Labials (pronounced with the lips)	β, π, φ	+ σ	= ψ
Gutturals (pronounced in the throat)	γ, κ, χ, σσ**	+ σ	= ξ
Dentals (pronounced on the teeth)	δ, ζ, θ, σ, τ	+ σ	= σ

**That a triple sigma should turn into a xi does not make phonological sense unless you imagine that double sigma is an approximation of an original guttural κ/χ followed by ι that was already turning into a consonantal "y" sound.

Example: to generate "we will write," do this:

γραφω = I write → γραφ- → γραφ- + -σ- → γραψ- → γραψ- + ομεν → γραψομεν = we will write

"Jesus will save the people." = ὁ Ἰησους τον λαον σωσει.

σωζω → σωζ- → σωζ- + -σ- → σωσ- → σωσει

Tryphosa will preach the word. = ἡ Τρυφωσα τον λογον κηρυξει.

κηρυσσω → κηρυσσ- → κηρυσσ- (κηρυχι) + σ → κηρυξ- → κηρυξει

The usual rule for epsilon-Contract verbs is that the epsilon of the stem lengthens to an eta before adding a sigma.

ποιεω → ποιε- → ποιη- → ποιησ- → ποιησει = "she will make"

Contract Verbs: Formation of Future Indicative Active with Present Personal Endings

	Singular	Plural
1st	ποιησω	ποιησομεν
2nd	ποιησεις	ποιησετε
3rd	ποιησει	ποιησουσι(ν)

καλεω breaks this rule for some reason: καλεω → καλε- → καλεσ- → καλεσεις = "you (sing.) will call"

Principal Parts

Principal Parts are forms that you can use to generate other forms of the verb. In English, each verb has three Principal Parts, and if you know all three, you can generate all the other forms: 1) sing; 2) sang; 3) (have) sung.

Greek verbs have six principal parts, but we will focus only on the first three for now. See Appendix D for more details. In Greek, the Present Stem comes from the First Principal Part, and the Future Stem comes from the Second Principal Part. For a few Verbs, the Present and Future Stems look completely different.

φερω = I carry, οἰσω = I will carry

Verbs: Conjugation of Verb with Changing Stem in Future Indicative Active

	Singular	Plural
1st	οἰσω	οἰσομεν
2nd	οἰσεις	οἰσετε
3rd	οἰσει	οἰσουσι(ν)

φερουσιν = they are carrying, but οἰσουσιν = they will carry

Examples: πεμψομεν, ποιησεις

Examples: They (pl.) will send, we will seek

Fun exercise: describe something you are looking forward to doing, with English Verbs in the Future Tense, then translate into Greek.

Tense Formation: Aorist

The usual rule for the Aorist is to take the Present Stem, add the Past Indicative Augment to the left, add a sigma to the right, then add the following Personal Endings, the 1st Aorist Indicative Active Personal Endings:

Verbs: Personal Endings of Aorist Indicative Active

	Singular	Plural
1st	-α	-αμεν
2nd	-ας	-ατε
3rd	-ε(ν)	-αν

Example: διωκω → διωκ- → ἐ + διωκ- → ἐδιωκ- → ἐδιωκ- + σ → ἐδιωξ- gives the Aorist Stem.

Verbs: Conjugation of Aorist Indicative Active, Example	**Singular**	**Plural**
1st	ἐδιωξα	ἐδιωξαμεν
2nd	ἐδιωξας	ἐδιωξατε
3rd	ἐδιωξε(ν)	ἐδιωξαν

Again, epsilon-contract verbs lengthen the epsilon to an eta before sigma. Remember that compound verbs add the PIA between the prefix and the Stem.

To generate "they worshiped," go through the following process:

προσκυνεω = "I worship"→ προσκυνε- → add PIA: προσεκυνε- → lengthen ε to η: προσεκυνη- → add sigma: προσεκυνησ- → add personal ending: προσεκυνησαν = "they worshiped"

Contract Verbs: Conjugation of Aorist Indicative Active, Example	Singular	Plural
1st	προσεκυνησα	προσεκυνησαμεν
2nd	προσεκυνησας	προσεκυνησατε
3rd	προσεκυνησε(ν)	προσεκυνησαν

But again, καλεω breaks this rule: ἐκαλεσας = "you (sing.) called" (not ἐκαλησας)

Looking Ahead: Other Verbs form their Aorists with a different Stem and use the Imperfect Personal Endings. These are called Second Aorists. Verbs have Second Aorists if the Third Principal Part ends in -ον, like λαμβανω, whose Third Principal Part is ἐλαβον = "I received". We will come back to Second Aorists in a later chapter, but you should see how they work now.

Verbs: Second Aorist, Aorist Indicative Active	Singular	Plural
1st	ἐλαβον	ἐλαβομεν
2nd	ἐλαβες	ἐλαβετε
3rd	ἐλαβε(ν)	ἐλαβον

Fun exercise: tell a story about the past, using both Imperfect and Aorist Verbs.

Quick Review/Overview/Synopsis of λυω in the 1st Person Plural

Present λυομεν = we are releasing, we release

Imperfect ἐλυομεν = we were releasing, we used to release, we began to release, we tried to release, we kept releasing

Future λυσομεν = we will release, we will be releasing

Aorist ἐλυσαμεν = we released

Vocabulary for Chapter 6

Regular Verbs

βαπτιζω = I baptize, I soak

γραφω = I write

διωκω = I pursue, chase, persecute

δοξαζω = I glorify

κηρυσσω = I proclaim

κραζω = I cry, I cry out (Future κραξω, Aorist ἐκραξα)

πεμπω = I send

πειθω = I persuade

σωζω = I save, preserve

Compound Verbs

ἀνοιγω = I open, open up (it is unclear whether this verb has ἀνα as a Prefix or not, so the Imperfect could be either ἠνοιγον or ἀνῳγον, and the Aorist could be either ἠνοιξα or ἀνῳξα)

ἀπο-καλυπτω = I unveil, reveal

προσ-εχω = I pay attention to + Dative

ὑπ-αρχω = I exist

Contract Verbs

αἰτεω = I ask

εὐλογεω = I praise

εὐχαριστεω = I give thanks to + Dative

οἰκοδομεω = I build, construct

Adverbs

ἀρτι = now, just now

ἐτι = yet, still

ἠδη = already (with Past), now (with Present), soon (with Future)

νυν = now

οὐκετι = no longer

οὐπω = not yet

παλιν = again, anew

παντοτε = always, all the time

ποτε = once, at some time

σημερον = today

τοτε = then

Conjunctions

ὁτε = when

ὁτι = because, that (introducing idea or someone else's words)

Number

δυο (Nom./Acc.), δυοιν (Gen./Dat.) = two

Masculine Nouns

Τιμοθεος, ὁ = Timothy (Honor-to-God)

τοπος, ὁ = place, location

Family Story: James Builds a House

ὁ Ἰακωβος τῳ οἰκῳ οἰκιαν ᾠκοδομησεν. πεδιον (plain) ἐζητει. πολλους λιθους (rocks) τοτε ἐζητει. τους δε λιθους προς το πεδιον ἠγεν. ὀλιγους (a few) λιθους θεμελιους (foundations) ἐποιησεν, και πολλους λιθους τοιχους (walls). θυραν (door) και θυριδιον (window) ἀνῳξεν, ὀλιγους δε ἀνεμους (breezes) ἐν τη οἰκιᾳ ἠθελησεν (he wanted). ὑπερ την οἰκιαν τοτε την στεγην (roof) κεραμοις (tiles) ἐποιησεν.

Scripture: Parable of the House

This is Matthew 7:24-27. Try to read first without translating, then go back and recognize words.

Πᾶς οὖν ὅστις ἀκούει μου τοὺς λόγους τούτους καὶ ποιεῖ αὐτούς, ὁμοιωθήσεται ἀνδρὶ φρονίμῳ, ὅστις ᾠκοδόμησεν αὐτοῦ τὴν οἰκίαν ἐπὶ τὴν πέτραν. ²⁵ καὶ κατέβη ἡ βροχὴ καὶ ἦλθον οἱ ποταμοὶ καὶ ἔπνευσαν οἱ ἄνεμοι καὶ προσέπεσαν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἐκείνῃ, καὶ οὐκ ἔπεσεν, τεθεμελίωτο γὰρ ἐπὶ τὴν πέτραν. ²⁶ καὶ πᾶς ὁ ἀκούων μου τοὺς λόγους τούτους καὶ μὴ ποιῶν αὐτοὺς ὁμοιωθήσεται ἀνδρὶ μωρῷ,

ὅστις ᾠκοδόμησεν αὐτοῦ τὴν οἰκίαν ἐπὶ τὴν ἄμμον. **27** καὶ κατέβη ἡ βροχὴ καὶ ἦλθον οἱ ποταμοὶ καὶ

ἔπνευσαν οἱ ἄνεμοι καὶ προσέκοψαν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἐκείνῃ, καὶ ἔπεσεν, καὶ ἦν ἡ πτῶσις αὐτῆς μεγάλη.

Assignment 16

Name:_____

This homework is about verbs; the sentences are shorter to allow you to focus more on the new forms, and only the regular forms are given.

All students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. Extra verb: δακρυω = I weep

1. τους δουλους τους πιστους λυσω.

2. ὦ Πετρε, τῳ της Ἰσραηλ θεῳ ἐπιστευσας;

3. ὁ ῥαββι τους κακους ἀνθρωπους ἀπο της ἐκκλησιας ἀπολυσει.

4. ἐλεγεν ὁ Ἰησους τοις ἀγαπητοις ἀδελφοις τον ἀγαθον λογον.

5. το μεγα της βασιλειας ἱερον ἐκ της ἰδιας οἰκιας ἐβλεπομεν.

6. ὦ τυφλοι, δια τον Ἰησουν, τον της Μαριας υἱον, ἀναβλεπετε;

7. ἐδακρυσεν ὁ Ἰησους.

8. Did his sisters release the good slaves from the wicked boats?

9. Paul, will you believe in Jesus before the day of the Lord?

10. If we have the bread of life, are we just or not?

Grad Assignment 16

Name:_____

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences fom Greek into English, or from English into

Greek. Extra verb: δακρυω = I weep; Extra adverb: νυν = now

1. που οἱ μεγαλοι ὀχλοι ἀκουουσι του Πετρου;

2. ἡ Μαρια και αἱ ἀδελφαι ὑπερ του Ἰησου ἐδακρυον.

3. τους του Ἰακωβ ἀδελφους ἐκ της οἰκιας ἐλυσαν.

4. διδασκει τα βιβλια τα ἁγια τον του θεου λαον συν τοις τεκνοις.

5. ὠ ἀγαπητοι ἀνθρωποι, ἐλεγετε τῳ Παυλῳ περι των καλων κεφαλων ἡ ψυχων;

6. Will we untie many boats from the house?

7. Brothers, you (pl.) used to see the large temple, but you (pl.) do not see it now.

8. They wept on behalf of the people of Israel.

Assignment 17

Name:_____

This homework continues the work on verbs, excluding contract verbs. Please learn new vocabulary in Chapter 6.

All students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ὦ Παυλε, την ἁγιαν του θεου ἐκκλησιαν ποτε ἐδιωκες;

2. ὁ Παυλος τῳ Τιμοθεῳ λογους ἀγαθους οὐπω ἐγραψεν.

3. τον μεγαν ὀχλον λογοις και ἀρτῳ ἐτι ἐπειθομεν.

4. παρα τῳ των νεκρων τοπῳ, τα δαιμονια τῳ Ἰησου ἐκραζε, «Υἱε ἀνθρωπου.»

5. ὁ Ἰησους ὑπαρξει παντοτε ὁ του θεου υἱος.

6. ὦ τυφλοι, ὁτε ἐν τῃ συναγωγῃ ἠδη ἐστιν ὁ Ἰησους , ἀναβλεψετε;

7. οἱ ἀγαθοι κυριοι τους πιστους δουλους ἀπελυσαν.

8. The Lord will now save the world from the wicked men.

9. We used to send bread to the churches in Galilee. [to -> Dative or Accusative here?]

10. You (pl.) did not yet open the large temple beside the sea.

Grad Assignment 17

Name:_____

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English

into Greek. Extra word: Κρητη, ἡ = Crete

1. ὁ Τιμοθεος τας ἐν τη Κρητη ἐκκλησιας εἰχε και πολλους ἐτι ἐβαπτιζεν.

2. ἀπεκαλυψεν ἠδη ὁ της δοξης κυριος τα πολλα των πιστων ἐγρα ἐν πολλοις τοποις.

3. ἀπο της ἐκκλησιας τους του θεου ἀνθρωπους εἰς τον κοσμον παλιν πεμψομεν.

4. ὠ ἀγαπητε ἀδελφε, τον της συναγωγης λαον τοτε ἐδιωξας.

5. και ἡ Τρυφωσα πολλα βιβλια τω πιστω ἀδελφω τοτε ἐγραψεν.

6. δοξασω σημερον τον κυριον και τον αὐτου υἱον, ἑως της ἀρχης της ἡμερας.

7. How will Timothy preach the gospel, when he is not preaching it now?

8. We used to persecute the church then, but now we will save it.

9. When you (pl.) were speaking upright words, you (pl.) persuaded the people.

Assignment 18

Name:_____

This homework covers contract verbs and the irregular verbs κραζω, Future κραξω, Aorist ἐκραξα and ἐχω, Imperfect εἰχον. Please learn new vocabulary for this chapter.

All students: Contract and translate the following uncontracted forms of the new contract verbs: Example: ἠτεον = ἠτουν = I used to ask. All the verbs in boxes are Present or Imperfect.

ἠτεομεν
εὐλογεει
ηὐχαριστεετε
(two possibilities) ῳκοδομεον
ηὐλογεε
οἰκοδομεεις

All students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ὠ ἀδελφοι, τας οἰκιας ἐν τῳ τοπῳ τῳ κακῳ ῳκοδομησατε;

2. κραξω τῳ κυριῳ ὑπερ της πονηρας ψυχης ἐως της της ἡμερας ἀρχης.

3. εὐλογησουιν αἱ πισται ἀδελφαι τα του Χριστου σημεια δια της γης.

4. τῳ θεῳ δια την του κοσμου δοξαν ηὐχαριστουμεν.

5. Timothy was asking Paul about his good churches, not about the bad ones.

6. When we were holding the bread of Christ, we were always giving thanks to God.

Grad Assignment 18

Name:_____

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. Extra word: Μακεδονια, ἡ = Macedonia. προς + Dative = next to

1. ὁ Ἰησους ἐλεγεν, «Ὁ της ζωης ἀρτος εἰμι». νυν τῳ θεῳ εὐχαριστησομεν.

2. τοις πολλοις λογοις του ῥαββι περι της ζωης της δικαιας προσειχομεν.

3. ὁ Παυλος ἀπο της Μακεδονιας συν τῳ ἀδελφῳ Τιμοθεῳ ὑπηγεν.

4. αἱ ἀδελφαι ἐν τῃ μεγαλῃ ἐκκλησιᾳ προς τοις πλοιοις ποτε ηὐχαριστουν.

5. πως ἐν πολλοις καιροις και ἐν πολλοις τοποις τον της δοξης κυριον εὐλογησετε;

6. ἐπι του Δαυιδ ἱερον ἁγιον ἐν τῃ γῃ της Ἰσραηλ οὐ ᾠκοδομησαν.

7. Where will the crowd praise the glory of God? In the synagogue or in the other places?

8. We used to have a kingdom, but now we have the gospel of life.

9. The people were not paying attention to Peter and Paul when they were crying out, "We

   seek bread!"

Chapter 7: Verb moods (including Participles)

Imperative Mood

Again, the moods are not 'bashful' or 'grumpy,' but about the Verb's relationship with facts.

We already have the Indicative for facts: βλεπομεν = "we see, we are seeing"

Now, we need the Imperative for Commands: Watch the sheep! Keep God's commandments!

The Imperative is easy to form, and chiefly exists in the 2nd person, singular and plural for Present and Aorist tenses. The difference between Present and Aorist tenses is only Aspect; the Present Imperative means "Keep doing something!" and the Aorist Imperative means "Do something (once or not continuously)!". The Aorist is much more common than the Present.

For the Present Imperative, take the 1st Person Singular Present Indicative Active, remove the –ω, and add the following endings:

Verbs: Personal Endings of the Present Imperative Active	Singular	Plural
2nd Person	-ε	-ετε

Verbs: Examples of Present Imperative Active	Singular	Plural
2nd Person	λυε	λυετε

Is there potential for confusion between Indicative and Imperative in the 2nd Person Plural Present Active, both of which have the ending -ετε? Yes, but look at the following examples.

τον ἀρτον ποιειτε; This sentence is a question, and you can't command people with questions, so this verb must be Indicative. "Are you (pl.) making the bread?"

ὢ ἀδελφοι, τον ἀρτον ποιειτε. This sentence has a Vocative of Direct Address, which is very common with Imperatives, so it is probably Imperative, "Brothers, keep making the bread!" If you were observing that the brothers were making bread, you would not need to get their attention with the Vocative.

For the Aorist Imperative, take the 1st Person Singular Aorist Indicative Active, remove the PIA since the Verb is no longer Indicative, remove the final –α, and add the following endings:

Verbs: Personal Endings of the Aorist Imperative Active	Singular	Plural
2nd Person	-ον	-ατε

Verbs: Examples of the Aorist Imperative Active	Singular	Plural
2nd Person	λυσον	λυσατε

For the 2nd Person Singular ending, remember the phrase κυριε, ἐλεισον, "Lord, have mercy" from the rare verb ἐλεεω = I have mercy. For the 2nd Plural, note the absence of the PIA from Imperative forms:

ἐλυσατε = You (pl.) released

λυσατε = (you [pl.]) Release!

Infinitive Mood

The Infinitive literally means "Unlimited" (cue song from *Wicked* here), but its main use is to complement or "complete" Indicative verbs. In English, the Infinitive is marked with "to": to run, to hide, to seek, to find.

For example, θελω = I want, often takes a Complementary Infinitive when you want an action, in both Greek and in English.

"I want to live." "I used to want to seek money." "I will want to be making bread until the feast."

Formation and Translation of Infinitives

Present: take 1st Singular, Present Indicative Active and replace –ω with –ειν. Contract verbs replace –εω with –ειν.

βλεπω → βλεπ- → βλεπειν, τηρεω → τηρ- → τηρειν

Aorist: take 1st Singular Aorist Indicative Active, remove PIA, and replace –α with –αι.

ἐβλεψα → βλεψα → βλεψ- → βλεψαι

ἐτηρησα → τηρησα → τηρησ- → τηρησαι

Again, the difference between Present and Aorist Infinitives is Aspect. Translate Present Infinitives as "to be doing" to capture their Progressive/Repeated Aspect. Translate Aorist Infinitives as the shorter, simpler English form, "to do" to capture their Simple Aspect.

Verbs: Infinitive Endings	Present Active	Aorist Active
Infinitive Mood	-ειν	-αι

Examples: λυειν = to keep releasing, λυσαι = to release

For the verb "I am," the Infinitive "to be" = εἰναι. We will see the Infinitive ending –ναι in several other verbs, usually Irregular Verbs.

Impersonal Verbs

The Impersonal Verbs δει = "it is necessary" and ἐξεστι = "it is permitted" also take Complementary Infinitives, but because their "subject" is "it", they usually need an additional noun to specify who is performing the action of the Infinitive. These two verbs use different cases: δει takes an Accusative noun plus the Infinitive, while ἐξεστι takes a Dative noun plus the Infinitive.

δει βλεψαι. = It is necessary to see.

δει τα τεκνα βλεψαι = It is necessary for the children to see.

ἐξεστι γραφειν. = It is permitted to be writing.

ἐξεστι ταις ἀδελφαις γραφειν. = It is permitted for the sisters to be writing/It is permitted that the sisters be writing.

Participle Mood

English has participles, and they are difficult to use correctly. A participle is a verbal adjective—it describes a noun performing an action. For examples, see the **boldface** words in the following:

the **running** man, **fried** green tomatoes, the dawn **mistaken** for dusk, the **inviting** church

Example sentence

A. **Going** toward Jerusalem, the messengers see the big house.

In English, participles can almost always be expressed by a subordinate clause (a clause that can't stand on its own). For example sentence A could also be written:

B. While they are going toward Jerusalem, the messengers see the big house.

In Greek, sentences A and B would both be translated by a participle modifying the subject. Notice how in sentence B, it is more clear that the messengers both go and see. Here is the Greek equivalent of both sentences A and B:

C. ἐρχομενοι προς τα Ἱεροσολυμα, οἱ ἀγγελοι την μεγαλην οἰκιαν βλεπουσιν.

The great thing about Greek is that you can never have a misplaced modifier—you always know whom the participle modifies from the case ending. Watch what happens in English when you change the word order in sentence A:

D. The messengers see the big house going toward Jerusalem. (Uh oh! A landslide!)

But in Greek, the sentence is the same after you change the word order:

E. οἱ ἀγγελοι την μεγαλην οἰκιαν βλεπουσιν, ἐρχομενοι προς τα Ἱεροσολυμα.

Note: to avoid confusion in English, try to keep things that go with the Indicative verb (βλεπουσιν above) near the Indicative verb, and keep things that go with the Participle (ἐρχομενοι above) near the Participle. Otherwise, you end up with sentences like these, classic examples of misplaced modifiers.

Hunters, please use caution when hunting pedestrians using walk trails. Nailed to the tree, we saw the sign.

Formation of Participles

Present Active: Take the Vocabulary Form/First Principal Part drop –ω, add the following Case Endings. A quick and dirty translation is "---ing", as in "doing." Remember, ντ is pronounced "nd."

Verbs: Endings by Gender and Number for Nominative Case for Present Active Participles

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nominative	-ων	-ουσα	-ον	-οντες	-ουσαι	-οντα

Example Verb: Nominative Case Forms of Present Active Participle,

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nominative	γραφων	γραφουσα	γραφον	γραφοντες	γραφουσαι	γραφοντα

Watch what happens with Contract Verbs

Contract Verb Example: Nominative Case Forms of Present Active Participle

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nominative	Τηρων	τηρουσα	τηρουν	τηρουντες	τηρουσαι	τηρουντα

For the verb εἰμι = "I am", it is as though the Participle endings have gone rogue. Translate as "being."

Verbs: Nominative Case Forms of Present Active Participle of Verb εἰμι

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nominative	ὠν	οὐσα	ὀν	ὀντες	οὐσαι	ὀντα

Examples: πεμπουσα, λεγοντες, ποιουν, οὐσαι

Examples: the writing sister, the speaking messenger, the walking child, the church being righteous

Fun Exercise: Imagine yourself or someone else doing two different actions at the same time, and write a sentence about what you imagine. Make one verb Indicative and the other verb a Present Participle, then write a second sentence with the moods switched around.

Aorist Active Participle

Unlike other non-Indicative Moods, there is a real difference in Time between Present and Aorist. Present Participles happen at the same time as the Main Verb, but Aorist Participles happen before the Main Verb. A quick and dirty translation of an Aorist Participle is "having –ed," as in "having walked." Form the Aorist Active Participle by taking the 1st Sing. Aorist Indicative Active/3rd Principal Part, removing the PIA, removing the –a ending, and adding the following Participle Endings:

Verbs: Nominative Case Endings of Aorist Active Participle

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nominative	-ας	-ασα	-αν	-αντες	-ασαι	-αντα

Example: **Πεμπω**	**Nominative Case Endings of Aorist Active Participle added to Aor. Stem** **Aor. Stem: πεμπω → πεμπ- → no PIA, just sigma: πεμπ- + -σ- →** **πεμψ-**					
	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nominative	πεμψας	πεμψασα	πεμψαν	πεμψαντες	πεμψασαι	πεμψαντα

Examples: γραψασαι, λυσας, περιπατησαντα, James, **having sent**…, Tryphosa and Salome, **having spoken**…, the child, **having walked**…

But the second group of examples is rather awkward. There are better, less awkward ways to translate participles..

ὁ Ἰακωβος πεμψας = James, having sent OR James, after he sent OR James, since he sent

OR James, although he sent OR James, if he sent

If you add another article to put the Participle in Attributive Position, you can translate the Participle as a Relative Clause:

ὁ Ἰακωβος ὁ πεμψας = James, who sent

The chart on the next page gives a more comprehensive view of Participle uses.

Participle Uses Overview

Greek Participle Uses for 1ˢᵗ year Greek and beyond!!!		
Use	Usage hints in Greek	Translation hints in English
1) attributive	preceded by article; negative οὐ is for specific persons/things, **μη** for non-specific	translate with relative clause **who, what, that**
2) temporal	can have **ἔπειτα** in main clause to show that main verb happens after participle	translate with **after** (Aorist or Perfect Participle), **when** or **while** (Aorist or Present Participle) or (rarely) **before** (Future Participle)
3) causal	can use with **οἷα, ἅτε** to show speaker's assertion, with **ὡς** to show someone else's assertion	translate with **since** or **because** and note source of assertion if indicated
4) concessive	can use with **καιπερ** near participle or **ὁμως** near main verb	translate with **although**
5) purpose	can use future participle with optional **ὡς**, or other tenses with required **ὡς**	translate like so: Primary Main Verb: **so that...may ---** ; Secondary Main Verb: **so that...might ---**
6) protasis of condition	negative is always **μη**	translate with **if** like protasis of condition depending on condition type
7) genitive absolute	almost always modifies noun in Genitive, no overlapping words with rest of sentence	translate like types 2-6
8) supplementary	use with certain verbs to complete their meaning (e.g. "stop")	translate as English gerund (noun in "-ing")
9) indirect statement	use with verbs of thinking, saying, perceiving, etc. ["head" verbs]	translate with **that;** turn Accusative into Subject; turn Participle into Indicative Verb
10) co-ordinating	no markers	translate as finite verb + "and" + main verb

Participles in a Sentence

Where does Greek use participles? Here is an example of English to Greek translation, step by step.

English Sentence: The child who had seen the large house walked to the Jewish temple.

"who had seen the large house" = Participle modifying Subject, Attributive Participle (use #1, above)

"The child walked to the Jewish temple" = Main Clause

Main Clause first:

The child = Subject, Nom. Sing. Neut. = το τεκνον

walked = Main Verb, 3rd sing, Aor. Indic. Active = περεπατησεν

to the Jewish temple = Prepositional Phrase, pros + Acc. = προς το Ἰουδαιον ἱερον

then Participle Phrase:

who = article modifying Subject, Nom. Sing. Neut. = το

had seen = takes place before Main Verb, Aorist Participle modifying Subject = βλεψαν

the large house = Direct Object, Acc. Fem. Sing. = την μεγαλην οἰκιαν

Numerous different word orders are possible, but this will work

το τεκνον το βλεψαν την μεγαλην οἰκιαν, προς το Ἰουδαιον ἱερον περεπατησεν.

Fun exercise: Think of a person or animal doing two actions. If the actions are simultaneous, express one action by a Present Participle. If the actions are in a sequence, express the earlier action by an Aorist Participle, and the later action by an Indicative verb. If you need animals, you could use cat = αἰλουρος, ὁ or doggie = κυνιδιον, το.

Vocabulary for Chapter 7

Feminine Nouns

δικαιοσυνη, ἡ = righteousness, justice

ἐντολη, ἡ = commandment

ἐξουσια, ἡ = power, capability

παραβολη, ἡ = parable, narrative

παρρησια, ἡ = freedom of speech, boldness

χαρα, ἡ = joy

Masculine Nouns

ἀποστολος, ὁ = apostle, one sent

θανατος, ὁ = death

ὀφθαλμος, ὁ = eye, vision

Φαρισαιος, ὁ = Pharisee (Jewish sect)

Neuter Nouns

θηριον, το = wild animal

ἱματιον, το = cloak, outer garment

μνημειον, το = tomb, monument

προβατον, το = sheep (lit. 'front-walker')

Adverbs

μη = not (modifies non-Indicative verbs)

μηδε = and not, nor

μηκετι = no longer

μητε = and not, nor

Verbs

ἀκολουθεω = I follow + Dative

ἀν-αγω = I bring up

δεω = I tie, bind

δοκεω = I think good

ἐλεεω = I have mercy (note double epsilon)

θελω = I want (Imperf. ἠθελον, Fut. θελησω, Aor. ἠθελησα)

θεωρεω = I watch, observe

κατ-αργεω = I cancel, nullify

μαρτυρεω = I bear witness, testify

μελλω = I am about to + Infinitive, I hesitate

μετα-νοεω = I repent, change my mind

Two Impersonal Verbs (3rd singular only)

δει = it is necessary + Accusative + Infinitive; Future is δεησει, Imperfect is ἐδει

ἐξεστι = it is permitted + Dative + Infinitive (ἐξ + ἐστι, 3rd sing. of εἰμι); Fut. ἐξεσται, Imperf. ἐξην

Prepositions/Adverb

ὀπισω + Gen. = behind, after; Adverb: in future (we can't see the future, so it is behind us)

προσθεν + Gen. = in front of, before; Adverb: in the past (but we can see the past, so it is in front of us)

Family Story: Childbirth

Tryphosa helps her sister Johanna give birth. Some words and constructions are unfamiliar, so see the translations in () following the word.

ἡ Ἰωαννη ἡ ἀδελφη της Τρυφωσης ἠν ἐπιφορα (pregnant), και την Τρυφωσαν προς την οἰκιαν ἐκαλεσεν. ἡ Τρυφωσα πολλας ἡμερας (Acc. = for) ὡδευεν (was traveling), και τοτε προς την οἰκιαν της Ἰωαννης ἀφικετο (arrived). τη ἡμερᾳ τη ὑστεραιᾳ (next), ἡ Ἰωαννη ὡδινησεν (went into labor). ἡ Ἰωαννη ἐπι τη Τρυφωση ἐκλινεν (was leaning). ἡ Ἰωαννη ἐκραζεν, ἀλλα ἡ Τρυφωσα ἱλαρως (gently) ἐλαλει. τοτε ἡ Ἰωαννη τον υἱον ἐγεννησεν (gave birth to). ὁ υἱος ἐκραζε, ἡ δε Τρυφωσα το τεκνον ἡσυχασεν (calmed), και το τεκνον παρα την Ἰωαννην ἠγαγεν (brought). ἡ Ἰωαννη χαραν μεγαλην εἰχεν, λεγουσα τη Τρυφωση, «ὁ υἱος τας οἰκίας οἰκοδομησει, καθως (just like) ὁ Ἰακωβος.» ἡ Τρυφωσα ἐλαλησεν «ἐξεσται τω υἱω εἰναι μαθητη (apprentice) μετα του Φιλιππου, ὁτε ἐσται νεανιας (youth).»

Scripture: Prophecy about Israel

Isaiah 45:10-13, read without translating, then recognize words and situations

ὁ λέγων τῷ πατρί τί γεννήσεις καὶ τῇ μητρί τί ὠδινήσεις. ὅτι οὕτως λεγει κύριος ὁ θεὸς ὁ ἅγιος Ἰσραηλ ὁ ποιήσας τὰ ἐπερχόμενα ἐρωτήσατέ με περὶ τῶν υἱῶν μου καὶ περὶ τῶν θυγατέρων μου καὶ περὶ τῶν ἔργων τῶν χειρῶν μου ἐντείλασθέ μοι. ἐγω ἐποίησα γῆν καὶ ἄνθρωπον ἐπ᾽ αὐτῆς ἐγὼ τῇ χειρί μου ἐστερέωσα τὸν οὐρανόν ἐγὼ πᾶσι τοῖς ἄστροις ἐνετειλάμην. ἐγὼ ἤγειρα αὐτον Κῦρον μετὰ δικαιοσύνης βασιλέα καὶ πᾶσαι αἱ ὁδοὶ αὐτοῦ εὐθεῖαι οὗτος οἰκοδομήσει τὴν πόλιν μου καὶ τὴν αἰχμαλωσίαν τοῦ λαοῦ μου ἐπιστρέψει οὐ μετὰ λύτρων οὐδὲ μετὰ δώρων εἶπεν κύριος σαβαωθ.

Assignment 19

Name:_____

This homework covers the Imperative and Infinitive, plus the thirteen new verbs in the vocabulary list, plus the new negatives (μη, μηκετι, etc.):

All students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ὠ ἀδελφε, λαλησον τη ἐκκλησιᾳ, «Ἀμην.»

2. ὠ ἀδελφαι, τα πλοια ὑπο το ἱερον θεωρησατε.

3. ὠ ἀγαθοι ἀνθρωποι, τα τεκνα περι των ἐργων αὐτων παρακαλειτε.

4. μετα την κακην ἡμεραν, νυν μελλω ἐκ των πονηρων ἐργων μετανοησαι.

5. τους ἀγαθους κυριους ἀπολυσαι τους δουλους δει.

6. οὐκ ἐξεστι τοις τεκνοις καταγρειν τους δικαιους της βασιλειας νομους.

7. ὁ Ἰησους ὁ ῥαββι τοις ἀδελφοις ἐλεγεν, «Ἀκολουθει τῳ εὐαγγελιῳ.»

8. δει μη ἀποκαλυψαι τα βιβλια τοις κακοις της βασιλειας ἀνθρωποις;

9. It is necessary for the wicked men to repent and to believe in the Gospel.

10. Where is the love? I want to see the love in the assembly.

Grad Assignment 19

Name:_____

Graduate Students, please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ὁ Παυλος την του Ἰησου ἐκκλησαιαν ποτε διωξαι ἠθελησεν.

2. βιβλια περι της κακης ἐκκλησιας προς τον Πετρον πεμψαι ἐμελλετε.

3. ὁ Τιμοθεος παρα τῳ μεγαλῳ ἱερῳ ἐμαρτυρει, εἰ ποτε ἐδει κηρυσσειν το εὐαγγελιον.

4. οἱ ἁγιοι ἀγγελοι δοξασαι τον θεον λογοις ἰδιοις παντοτε μελλουσιν.

5. ὠ ἀδελφε και ἀδελφη, νυν λαλησατε καινους λογους περι της ἀγαπης τοις τεκνοις.

6. ἀνοιξον τας ἰδιας οἰκιας τοις πιστοις, εἰ αὐτους πεμπομεν.

7. It is necessary not to speak evil words to the children, but to bless them.

8. God, save the church from the evil one, and keep dismissing its many sins!

9. Peter was saying, "Listen, O Israel," but we were not paying attention to him.

Assignment 20

Name:_____

This homework covers mainly the participle, but with Feminine forms included. See below:

All students: Please generate the single participle that will best translate the underlined words. See the Participle Uses handout on Canvas for further guidance.

1. <u>Seeking</u> truth in the desert, the rabbi found God. _____

2. <u>After having seen</u> the temple, the sisters were departing. _____

3. Mary received scrolls from Timothy <u>after she had written</u> to him. _____

4. <u>While we were making</u> bread, we brothers made many mistakes. _____

5. Although <u>preaching the gospel</u>, Peter performed many miracles also. _____

Please learn the vocabulary for the chapter before you translate the following sentences from Greek into English.

1. ὦ λαε της Ἰσραηλ, τηρησον τας του κυριου ἐντολας.

2. ὦ ἀδελφαι, μη ἀκολουθησατε τοις Φαρισαιοις ἠ τοις πονηροις.

3. δια το θηριον το κακον δει ἀναγειν παντοτε τα προβατα εἰς τας του κυριου οἰκιας.

4. το μνημειον το μεγα τοις ἰδιοις ὀφθαλμοις θεωρησαι ἁμην μελλομεν.

5. ἀπο του θεου την χαραν και την ἁγιαν παρρησιαν λαμβανειν ἠθελησαν.

Grad Assignment 20

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please generate the single participle that will best translate the underlined words. See the Participle Uses chart for further guidance.

1. <u>Having repented</u>, Timothy kept on preaching on Crete. _____

2. Since Abraham <u>had borne witness</u> to the law, he was always keeping it. _____

3. Although the sisters <u>did</u> not <u>make </u>the bread, they will send it to Peter. _____

4. The women who <u>preach</u> will save many people from the evil demons. _____

5. If <u>we do</u> not <u>glorify</u> God, we are not truly just. _____

Translate the following sentences between Greek and English.

6. ὁ Ἰησους παραβολαν ἐκηρυσσε, λεγων, «ἀνθρωπος εἰχε δυο υἱους…»

7. ὡ θανατε, ἐλεει τα τεκνα ἐν τῳ οἰκῳ, εἰ ἐστι ἡ δικαιοσυνη ποτε.

8. οἱ οὐρανοι ὀπισω των ἀποστολων ἀνῳξαν, και ἐδοξα ἀκουσαι την του θεου φωνην.

9. O brothers, send many apostles toward the kingdom under the wicked authority of the Beast.

10. After having looked at the temple, we still loved our own synagogue.

Assignment 21

Name:_____

This homework covers mainly the participle, which you should review before starting the homework.

All students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or vice-versa.

1. πως δει τα τεκνα κραξαι, ὡς θηρια;

2. ὦ ἀδελφαι, μαρτυρησατε, τηρουσαι τας του θεου ἐντολας.

3. οὐκ ἐξεστι τω Φαρισαιω ἀγειν τους νεκρους εἰς την συναγωγην.

4. τα μεγαλα ἱερα θεωρησαντες, τας ἰδιας οἰκιας οὐκετι ἐφιλησαμεν.

5. ποτε μετανοησασα, ἡ πιστη ἀδελφη τω Ἰησου ἀκολουθησαι νυν θελει.

6. ἡ Μαρια, τοις ἀποστολοις λεγουσα, περι των του υἱου σημειων ἐμαρτυρει.

7. Having saved the world by his death, Jesus was departing into heaven. [two ways to do

   "by"]

Grad Assignment 21

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or vice-versa.

Extra word: ἀετος, ὀ = eagle

1. ὀ Παυλος, ὀ διωξας την ἐκκλησιαν, αὐτην νυν οἰκοδομει.

2. φιλουντες τα τεκνα, οἱ ἀποστολοι τα κακα δαιμονια ἐξ αὐτων ἐξεβαλλον.

3. την των ἀετων ἐκκλησιαν θεωρησασα, ἡ ἀδελφη την ἀρχην της καινης γης βλεψει.

4. ἡ δικαιοσυνη τοις ἀδελφοις δια των ψυχων ἀκολουθησει.

5. Having followed the Lord, the apostles were willing to receive death. ["be willing" = θελω]

6. While we speak to the people with holy boldness, we are apostles of joy.

7. While praising God, we see His kingdom with the eyes of the heart.

8. If we do not have sins, we are angels, not human beings. [See Participle Uses handout]

Chapter 8: Other patterns of nouns and verbs, including Middle-Only verbs

Middle-Only Verbs

We briefly mentioned Voices other than the Active Voice, such as the Middle Voice. The Middle Voice is used for Reflexive, Intransitive, Causative, and Reciprocal actions. Some Verbs occur only in the Middle Voice, also known as Deponent Verbs, and they all end in –μαι in the vocabulary lists.

ἔρχομαι means "I go," and because you cannot "go" a Direct Object, it is Middle only because it is Intransitive.

Formation of Middle-Only Verbs: Present Indicative Middle

For these Middle-Only verbs, you can either memorize the endings for each tense, or memorize what the endings have in common, but add a Theme Vowel between the stem and ending. Here is the Present Indicative Middle of ἔρχομαι

Middle-Only Verbs: Conjugation of Middle-Only Verbs in Present Indicative Active (example)

	Singular	Plural
1	ἔρχομαι	ἐρχόμεθα
2	ἔρχῃ	ἔρχεσθε
3	ἔρχεται	ἔρχονται

You can explain it as having the endings

Middle-Only Verbs: Personal Endings of the Present Indicative Middle Including Theme Vowels

	Singular	Plural
1	-ομαι	-ομεθα
2	-ῃ	-εσθε
3	-εται	-ονται

Or you can explain it like so. Form the Stem by removing -ομαι from the Vocabulary Form. Then 1) the Theme Vowel ο/ε and 2) the Primary Middle/Passive endings. For Theme Vowels, use ο before a Nasal (pronounced in the nose, μ ν) , ε before other consonants. The Second Person Singular undergoes a type of contraction: ε + σαι = εαι = ηι = ῃ. A Primary Tense is a tense without a PIA, namely Present and Future.

Verbs: Middle/Passive Personal Endings of Primary Tenses

	Singular	Plural
1	-μαι	-μεθα
2	-σαι	-σθε
3	-ται	-νται

Watch what happens with the epsilon-Contract Middle-Only Verb ἀρνέομαι = I deny, refuse. What does each of the following forms mean?

Contract Verbs: Forms of Present Indicative Middle with Primary Middle/Passive Endings

	Singular	Plural
1	ἀρνεομαι → ἀρνουμαι	ἀρνεομεθα → ἀρνουμεθα
2	ἀρνεῃ → ἀρνῃ	ἀρνεεσθε → ἀρνεισθε
3	ἀρρνεεται → ἀρνειται	ἀρνεονται → ἀρνουνται

Formation of Middle-Only Verbs: Imperfect

Now, what do Middle-Only Verbs look like in the Imperfect? Using the Theme Vowel approach, we will add the PIA, the same Theme Vowel as the Present, and the Secondary Middle/Passive Endings. The Secondary Middle Passive Endings look like this:

Verbs: Middle/Passive Personal Endings of Secondary Tenses

	Singular	Plural
1	-μην	-μεθα
2	-σο	-σθε
3	-το	-ντο

So for δεχομαι = "I welcome", we want to say "we used to welcome." We get the Stem δεχ, add the PIA to get the Imperfect Stem ἐδεχ, find the 1st Plural Secondary Middle Ending –μεθα, notice it begins with a Nasal, so we add ο to the Imperfect Stem ἐδεχο, then we add –μεθα to get ἐδεχομεθα. Here are the rest of the forms, and again, the 2nd Singular contracts: -εσο → -εο → ου

Middle-Only Verbs: Formation of Imperfect Indicative Middle with Secondary Personal Endings

	Singular	Plural
1	ἐδεχομην	ἐδεχομεθα
2	ἐδεχου	ἐδεχεσθε
3	ἐδεχετο	ἐδεχοντο

What happens with ἀρνεομαι? The 2nd Singular contracts from right to left: εεσο → εεο → εου → ου

Contract Middle-Only Verbs: Formation of Imperfect Indicative Middle with Secondary Personal Endings

	Singular	Plural
1	ἠρνουμην	ἠρνουμεθα
2	ἠρνου	ἠρνεισθε
3	ἠρνειτο	ἠρνουντο

Examples: ἠσπαζομεθα, ἐλογιζου, ἠρχετο, We were going, you (s.) were embracing, they (pl.) were refusing, she was calculating

Formation of Middle-Only Verbs: Future

The Future is like the Present, but often with a sigma between the Stem and the Theme Vowel.

ῥυομαι = I deliver, rescue → ῥυ- → ῥυ- + -σ- → ῥυσ- is the Future Stem

Middle-Only Verbs: Formation of the Future Indicative Middle with Primary Personal Endings

	Singular	Plural
1	ῥυσομαι	ῥυσομεθα
2	ῥυσῃ	ῥυσεσθε
3	ῥυσεται	ῥυσονται

There are a few verbs that are Middle-Only in the Future, often verbs of Perception. You will need to know the Second Principal Part to know which ones these are. See Appendix D for Principal Parts.

Verbs: Formation of Future Indicative Middle with Primary Personal Endings for a Verb of Perception, ἀκουω

	Singular	Plural
1	ἀκουσομαι	ἀκουσομεθα
2	ἀκουσῃ	ἀκουσεσθε
3	ἀκουσεται	ἀκουσονται

Note that with these verbs, translation is unaffected by the change of voice: ἀκουομεν = we hear; ἀκουσομεθα = we will hear

The verb "be" is Middle-Only in the Future.

Verbs: Conjugation of Future Indicative Middle for εἰμι

	Singular	Plural
1	ἐσομαι	ἐσομεθα
2	ἐσῃ	ἐσεσθε
3	ἐσται	ἐσονται

Translate the following examples: λογισονται, ἐργασῃ, ἐσομεθα

Generate the following examples: We will welcome, you (pl.) will work, I will embrace

Formation of Middle-Only Verbs: Aorist

The Aorist Middle often looks like a hybrid between the Imperfect and the Future, since it uses both the PIA and the sigma around the Stem, but its Theme Vowel is an alpha, and it uses the Secondary Middle/Passive Endings.

Middle-Only Verbs: Formation of Aorist Indicative Middle with Secondary Middle/Passive Endings

	Singular	Plural
1	ἐλογισαμην	ἐλογισαμεθα
2	ἐλογισω (ασο → αο → ω)	ἐλογισασθε
3	ἐλογισατο	ἐλογισαντο

Are there Second Aorists of Middle-Only Verbs? Yes, but only one, γινομαι, is in common use, and its main tricksiness is its use of ο/ε Theme Vowels instead of alpha.

Middle-Only Verbs: Formation of Second Aorist Indicative Middle with Secondary Personal Endings

	Singular	Plural
1	ἐγενομην = I became	ἐγενομεθα = we became
2	ἐγενου = you (sing.) became	ἐγενεσθε = you (pl.) became
3	ἐγενετο = he/she/it/they (sing.) became	ἐγενοντο = they (pl.) became

Translate the following examples: ἠρνησαμεθα, ἐλογισαντο, ἠρξω

Generate the following examples: we began, you (sing.) calculated, she welcomed

Formation of Middle-Only Verbs: Imperatives

For the Present Imperative, take the 1st Person Singular Present Indicative Middle, lop the –ομαι, add the endings below. For the Aorist Imperative, take the 1st Person Singular Aorist Indicative, remove the PIA, lop the –α, and add the endings below:

Middle-Only Verbs: Personal Endings of Imperative Middle, Present and Aorist

	Sing.	Pl.
Present Imperative, 2nd Person	-ου (-εσο → -εο → -ου)	-εσθε
Aorist Imperative, 2nd Person	-αι	-ασθε

For epsilon-Contract verbs, -ου remains the same (ε + ου = ου), but ε- + -εσθε = -εισθε

Here is a typical Middle-Only verb.

Middle-Only Verbs: Conjugation of Imperative Middle, Present and Aorist (example)

	Sing.	Pl.
Present Imperative, 2nd Person	δεχου	δεχεσθε
Aorist Imperative, 2nd Person	δεξαι	δεξασθε

Examples: ῥυσαι, λογιζεσθε, ἀρνησασθε, ἀρχου

Formation of Middle-Only Verbs: Infinitives

The Infinitive Middle ending is –σθαι, but the theme vowel and Stem distinguish the Present from the Aorist.

Middle-Only Verbs: Endings of Infintive Middle, Present and Aorist

	Stem	Theme Vowel	Result
Present Infinitive Middle	Vocab form minus -ομαι	ε (contract Verbs: -ε + -ε- = -ει-)	ἀρχεσθαι, ἀρνεισθαι
Aorist Infinitive Middle	1st Sing. Aor. Indic. Mid. Minus PIA	α	ἀρξασθαι, ἀρνησασθαι

Another Example:

Middle-Only Verbs: Conjugation of Infintive Middle, Present and Aorist

Tense	Greek Form
Present Infinitive Middle	δεχεσθαι
Aorist Infinitive Middle	δεξασθαι

Formation of Middle-Only Verbs: Participles

Present Middle Participle

Formation: take form ending in -μαι, change –**μαι** to -**μενος**, -**μενη**, -**μενον** (declension is like **καλος, καλη, καλον**). So **δεχομαι** :

Middle-Only Verbs: Nom. Endings of Present Middle Participle

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nominative	δεχομενος	δεχομενη	δεχομενον	δεχομενοι	δεχομεναι	δεχομενα

Or you can think of the Present Middle Participle as Present Stem (Vocab form minus -ομαι) + Theme Vowel ο + Participle Marker μεν + 1st/2nd Declension Endings based on Gender, Number, and case.

Aorist Middle Participle

Formation: take the 1st Singular, Aorist Indicative Middle, remove the PIA, remove the –μην, add the Participle marker –μεν-, then add the endings of 1st/2nd Declension Adjectives like καλος, καλη, καλον.

ἠρξαμην → ἀρξαμην → ἀρξα- → ἀρξαμεν- OR

ἀρχομαι → ἀρχ- → add sigma, but no PIA: ἀρχ- + -σ- → ἀρξ- → ἀρξ- + α + μεν → ἀρξαμεν-

Middle-Only Verbs: Nom. Endings of Aorist Middle Participle

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nominative	ἀρξαμενος	ἀρξαμενη	ἀρξαμενον	ἀρξαμενοι	ἀρξαμεναι	ἀρξαμενα

Examples: δεξαμενον, ἀρχομεναι, ἀσπαζομενη, εὐαγγελισαμενα

Fun exercise: using a Middle-Only Verb, use it in all four tenses we know, but with a different object or subject.

Pseudo-Gender-Transgressive Nouns

This section could also be called, "Nouns That Seem to Transgress Gender Norms But Actually Do Not" or "Nouns of Confusing Gender." They seem to use the "wrong" endings for their gender, but they use the article that follows their gender.

First Declension Masculine Nouns

Some nouns follow a modification of the First Declension but are grammatically Masculine, mainly because they are jobs or the names of men. They follow these endings:

Nouns: Case Endings of First Declension Masculine Nouns, Eta and Alpha Types

	Eta-type Sing.	Eta-type Pl.	Alpha-type Sing.	Alpha-type Pl.
Nom.	-ης	-αι	-ας	-αι
Acc.	-ην	-ας	-αν	-ας
Gen.	-ου	-ων	-ου	-ων
Dat.	-ῃ	-αις	-ᾳ	-αις
Voc.	-α	-αι	-α	-αι

Examples: μαθητης, ὁ = "student, apprentice"; Ἡλιας, ὁ = Elijah; νεανιαι, οἱ = the youths

Example Nouns: First Declension Masculine Nouns, both Eta and Alpha Type

	Eta-type Sing.	Eta-type Pl.	Alpha-type Sing.	Alpha-type Pl.
Nom.	ὁ μαθητης	οἱ μαθηται	ὁ Ἡλιας	οἱ νεανιαι
Acc.	τον μαθητην	τους μαθητας	τον Ἡλιαν	τους νεανιας
Gen.	του μαθητου	των μαθητων	του Ἡλιου	των νεανιων
Dat.	τῳ μαθητῃ	τοις μαθηταις	τῳ Ἡλιᾳ	τοις νεανιαις
Voc.	ὡ μαθητα	ὡ μαθηται	ὡ Ἡλια	ὡ νεανιαι

Translate the following examples: κατα τον προφητην, τῳ ἀλθητῃ, ὡ Βαρναβα, των στρατιωτων

Generate the following examples: we saw Elijah, Paul wrote to the students, Barnabas is righteous

Feminine Second Declension nouns

Remember how γη = "earth, land, soil" is grammatically Feminine? Some nouns that look like λογος are also grammatically Feminine because they are located "on the earth," ἐπι της γης.

ἡ ὁδος = the road, the way, the Way (early name for Christian movement)

ἡ Αἰγυπτος γη = ἡ Αἰγυπτος = Egypt

ἡ ἐρημος γη = ἡ ἐρημος = the wilderness (literally, "the lonely land")

Nouns: Feminine Second Declension (example)

	Sing.	Pl.
Nom.	ἡ ἐρημος	αἱ ἐρημοι
Acc.	την ἐρημον	τας ἐρημους
Gen.	της ἐρημου	των ἐρημων
Dat.	τῃ ἐρημῳ	ταις ἐρημοις
Voc.	ὡ ἐρημε	ὡ ἐρημοι

ὁ Ἰησους ἐν τῃ ἐρημῳ ἠν.

ἡ Μαρια και ὁ Ἰωσηφ και ὁ Ἰησους ἀπο της Αἰγυπτου ἀπερχονται.

Vocabulary for Chapter 8

Middle-Only Verbs

ἔρχομαι = I come, go

ἀπ-ερχομαι = I come, go away

δι-ερχομαι = I come, go through

εἰσ-ερχομαι = I enter

ἐξ-ερχομαι = I exit

παρ-ερχομαι = I pass by, go along

προσ-ερχομαι = I approach

συν-ερχομαι = I go with

ἅπτομαι = I touch + Gen.

ἀρνεομαι = I deny, refuse

ἄρχομαι = I begin + Gen.

ἀσπαζομαι = I embrace

δεχομαι = I welcome

ἐργαζομαι = I work

εὐ-αγγελιζομαι = I proclaim the good news

λογιζομαι = I reason, calculate, consider

προσ-ευχομαι = I pray to + Dat.

προσ-καλεομαι = I summon

ῥυομαι = I rescue, deliver

Masculine Nouns of the First Declension

Ἡρῳδης, ὁ = Herod

Ἰωαννης, ὁ = John

μαθητης, ὁ = student, apprentice

προφητης, ὁ = prophet

στρατιωτης, ὁ = soldier

ὑπηρετης, ὁ = servant

Βαρναβας, ὁ = Barnabas

Ἰουδας, ὁ = Judas

Σατανας, ὁ = Satan

Ἠλιας, ὁ = Elijah

Three Feminine Nouns of the Second Declension

Αἰγυπτος, ἡ = Egypt

ἐρημος, ἡ = wilderness

ὁδος, ἡ = road

Family Story: Philip Crosses the Desert

ὁ Φιλιππος τον οἰκον ὑπηγε, και την ἐρημον διηρχετο. ἐν τη ἐρημῳ, πολλα ὀφιδια (little snakes) ἐβλεψεν, ἀλλα τα ὀφιδια τον Φιλιππον παρηρχετο, ζητουντα ἑτερον θηριον. ὁ Φιλιππος πολυν ἀρτον οὐκ εἰχον, συκα (figs) ἀπο δενδρων (trees) δε εὑρεν (he found). παρα τω ποταμω (river), ὁ Φιλιππος ἐπαυσατο (stopped) και προσεκυνησεν τω θεῳ. οἱ λεοντες (lions) τον Φιλιππον φαγειν (to eat) ἠθελησαν, ἀλλα ὁ θεος τους λεοντας (lions) ἀπο του Φιλιππου ἀπεστρεψεν (turned away).

Scripture: Jacob Wrestles the Angel

Genesis 32:24-28 = Genesis 32:25-29 LXX. Read without translating.

ὑπελείφθη δὲ Ιακωβ μόνος καὶ ἐπάλαιεν ἄνθρωπος μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἕως πρωί. εἶδεν δὲ ὅτι οὐ δύναται πρὸς αὐτόν καὶ ἥψατο τοῦ πλάτους τοῦ μηροῦ αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐνάρκησεν τὸ πλάτος τοῦ μηροῦ Ιακωβ ἐν τῷ παλαίειν αὐτὸν μετ᾽ αὐτοῦ. καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ ἀπόστειλόν με ἀνέβη γὰρ ὁ ὄρθρος ὁ δὲ εἶπεν οὐ μή σε ἀποστείλω ἐὰν μή με εὐλογήσῃς. εἶπεν δὲ αὐτῷ τί τὸ ὄνομά σού ἐστιν ὁ δὲ εἶπεν Ιακωβ. εἶπεν δὲ αὐτῷ οὐ κληθήσεται ἔτι τὸ ὄνομά σου Ιακωβ ἀλλὰ Ισραηλ ἔσται τὸ ὄνομά σου ὅτι ἐνίσχυσας μετὰ θεοῦ καὶ μετὰ ἀνθρώπων δυνατός.

Verb Synopsis Example:

This is a useful way to see whether you remember the endings of verbs. Pick a person (1st, 2nd, or 3rd) and a number (singular or plural), and generate all the forms we know of the Indicative tenses, then all Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle forms we know.

Verb: λυω	Person and Number: 3rd person plural
Present Active or Middle Indicative	λυουσιν
Imperfect Active or Middle Indicative	ἐλυον
Future Active or Middle Indicative	λυσουσιν
Aorist Active or Middle Indicative	ἐλυσαν
Present Imperative Active, 2nd singular	λυε
Present Imperative Active, 2nd plural	λυετε
Aorist Imperative Active, 2nd singular	λυσον
Aorist Imperative Active, 2nd plural	λυσατε
Present Infinitive Active	λυειν
Aorist Infinitive Active	λυσαι
Present Participle, Masc. Nom. Sing.	λυων
Present Participle, Fem. Nom. Sing.	λυουσα
Present Participle, Neut. Nom. Sing.	λυον
Aorist Participle, Masc. Nom. Sing.	λυσας
Aorist Participle, Fem. Nom. Sing.	λυσασα
Aorist Participle, Neut. Nom. Sing.	λυσαν

Assignment 22

Name:_____

This homework covers Middle-Only verbs. ἀρνεομαι and προσκαλεομαι are ε-contract as well as Middle-Only. Review Middle-Only Participles, including the Feminine.

Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English to Greek.

1. ὁ Τιμοθεος τον Παυλον ἐν τῳ κυριῳ ἠσπασατο.

2. προ της της ἡμερας ἀρχης, ὦ Πετρε, ἀρνησῃ τον Χριστον.

3. ἐξεστι παρερχεθαι την της Γαλιλαιας θαλασσαν.

4. τῳ θεῳ προσκυνησασαι, ἀπο της μεγαλης συναγωγης ἀπηρχομεθα.

5. ὦ ἀδελφη, εἰς το ἁγιον ἱερον εἰσεχρου, ἐργασαμενη τα καλα ἐργα.

6. ὦ ἀποστολοι, ἀρξεσθε πιστευσαι τῳ Χριστῳ μετα τα αὐτου σημεια;

7. Where did you (pl.) proclaim the good news? We proclaimed the good news in many

    places. (Only 6 words of Greek! Augment the εὐ- to ηυα)

Grad Assignment 22

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. New word: καιπερ = although + Participle – see Participle Uses chart

1. ἡ Μαρια, ἀσπαζομενη τον υἱον, αὐτον ἐν τῃ οἰκιᾳ ἐδεξατο.

2. ὁ Πετρος, καιπερ ἀρνησαμενος τον Χριστον, ἐτι ηὐαγγελισατο.

3. ὦ κυριε, ῥυσαι τας ἁγιας ἐκκλησιας ἀπο των πονηρων.

4. ὦ ἀποστολοι, τα θηρια λογισασθε. οἰκους οὐκ οἰκοδομουσιν, ἀλλα περιπατουσιν.

5. I will not touch the dead nor tombs because of the righteousness of the law.

6. It is not necessary for the sisters to summon the rabbi to their house.

7. Although not yet sending an angel, God rescued Israel.

8. While we were receiving the message of Christ, we tried to depart from Galilee.

Assignment 23

Name:_____

This homework covers other forms of εἰμι = "I am" and the Nouns of Confusing Gender

Participles of εἰμι	Present Masculine	Present Feminine
Nominative Singular	ὤν	οὖσα
Nominative Plural	ὄντες	οὖσαι

Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English to Greek.

1. ὁ Ἡρῳδης ἠν πονηρος, και ἠμεθα στρατιωται αὐτου.

2. μετα τον θανατον του Ἰουδα, ὁ Βαρναβας ἐσται ἀποστολος του Χριστου.

3. ὁ Ἰωαννης και ὁ Ἰησους εἰς την ἐρημον εἰσερχονται και ζητουσι τον θεον.

4. ὤν προφητης ἀγαθος, ὁ Ἡλιας παντοτε τῳ κυριῳ προσηυχετο.

5. αἱ ἀδελφαι, οὖσαι δικαιαι, τους νομους ἐν ταις οἰκιαις ἐτηρουν.

6. ὑπηρεται του ἱερου εἰναι οὐκ ἠθελησαμεν, ἀλλα μαθηται δικαιοι του ῥαββι.

7. Where were the prophets of righteousness? You (pl.) did not summon them.

8. Lord, rescue the people[3] of Israel out of the land of Egypt!

---

[3] You can use the word for "people", or just make Israel grammatically masculine.

Grad Assignment 23

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. New word: καιπερ = although + Participle

1. την του Χριστου ἐκκλησιαν την ὁδον ἐκαλεσαμεν.

2. προ του Ἡρῳδου, ἐξην τῳ Ἰωαννῃ περιπατειν ἐν ἐρημῳ [ἐξην from ἐξεστιν]

3. ὄντες ἀποτολοι, ὁ Παυλος και ὁ Βαρναβας εἰς πολλους τοπους εἰσερχονται.

4. «Ὦ Σατανα, ἐξερχου ἐνωπιον του κυριου.» ἐλεγεν ὁ Ἰησους τῳ δαιμονιῳ.

5. εἰ θελεις εἰναι μηθητης του Χριστου Ἰησου, πιστευσον τῳ εὐαγγελιῳ.

6. ἀγοντες τον Ἰησουν, ἐκ της Αἰγυπτου ἐξερχονται ὁ Ἰωσηφ και ἡ Μαρια.

7. ἡ Σαλωμη ἡ πονηρα ἐλεξε, «Θελω ἀψασθαι της κεφαλης του Ἰωαννου.»

8. After they heard Jesus' voice, the soldiers said, "He is calling Elijah."

9. Although we were welcoming the prophets, we denied their upright words.

Chapter 9: Pronouns and conjunctions

Pronouns

A pronoun is a word that stands in for a noun or replaces it in a later sentence. For example, in English, the pronouns in the following sentences are "We" and "them":

We see lovely apples. **We** want to eat **them**.

Note that Greek does not need to express "we" since the verb ending includes this information, but "them" is pretty necessary.

καλα μηλα βλεπομεν. αὐτα φαγειν θελομεν.

Demonstrative Pronouns

Two Demonstrative ("pointing out") Pronouns are οὐτος = this, these (plural); ἐκεινος = that, those (plural). Greek use is similar to English.

They ordered us to make bread, and we did **that** (task).

We taught the children, and the entire church loved **these**.

Demonstrative Pronouns can also be used as adjectives when they modify nearby nouns: **That** bread was lovely. **These** children teach others.

Their forms look like αὐτος in Chapter 3, except for the Nominative and Accusative Neuter Singular.

Demonstrative Pronoun/Adjective οὐτος = "this, these"

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom. Sing.	οὐτος	αὐτη	τουτο
Acc. Sing.	τουτον	ταυτην	τουτο
Gen. Sing.	τουτου	ταυτης	τουτου
Dat. Sing.	τουτῳ	ταυτῃ	τουτῳ
Nom. Pl.	οὐτοι	αὐται	ταυτα
Acc. Pl.	τουτους	ταυτας	ταυτα
Gen. Pl.	τουτων	τουτων	τουτων
Dat. Pl.	τουτοις	ταυταις	τουτοις

Notice the alternation in the Stem between του- and ταυ-. The rule is simple: use του- before endings containing ο or ω, and use ταυ- before endings containing α or η. Remember, ταυ- is pronounced "taf" because it is followed by a devoiced consonant.

Demonstrative Pronoun/Adjective ἐκεινος = "that, those"

"that"	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Sing.	ἐκεινος	ἐκεινη	ἐκεινο
Acc. Sing.	ἐκεινον	ἐκεινην	ἐκεινο
Gen. Sing.	ἐκεινου	ἐκεινης	ἐκεινου
Dat. Sing.	ἐκεινῳ	ἐκεινῃ	ἐκεινῳ
Nom. Pl.	ἐκεινοι	ἐκειναι	ἐκεινα
Acc. Pl.	ἐκεινους	ἐκεινας	ἐκεινα
Gen. Pl.	ἐκεινων	ἐκεινων	ἐκεινων
Dat. Pl.	ἐκεινοις	ἐκειναις	ἐκεινοις

Both these words can be used as pronouns or adjectives, just as in English.

Pronoun: Look at **this**!　　　　Adjective: Look at **this** boat!

But depending on use, sometimes you will need to add extra words, just as with Substantive Adjectives.

ἐκεινη ἐστιν ἡ Σαλωμη. = That is Salome. OR That **woman** is Salome.

When they are adjectives, add an article, because you are talking about a specific noun. With these words, the article normally appears between the adjective and the noun. This use of the article breaks the rules about Attributive and Predicate Positions from Chapter 5.

βλεψον τουτο.　　　　βλεψον τουτο το πλοιον.

βλεψατε ἐκεινους τους ἀρτους.　　　　βλεψατε ταυτην την ἐκκλησιαν.

τουτο το ἱερον βλεψουσιν, ἀλλα οὐκ ἐκεινο.　　που ἐρχεται ἐκεινη;

Review of Αὐτος

We have already met third-person pronouns, specifically one use of αὐτος to mean "he/she/it/they", in previous chapters.

Here are some examples of the use of αὐτος as a third-person pronoun.

τον ἀρτον ἐποιησαν. αὐτον φιλουμεν. = They made the bread. We love **it**. (Why not "We love him"?)

προς την οἰκιαν αὐτου ἐρχομεθα = We are going to **his** house.

This pronoun rarely appears in the Nominative, except for emphasis.

αὐτη τουτο το βιβλιον ἐγραψεν. = **She herself** wrote this book.

Remember also the use of this pronoun in Attributive Position to mean "the same."

τῳ αὐτῳ ἀποστολῳ ἐλεγομεν. = We were speaking to **the same** apostle.

Other 3rd Person Pronouns

ἀλλος = other and ἀλληλος = one another

Ἄλλος is an adjective meaning "another, other," and it follows the declension of ἐκεινος. Its position relative to the article will vary. It means "another" of the same type, while ἑτερος means "other, different, of a different type."

Ἄλληλος means "one another," and it almost always appears in the plural.

ἀλληλους φιλησατε, ὡς ὑμας φιλω. = Love one another, as I love you.

First and Second Person Pronouns

Now we will move on to first and second-person pronouns, such as "we" and "you" in English.

Here are the Greek personal pronouns with their equivalents in English:

Personal Pronouns

Case	1st person Singular	1st person Plural	2nd person Singular	2nd person Plural
Nominative/Vocative	ἐγω = I	ἡμεις = we	συ = you (sing.)	ὑμεις = you (pl.)
Accusative	με / ἐμε = me	ἡμας = us	σε = you (sing.)	ὑμας = you (pl.)
Genitive	μου / ἐμου = mine, my, of me	ἡμων = our, ours, of us	σου = your, yours, of you (sing.)	ὑμων = your, yours, of you (pl.)
Dative	μοι / ἐμοι = to/for me	ἡμιν = to/for us	σοι = to/for you (sing.)	ὑμιν = to/for you (pl.)
Vocative	(none)	(none)	συ = you (sing.)!	ὑμεις = you (pl.)!

ὁ Χριστος σε ἐσωσεν, καὶ ὁ Χριστος με ἐσωσεν. ὁ ἀρτος ὑμων ἐστιν καλος. ὁ Ἰησους ἡμιν ἐλεγεν.

Again, the Nominative is rarely used except for emphasis.

ἐγω εἰμι ὁ διδασκαλος. = **I myself** am the teacher.

ἡμεις εἰς ἐκεινο το ἱερον ἐρχομεθα. = **We ourselves** are going into that temple.

One irritating thing is that the 1st person plural pronouns and the 2nd person plural pronouns are pronounced exactly the same, even though the forms look different when you see them in a written text. For example, ἡμας and ὑμας are both pronounced "hee-mas", but if you have more context or if you can see the beginning letter, you know which one is meant, "us" or "you (pl.)" as Accusative. This problem created a lot of scribal errors in Biblical manuscripts, but the theology is rarely affected, so it can be hard to tell which one is the error.

For example, ὅτι ἡμῖν/ὑμῖν ἐχαρισθη = "because it was granted to us/to you (pl.) [to believe in Christ]…" (Philippians 1:29).

Reflexive Pronouns

We will also add reflexive pronouns, where we do things to or for ourselves. These work like the words in English ending in "-self:" "myself," "herself," "ourselves." For the first and second persons, only the singulars exist as distinct forms, and these are a mashup of the Acc. Sing. + αὐτος. ἐμαυτος, σεαυτος. For first person plural, second person plural and, the third person, use the obsolete pronoun ἑ + αὐτος = ἑαυτος.

ἐμαυτῳ ἐλεγον.   σεαυτον ἐβλεψας.   ἑαυτους φιλουμεν.

τα προβατα προς την γην ἐμαυτου ἀγω.

Conjunctions

First, we need to review the idea of "clause": a subject and a predicate. The subject performs the action of the sentence, while the predicate is the rest of the sentence, the verb and everything that goes with it. English often distinguishes between subordinating conjunctions and coordinating conjunctions. Subordinating conjunctions show that one clause forms the background for another: "after" "since", etc. Coordinating conjunctions show that one clause is equal to another: "and" "but" "yet", etc.

Here is how they work in Greek

Subordinating Conjunctions

Word	Meaning	Notes
διοτι	because	Literally δια + ὁτι = "because of the fact that"
εἰ	if	always negated with μη
εἰτε	and if	always negated with μη, see τε below
εἰτε…εἰτε	whether…or	always negated with μη, see τε below
ἐπει	since, after	can be replaced with Participle, especially Aorist

ἐπει ἡ Σαλωμη το βιβλιον ἐγραψεν, αὐτο προς την ἐκκλησιαν ἐπεμψεν.

εἰτε τα τεκνα κραζει εἰτε ἐργαζεται, αὐτα φιλησατε!

Coordinating Conjunctions

Word	Meaning	Notes
και	and, even, also	We already know this word, but here it introduces a new clause. This conjunction can come first in a sentence, clause, or phrase.
διο	therefore	can come first in sentence, in origin, δια ὅ = "because of which" (see next chapter)
τε	and	This is a weaker form of καὶ and cannot come first in a sentence. Sometimes used with καὶ in a grammatical "tag team" to show that two words or phrases are closely connected.
γαρ	for, because, since	Again, this word cannot come first.
οὐν	therefore, consequently	cannot come first
ἀρα (ἄρα)	so, then, after all	cannot come first, not to be confused with ἆρα, which comes first in a sentence to indicate a question.
δε	and, but	cannot come first, weaker than καὶ, but can be used for both connection and contrast
μεν...δε	but, and; both...and; on the one hand...on the other hand;	another grammatical "tag team", if you see a μεν, expect a δε in the next clause or phrase. Sometimes, it is more elegant to ignore μεν, but translate δε as "but" or "and."

How could you translate this sentence? τοις μεν λογοις εὐαγγελισομεθα, τοις δε ἐργοις.

If you generate your own examples for the conjunctions above, you will remember them better.

Vocabulary for Chapter 9

Pronouns and Adjectives

ἀλληλος, -η, -ον = one another

ἀλλος, ἀλλη, ἀλλο = other

ἑαυτος, -η, -ον = himself, herself, themself, itself, ourselves, yourselves

ἐγω, ἡμεις = I, we

ἐκεινος, ἐκεινη, ἐκεινο = that, the former

ἐμαυτος, -η, -ον = myself

ἐμος, -η, -ον = my

κἀγω = and I

ὁλος, -η, -ον = whole, entire

οὑτος, αὑτη, τουτο = this, the latter

ποιος, -α, -ον = of what kind? (-οι- qualitative element)

ποσος, -η, -ον = how great? (-οσ- quantitative element)

σεαυτος, -η, -ον = yourself

σος, -η, -ον = your

συ, ὑμεις = you (sing.), you (pl.)

τοιουτος, τοιαυτη, τοιουτο = such, of such a kind (τοι- qualitative element + οὑτος)

Conjunctions

ἀρα = so, then, after all; (introduces a question)

γαρ = for, because

γε = indeed, at least

δε = and, but

διο = therefore

διοτι = because

εἰτε = and if

εἰτε…εἰτε = whether…or

ἐπει = since

μεν = on the one hand, both

μηποτε = never (with non-Indicative verbs)

οὐν = consequently, therefore

ουποτε = never (with Indicative verbs)

τε = and

τε...και = both...and

Neuter Nouns

ἀρνιον, το = lamb

δενδρον, το = tree

μυστηριον, το = mystery, secret

ποτηριον, το = cup

Family Story: Questions and Answers

Salome and Philip talk about the world God made. ἄκρον, το = top, summit, χωρα, ἡ = region, territory

Σαλωμη: Ποση ἐστιν ἡ θαλασσα;

Φιλιππος: Ἡ μεν Θαλασσα της Γαλιλαιας ἐστι μεγαλη, ἐγω δε της γης ὑπ' αὐτην οὐποτε ἡψαμην.

Σ: Ποσοι εἰσιν οἱ οὐρανοι;

Φ: Τον ἄκρον αὐτων οὐποτε βλεψεις.

Σ: Ποση ἐστιν ἡ γη;

Φ: Οὐκ βλεπομεν ποσους ἀνθρωπους ἡ γη ἔχει, καὶ οὐπω ἐγω ἐξω ταυτης της χωρας περεπατησα.

Scripture: Jesus at Gethsemani

Matthew 26:36-39, Try to read for recognition rather than translation.

τότε ἔρχεται μετ' αὐτῶν ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἰς χωρίον λεγόμενον Γεθσημανὶ καὶ λέγει τοῖς μαθηταῖς καθίσατε αὐτοῦ ἕως οὗ ἀπελθὼν ἐκεῖ προσεύξωμαι. καὶ παραλαβὼν τὸν Πέτρον καὶ τοὺς δύο υἱοὺς Ζεβεδαίου ἤρξατο λυπεῖσθαι καὶ ἀδημονεῖν. τότε λέγει αὐτοῖς περίλυπός ἐστιν ἡ ψυχή μου ἕως θανάτου μείνατε ὧδε καὶ γρηγορεῖτε μετ' ἐμοῦ. καὶ προελθὼν μικρὸν ἔπεσεν ἐπὶ πρόσωπον αὐτοῦ προσευχόμενος καὶ λέγων, « πάτερ μου, εἰ δυνατόν ἐστιν, παρελθάτω ἀπ' ἐμοῦ τὸ ποτήριον τοῦτο, πλὴν οὐχ ὡς ἐγὼ θέλω, ἀλλ' ὡς σύ.

Assignment 24

Name:_____

This Assignment covers the new adjectives, ἐκεινος, οὐτος, αὐτος, ἐαυτος, ἀλλος, ἀλληλος All students:
Please translate the boldfaced phrases from English to Greek.
Example: We love **those brothers**. ____ ἐκεινους τους ἀδελφους ____

1. They made **these houses**. _____

2. We spoke **to other sisters**. _____

3. The large beast is not **the same one** that bit me. _____

4. Herod saw **himself** in the mirror. _____

5. Disciples, love **one another** as I loved you. _____

6. For the sake **of herself**, Mary went to Jerusalem. _____

7. You (pl.) welcomed **the same soldiers** again. _____

Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English to Greek.

1. ἀπηρχοντο ἐκεινοι οἱ ἀποστολοι ἀπο του ἱερου προς τα πλοια.

2. ὁ Ἰωαννης, ὁ βαπτισας πολλους, ἑαυτον οὐκ ἐσωσεν.

3. φιλησατε ἀλληλους, οὐ ποιησαντες τα ἐργα ἀλληλων.

4. ταυτας τας ἀδελφας ἐν τῳ κυριῳ δεξασθαι δει.

5. Those prophets of righteousness, saying, "Repent!" once spoke to Herod.

6. We love that bread, but it will not be permitted to touch it after this season.

Grad Assignment 24

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. Look at the four neuter nouns in the vocabulary for Chapter 9 and one new verb, χορευω = I dance.

1. δια ταυτης της ἐρημου διηρχετο ὁ Ἰωαννης προς την ἀλλην συναγωγην.

2. ἐξεσται τη Σαλωμη χορευσαι δια την κεφαλην του Ἰωαννου. (not "our" Σαλωμη, but the Biblical one)

3. τα ποτηρια ἐκ του ἱερου προς ἐκεινας τας οἰκιας ἠγομεν.

4. περι του του του Χριστου θανατου μυστηριου ἐλαλειτε.

5. γραφων ταυτα τα βιβλια, ὁ Παυλος τω θεω προσηυχετο.

6. ἡ πονηρα Σαλωμη, ἡ χορευων, ἐποιησεν ἐκεινα τα πονηρα ἐργα.

7. We said to the brothers and to the sisters, "Dance with one another!" ("with" + person?)

8. John, who had proclaimed the way of the Lord, baptized those men.

9. Herod does not speak to these soldiers about righteousness or about peace.

Assignment 25

Name:_____

This Assignment covers all the vocabulary in Chapter 9 and the first & second person pronouns, regular and reflexive. All students: Please translate the boldfaced words from English to Greek. Example: I found **you (sing.)** in the temple. _____σε_____

1. They love **us**. _____

2. We make bread on behalf of **you (sing.).** _____

3. We spoke to **you (pl.).** _____

4. O hypocrite, save **yourself**! _____

5. I heard the voice of **my own** sister. _____

Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English to Greek.

1. σε μεν ὁ Ἡρῳδης ἐφιλησε, τον δε Ἰωαννην οὐ.

2. φιλει γε ἐμε ὁ θεος, ὁ γαρ αὐτου υἱος τουτο ἐκηρυξεν.

3. σωσας τα ἀρνια ἀπο των θηριων, μηποτε ὑπαγε ἐκ του οἰκου.

4. ὁ οὐν Πετρος, τους νομους τηρων, οὐχ ἁπτεται τουτου του ποτηριου.

5. εἰτε ἐστε ἀγαπητοι, εἰτε ἐστε μακαριοι, ὑμεις ἐστε τα του θεου τεκνα.

6.We ourselves were praying to the only God, since we do not worship other gods.

7. It was necessary for me to build houses of a such a kind for the other Judeans. [ἐδει in Imperfect]

Grad Assignment 25

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. διο ἐλαλει ἡ Μαρια τοις πιστοις μαθηταις περι των ἁγιων μυστηριων.

2. ὁ μεν Ἡλιας ἀρτον ἀπο των θηριων λαμβανει, ὁ δε Ἡρῳδης, ἀπο του λαου.

3. ὁ γαρ Ἰησους ἠθελησε τουτο το ποτηριον ἀπερχεσθαι ἀφ᾽ ἑαυτου.

4. ἐδει ἡμας ἀγειν ἀρτον τοις ἀλλοις ἀδελφοις δια την ἀγαπην ἡμων.

5. ποιοι ἀποστολοι ἠσαν ἐν τη Ἰσραηλ; ποσος ἠν ὁ ὀχλος περι τον Ἰησουν;

6. ἡμεις σε βαπτισομεν, εἰ τῳ Ἰησου συν τη ὁλη καρδιᾳ πιστευεις.

7. Therefore, we wish to save the souls of others, since we saved our own souls.

8. According to your (sing.) soldiers, it is no longer permitted to worship God in the temple.

9. "O Israel, make a road in the desert!" said our great prophet.

Assignment 26

Name:_____

This Assignment mixes things up with a little dialogue between St. John Chrysostom and his friend the deaconess Olympia (flourished c. 400 CE) in sentences that review vocabulary and pronouns we know. All students: translate the following dialogue into English with the aid of your book; also, note the words ἀσθενεω = I am sick; διακονη, ἡ = deaconess, female deacon; ἡσυχια, ἡ = silence; νεος, -α, -ον = young; σκηνη, ἡ = tent; Συρια, ἡ = Syria, and the phrase πως ἐχεις; = How do you hold? OR How are you? (also in Modern Greek)

Όλυμπια---- Πως ἐχεις, ὠ Ἰωαννα; πολλα ἐργα ποιων, τω θεω ἐτι προσευχῃ;

Ἰωαννης---- Ποιω μεν πολλα, ἐν δε τη ἐρημῳ περιπατησαι θελω. ἐκει παντοτε προσευχομαι.

Όλυμπια---- Ὠν νεος, ἐν τη ἐρημῳ της Αἰγυπτου περεπατησας;

Ἰωαννης---- Ἠθελησα μεν ἀπερχεσθαι εἰς την ἐρημον της Αἰγυπτου, περεπατησα δε ἐν σκηνη ἐν τη

Συριᾳ, ἀλλα ἠσθενουν και ὑπηγον.

Grad Assignment 26

Graduate Students: Please translate the following dialogue into English with the aid of your book.

Ἰωαννης---- Πως ἐχεις, ὠ Όλυμπια; πολλους θεραπευεις, σεαυτην οὐ θεραπευουσα;

Όλυμπια---- Νυν ἀλλους τε και ἐμαυτην θεραπευω, και παντοτε προσευχομενη. οὐσα δε νεα, ποτε

ἠσθενουν, διοτι παντοτε ἡργαζομην και ἐμαυτην οὐποτε ἐθεραπευον.

Ἰωαννης---- Ἐξεστι τοις πιστοις προσευξασθαι χωρις της ἡσυχιας

Όλυμπια---- Ναι, ἐξεστι ἀμην. ὡς διακονη, τα ἐμα ἐργα προσευχη, εἰ τοις δικαιοις δικαια ἐργαζομαι. ἐν

ταυτη τη ἐκκλησιᾳ ὁ λαος ἐμε παντοτε παρακαλει και ὑπερ μου προσευχεται.

Chapter 10: Complex Sentences

Relative Clauses

In English, Relative Clauses are a type of subordinate clause introduced by
"who/whom/whose/which/that".

The main reason to use Relative Clauses in English is so that you can express more than one idea about a
particular subject without repeating the same word.

Example:

We are sending Rebekah to the island. Rebekah is writing beautiful books. (clunky, Hemingwayesque)

CAN BECOME

We are sending Rebekah, who is writing beautiful books, to the island.   OR

Rebekah, whom we are sending to the island, is writing beautiful books.

Note how the Relative Pronoun changes case according to its function in the Relative Clause. In English,
who = Subject, whom = Object.

In Greek, Relative Clauses are a type of subordinate clause introduced by the Relative Pronoun **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ**.
Note the accents and breathing.

Case	Masc. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Sing.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Sing.	Neut. Pl.
Nominative	ὅς	οἵ	ἥ	αἵ	ὅ	ἅ
Accusative	ὅν	οὺς	ἥν	ἀς	ὅ	ἅ
Genitive	οὑ	ὧν	ἡς	ὧν	οὑ	ὧν
Dative	ᾧ	οἷς	ἡ	αἷς	ᾧ	οἷς

Something to ponder: Why is there no Vocative?

The declension is a lot like the article, but outside the Nominative, the initial tau (τ) is replaced with
rough breathing. In the Nominative, add an accent to the pronoun to differentiate it from the article.
The accent will flip from acute ἥ to grave ἣ if followed by another word. Moreover, except for the
Neuter Nom & Acc Sing., the declension is the endings of adjectives like καλος with rough breathings.
Note that if you know the declension of the definite article, you can mostly change tau to rough
breathing or make unaccented forms accented. Again, use Relative Clauses to avoid repeating the same
word.

**Key Rule: The Relative Pronoun agrees with what it replaces or represents (its antecedent) in gender
and number, but its case comes from its function within the Relative Clause.**

Here are the English sentences from above, but translated into Greek.

We are sending Rebekah to the desert. Rebekah is writing beautiful books.

= την Ῥεβεκκα προς την ἐρημον πεμπομεν. ἡ Ῥεβεκκα βιβλια καλα γραφει.

We are sending Rebekah, who is writing beautiful books, to the desert.

= την Ῥεβεκκα, ἣ βιβλια καλα γραφει, προς την ἐρημον πεμπομεν.

Rebekah, whom we are sending to the desert, is writing beautiful books.

= ἡ Ῥεβεκκα, ἣν προς την ἐρημον πεμπομεν, βιβλια καλα γραφει**.**

Can you change the word order? Yes, as long as it is clear what belongs in the Relative Clause and what the antecedent of the pronoun is, since the antecedent of a feminine singular pronoun could be either "the desert" or "Rebekah."

The desert to which we are sending Rebekah is beautiful.

καλη ἡ ἐρημος, προς ἣν την Ῥεβεκκα πεμπομεν.

Slanted Questions/Rhetorical Questions

Sometimes we ask questions to which we expect an answer: "Am I talking too much?" "Don't you want some more chips?" "You don't want any more chips, do you?" In English, "don't" or another negative word is a signal that you expect the answer "yes," while "Don't…do you?" expects "no."

Greek is a bit simpler. Questions that expect "yes" begin with Οὐ/Οὐκ/Οὐχ, and questions that expect "no" begin with Μη. The capitalization is just to remind you that these words come at the beginning of the question rather than at the end, not because they are different words from lowercase οὐ and μη.

Οὐ ἀρτον ποιησετε; = Won't you (pl.) make bread? (expects "yes")

Μη ἀρτον ποιησετε; = You (pl.) won't make bread, will you? (expects "no")

Ἀρα ἀρτον ποιησετε; = Will you (pl.) make bread? (neutral)

Indirect Statements

Direct Statements are what someone said, and Indirect Statements report what someone said. English marks Indirect Statements by "that," followed by a full clause. Greek marks Indirect Statements by ὁτι followed by a full clause, usually with an Indicative verb. Occasionally, Greek will use an Accusative Subject with an Infinitive Verb or an Accusative Subject with an Accusative Participle modifying it, but these are rare.

When you change a Direct Statement into an Indirect Statement, you may need to change a first or second person verb to the third person in both English and Greek. English often changes the tense of the verb when the Main Verb is in a Past or Secondary Tense, but Greek tries to preserve the tense of the original Direct Statement. Here is an example:

Direct Statement: «Οὐκ εἰμι πονηρος,» ὁ Ἡρωδης ἐλαλησεν. = "I am not wicked," said Herod.

Indirect Statement: ὁ Ἡρωδης ἐλαλησεν ὁτι οὐκ ἐστιν πονηρος. = Herod said that he was not wicked.

Note that Greek follows English in changing 1st to 3rd person, but Greek keeps the original Present tense rather than shifting to past, as English does.

Time Constructions

With time words like ἡμερα, you do not need prepositions in Greek to translate the following English prepositions, only non-Nominative cases:

English Preposition	Case	Example	Translation
For (Duration)	Accusative	δυο ἡμερας	for two days
During, Within (Limitation)	Genitive	δυο ἡμερων	within two days
At, On (Specification)	Dative	ἐκεινη τη ἡμερα	on that day

Examples: τη ἡμερα του κυριου, ἐκεινων των ἡμερων, πολλας ἡμερας

for five days, on this day, during the days of Pilate

Vocabulary for Chapter 10

ἀληθεια, ἡ = truth

ἀληθινος, -η, -ον = true

ἐκει = there, in that place

ἐκειθεν = from there

εὐθυς = immediately, at once

καθως = just as

καλως = appropriately, well

ναι = yes

ὁμοιος, -α, -ον = similar, like + Dat.

ὁμοιως = likewise

ὁπου = where

ὁς, ἥ, ὅ = who, which, that (not in questions)

ὁτι = because, that, (opening quote mark)

οὑ = where (note breathing!)

οὑδε = and not

οὑτε = neither

οὑτε…οὑτε = neither…nor

οὑτως = thus, in this manner

οὑχι = no, not, no way

πλην = however, yet, except

ποθεν; = from where? how?

ὡδε = here

ἐγγυς + Gen. = near, nearby

ἐμπροσθεν + Gen. = in front of

ἐνεκα + Gen. = for the sake of

περαν + Gen. = on the other side of

χωρις + Gen. = without

Πιλατος, ὁ = Pilate

ἐγγιζω = I approach, come near + Dat.

ἡγεομαι = I lead + Dat.

θαυμαζω = I marvel, am amazed, wonder at

θεραπευω = I heal

καθευδω = I sleep

Family Story: Descriptions of Family Members
watch the breathings to spot relative pronouns. add the word κωμη, ἡ = village

ἡ Σαλωμη, ἣ περι θαλασσων, οὐρανων, πιθηκων ἐλαλησεν, τον κοσμον περι ἑαυτης βλεπει. ὁ Φιλιππος,

ᾧ ἐξεστι γαμησαι, προς την ἀλλην κωμην περιπατει. ἡ Τρυφωσα, ἣν ἡ ἀδελφη φιλει, τον γαμον τῳ

Φιλιππῳ ζητει. ὁ Μαρκος, οὗ την οἰκιαν ὁ Ἰακωβος ᾠκοδομησεν, το εὐαγγελιον γραφει.

Scripture: John the Baptist
Mark 1:5-8, read without translating, note the relative pronoun in **boldface**.

καὶ ἐξεπορεύετο πρὸς αὐτὸν πᾶσα ἡ Ἰουδαία χώρα καὶ οἱ Ἱεροσολυμῖται πάντες καὶ ἐβαπτίζοντο ὑπ᾽

αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ Ἰορδάνῃ ποταμῷ ἐξομολογούμενοι τὰς ἁμαρτίας αὐτῶν. καὶ ἦν ὁ Ἰωάννης ἐνδεδυμένος

τρίχας καμήλου καὶ ζώνην δερματίνην περὶ τὴν ὀσφὺν αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐσθίων ἀκρίδας καὶ μέλι ἄγριον. καὶ

ἐκήρυσσεν λέγων ἔρχεται ὁ ἰσχυρότερός μου ὀπίσω μου **οὗ** οὐκ εἰμὶ ἱκανὸς κύψας λῦσαι τὸν ἱμάντα

τῶν ὑποδημάτων αὐτοῦ. ἐγὼ ἐβάπτισα ὑμᾶς ὕδατι, αὐτὸς δὲ βαπτίσει ὑμᾶς ἐν πνεύματι ἁγίῳ

Assignment 27

Name:_____

This Assignment covers Relative Pronouns and new vocabulary.
All students: Give the correct Greek form of the relative pronoun to translate the English relative pronoun in the following sentences, and add the accent on most Nominatives.
Example: The bread that you made is really good. _ὄν_____ (Explanation: Accusative because it is the Direct Object of "made", and Masc. Sing. because "bread" is masculine and singular. You do not need to write out an explanation for each form, but don't write random forms.)

1. Did Jesus baptize the disciple **who** betrayed him? _____

2. Mary, **to whom** the angel spoke, praised God. _____

3. We love the sisters **who** teach the children to be good. _____

4. Herod, **whom** the Romans approved, was not legitimate. _____

5. We planted the tree **that** became the cross. _____

Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English to Greek.

1. ὁ σος υἱος, ὅς σε ἀμην φιλει, τῃ σῃ οἰκιᾳ ἠγγισεν.

2. ἐθεραπευσεν ὁ θεος τοιαυτα τα θηρια ἃ ἐκει βλεπετε.

3. κηρυσσων ἐν τῳ Ἰσραηλ, ὁ Ἰωαννης πολλους, οἳ ἠσαν πιστοι, ἐβαπτιζεν.

4. ὁ μεν Ἀβρααμ τον του θεου νομον ἐτηρησε, συ δε, ὡ Ἰσραηλ, οὐκ.

5. οἱ στρατιωται οὓς ὡδε ἐβλεψαμεν οὐκ ἠσαν ἡμων, ἀλλα του Ἡρῳδου.

6. That god to whom we were praying is the God of Abraham and of Jacob.

7. It was never permitted for me, who am not Jewish, to be entering this temple.

Grad Assignment 27

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ὤν πιστος, ὁ θεος σωσει τουτον ὁς εἰς αὐτον πιστευει.

2. ὁ Ἡλιας, ᾧ τα θηρια ἀρτον ἠγε, ἠν προφητης ἀληθινος.

3. ἡ γαρ Μαρια, ᾗ ὁ ἀγγελος καλως ἐλαλησε, τον θεον ηὐλογησεν.

4. ὁ Ἡρῳδης ἠν ἀρα πονηρος, προσκαλουμενος τον Ἰωαννην.

5. ποσους ἀρτους ἡμιν ποιησετε, ὦ ἀδελφοι;

6. ὑπαγεις ἐκ της μεγαλης οἰκιας, ἐ ν ᾗ οἱ ἀποστολοι περιπατουσιν.

7. I used to bring into the desert only the book which talked to me about God.

8. We will proclaim the good news to you (pl.) who live (2 pl) around the Sea of Galilee.

9. But the prophets did not speak to Herod, who was evil.

Assignment 28

Name:_____

This Assignment covers Slanted Questions, Direct and Indirect Statements and new vocab.
All students: Give the right introductory word for each slanted question:
Example: We love good bread, don't we? -> Expects "yes" -> _____Οὐ _____
You will not take the children's food and give it to dogs, will you? -> Expects "no" -> _____Μη_____

1. Jesus baptized the disciple who betrayed him, didn't he? _____

2. The angel didn't speak to Herod, did he? _____

3. The children don't yet understand the Law, do they? _____

4. The tree of life grew in Eden, didn't it? _____

5. Didn't Jesus heal all those lepers? _____

Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English to Greek.

1. ὁ Χριστος τοις ἀποστολοις ἡγησατο, λεγων «Εἰμι ὁ της ζωης ἀρτος.»

2. μη ὁ Πιλατος τον Ἰησουν προς ἑαυτον προσεκαλεσατο;

3. ὁ Ἰωαννης ἐκηρυσσε ὁτι ὁ μεν Ἰησους ἐστι θεος, οὐ δε ὁμοιος θεῳ.

4. εὐθυς ὁ Πετρος πολλους ἐσωζε και ἐθεραπευε, καθως οἱ ἀλλοι ἀποστολοι.

5. I say that the Bible has many true words for us.

6. Isn't it necessary to say, "Lord, heal us from our sins"?

Grad Assignment 28

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ὦ Πιλατε, οὐ βλεπεις ὁτι ὁ Ἰησους ἐστιν ἡ ἀληθεια;

2. ὁ γαρ Ἡλιας ἐκηρυσσεν, Ὁ κυριος εὐθυς ἐγγισει, οὐχ ὁμοιος τοις ἀλλοις θεοις.

3. ἐθαυμαζε δε ἡ Μαρια ὁτι οἱ ἀγγελοι αὐτῃ συν μεγαλαις φωναις ἐγγιζουσιν.

4. μη ὁ Ἰωαννης ἠν Χριστος, μητε ὁ του θεου υἱος;

5. ὦ ἀδελφαι, των ἀποστολων ἠκουσατε, ἡγησαμεναι τοις τεκνοις εἰς την ἐκκλησιαν;

6. Οὐκ ἐλαλησας «Οὐχι προφητης ἐν τῃ ἐκκλησιᾳ τῃ ἑαυτου ἐχει δοξαν»; [why is the question mark outside the quotation marks?]

7. Won't you (pl.) seek God here in this desert?

8. While coming from there, we heard that Jesus was casting out many demons.

9. And immediately we were crossing to the other side of the Sea of Galilee, and Jesus was sleeping.

Assignment 29

Name:_____

This Assignment covers Time Constructions and new vocabulary. All students: Translate the underlined words into Greek:

Example: <u>For many days</u> we made bread for the brothers and sisters. -> ____πολλας ἡμερας_____

1.<u>During those days</u> we stayed with the other apostles. _____

2.<u>On the day</u> of the Lord, the foundations will be shaken. _____

3.We repaired the house <u>for two days</u>. _____

4.The lepers waited for Jesus <u>during the day</u> at the temple. _____

5.We healed the sick <u>after that day</u>. _____ [use preposition!]

Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English to Greek.

1. ἐκεινης της ὡρας, ὁ Ἰησους πολλους ἀνθρωπους ἐθεραπευσεν.

2. ταυτη τη ἡμερᾳ, ἡ γη τε και ὁ λαος την ἀληθειαν του θεου βλεψουσιν.

3. εὐθυς οἱ ἀποστολοι ἀπο της συναγωγης, ἡν ὁ ῥαββι ᾠκοδομησεν, ἀπερχονται.

4. μη λεγετε ὁτι τα δαιμονια οὐκετι ἐστιν ὡδε;

5. We were wondering at the scrolls which Elijah wrote during many days. ["wonder at" = 1 word]

6. O brothers, it is permitted for you to be sleeping because you walked for many days.

7. Saying, "Evil demons, be departing!" the apostles healed the people.

Grad Assignment 29

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ταυτης της ὡρας, ἐμε ἀρνησῃ, λεγων, Τουτον τον ἀνθρωπον οὐ φιλω.

2. μη καθευδετε; ὡραν γαρ δει ὑμας συν ἐμοι βλεψαι.

3. ὠ μαθητα, θαυμασον τα σημεια ἁ ὁ Ἰησους ἐποιει ἐν τῃ Ἰεροσαλημ.

4. ὠ στρατιωται, μη ὁ Ἡρῳδης ὑμιν ἡγειται;

5. ὁ λαος χωρις της ἀληθειας περιπατησει, καθως ἐν τῃ ἐρημῳ.

6. ζητησω τον κυριον ἐν τῳ ἱερῳ, ὁπου ὁ λαος της Ἰσραηλ αὐτῳ προσεκυνησεν.

7. For many hours, we did not see the demons who lived on the other side of the tombs.

8. And immediately Jesus healed them, because they believed in his miracles.

9. While we were approaching Galilee, we heard that they live in large houses indeed!

Chapter 11: Special verbs

Second Aorists

These Irregular Aorists are called "second aorists" because you usually learn them second, after the Regular Aorists we have already learned.

These are like English Irregular Preterites: I sing, I **sang**; I think, I **thought**. Notice how the changes are concentrated in the middle of the word.

Similarly, in Greek, the Second Aorists change stems, although usually recognizably. These stem changes help us recognize them as Aorists, although they can use the same endings as Imperfects in the Indicative and the Present everywhere else. The Third Principal Part always ends in –ov.

μανθανω = I learn, am learning

ἐμανθανον = I was learning (what tense?), μανθανειν = to be learning, μανθανουσα = while she is learning

2nd Aorist forms: ἐμαθον = I learned, μαθειν = to learn, μαθουσα = after she learned

Backstory: the real stem is μαθ-, as in English "mathematics," but Greek puts extra nasal infixes (ν/αν) into the Present and Imperfect to distinguish them from the Aorist: μαθ → μα(ν)θ(αν)

Here is another verb, with all the Aorist Indicative Active forms: ἀγω = I lead, ἠγαγον = I led (note vowel change in English)

Person	Sing.	Pl.
1st	ἠγαγον	ἠγαγομεν
2nd	ἠγαγες	ἠγαγετε
3rd	ἠγαγε(ν)	ἠγαγον

Aorist Active Infinitive: ἀγαγειν

Aorist Active Imperatives	Singular	Plural
2nd Person	ἀγαγε	ἀγαγετε

Aorist Active Participle	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nominative Singular	ἀγαγων	ἀγαγουσα	ἀγαγον
Nominative Plural	ἀγαγοντες	ἀγαγουσαι	ἀγαγοντα

The most common 2nd Aorists are in the table below (reproduced at Appendix D)

Common Second Aorist Verbs (Table)

Present	2nd Aorist Indicative	2nd Aorist Participle	Meaning
ἀγω	ἠγαγον	ἀγαγων, -ουσα, -ον	I lead
ἁμαρτανω	ἡμαρτον	ἁμαρτων, -ουσα, -ον	I sin
ἀποθνῃσκω	ἀπεθανον	ἀποθανων, -ουσα, -ον	I die
βαινω	ἐβην	βας, βασα, βαν	I walk
βαλλω	ἐβαλον	βαλων, -ουσα, -ον	I throw
γινομαι	ἐγενομην	γενομενος, -η, -ον	I become
γινωσκω	ἐγνων	γνους, γνουσα, γνουν	I know
ἐρχομαι	ἠλθον	ἐλθων, -ουσα, -ον	I come, go
ἐσθιω	ἐφαγον	φαγων, -ουσα, -ον	I eat
εὑρισκω	εὑρον/ηὑρον	εὑρων, -ουσα, -ον	I find
ἐχω	ἐσχον	σχων, -ουσα, -ον	I have
καταλειπω	κατελιπον	καταλιπων, -ουσα, -ον	I leave behind
λαμβανω	ἐλαβον	λαβων, -ουσα, -ον	I take
λεγω	εἰπον	εἰπων, -ουσα, -ον	I say
μανθανω	ἐμαθον	μαθων, -ουσα, -ον	I learn
ὁραω	εἰδον	ἰδων, -ουσα, -ον	I see
πασχω	ἐπαθον	παθων, -ουσα, -ον	I suffer, experience
πινω	ἐπιον	πιων, -ουσα, -ον	I drink
πιπτω	ἐπεσον	πεσων, -ουσα, -ον	I fall
φερω	ἠνεγκον	ἐνεγκων, -ουσα, -ον	I carry
φευγω	ἐφυγον	φευγων, -ουσα, -ον	I flee, escape

The worst offender is ἐρχομαι, ἠλθον, where not only the stem has changed, but the verb has changed from Middle-Only to Active. It is as bad as English, "I go, I went."

ἐρχομαι = I go, am going

ἠρχομην = I was going (what tense?), ἐρχεσθαι = to be going, ἐρχομενη = while she is going

2nd Aorist forms: ἠλθον = I went, ἐλθειν = to go, ἐλθουσα = after she went

Examples: λαμβανομεν, ἐλαβομεν, ἐρχονται, ἠλθον, λεγουσα, εἰπουσα

There are Second Aorists of Middle-Only verbs, but only one, γινομαι, ἐγενομην, is in common use, and its main tricksiness is its use of ο/ε Theme Vowels instead of alpha.

	Singular	Plural
1	ἐγενομην = I became	ἐγενομεθα = we became
2	ἐγενου = you (sing.) became	ἐγενεσθε = you (pl.) became
3	ἐγενετο = he/she/it/they (sing.) became	ἐγενοντο = they (pl.) became

The other one, rare in the NT, is ἀφικνεομαι, ἀφικομην = I arrive at/reach, I arrived at/reached (see Romans 16:19).

What would ἐγενομην look like in the other, non-Indicative moods?

Root Aorists

Root Aorists, sometimes called Third Aorists because we learn them third, occur mainly in two verbs: γινωσκω = I know, ἐγνων = I knew and βαινω = I walk, ἐβην = I walked. In the New Testament, βαινω appears only in compound verbs like καταβαινω = I go down, walk down. Note how the endings are added directly onto a stem ending with a vowel, rather than with any theme vowel like α or ο.

Root Aorist Indicative Active

	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	-ν	-μεν	ἐγνων	ἐγνωμεν	ἐβην	ἐβημεν
2nd	-ς	-τε	ἐγνως	ἐγνωτε	ἐβης	ἐβητε
3rd	----	-σαν	ἐγνω	ἐγνωσαν	ἐβη	ἐβησαν

Other moods:

Root Aorist Infinitives: γνωναι, βηναι

Root Aorist Imperatives

	Endings		γινωσκω		βαινω	
	2nd Sing.	2nd Pl.	2nd Sing.	2nd Pl.	2nd Sing.	2nd Pl.
Aorist Imperatives	-θι	-τε	γνωθι	γνωτε	βηθι	βητε

Root Aorist Participles of γινωσκω, βαινω

	Masc.	Fem.	NeutF.
Nom. Sing.	γνους	γνουσα	γνον
Nom. Pl.	γνοντες	γνουσαι	γνοντα
Nom. Sing.	βας	βασα	βαν
Nom. Pl.	βαντες	βασαι	βαντα

There are two other Root Aorists, 1) φυω= I grow, ἐφυν = I grew, and 2) χαιρω = I rejoice, ἐχαρην = I rejoiced. ἐφυν uses upsilon throughout its conjugation: ἐφυς, φυναι, φυθι, φυντες. Its Singular Participles look like this: φυς, φυσα, φυν. ἐχαρην uses eta and alpha, like ἐβην.

Examples: γνωτε, ἐγνωτε, αἱ ἀδελφαι αἱ καταβασαι, κατεβην, ἐχαρημεν, ὁ Ἰησους ἐφυ.

Liquid Futures

Many verbs with stems ending in "liquid" consonants—λ, μ, ν, ρ—do not have Futures or Aorists marked by sigmas. Instead, their Futures are epsilon-contract, change Stems, or both. Their Aorists also change Stems and usually use the 1st Aorist endings (with alphas).

A good example is ἀποστελλω = I send. It comes from the same root as ἀποστολος = messenger, apostle, one who is sent.

ἀποστελλετε = Present, you (pl.) are sending

ἀποστελειτε = Future, you (pl.) will send

ἀπεστειλατε = Aorist, you (pl.) sent

Common Liquid Verbs

Present (Part 1)	Future (Part 2)	Aorist (Part 3)	Meaning
σπειρω	σπερεω	ἐσπειρα	I sow
ἐγειρω	ἐγερεω	ἠγειρα	I raise, awaken
αἱρω	ἀρεω	ἠρα	I lift up
ἀποκτεινω	ἀποκτενεω	ἀπεκτεινα	I kill
ἀποστελλω	ἀποστελεω	ἀπεστειλα	I send
ἀγγελλω	ἀγγελεω	ἠγγειλα	I announce, report
μενω	μενεω	ἐμεινα	I stay, remain
κρινω	κρινεω	ἐκρινα	I judge, discern
ἀποθνησκω	ἀποθανεομαι	ἀπεθανον (2nd Aorist)	I die
βαλλω	βαλεω	ἐβαλον (2nd Aorist)	I throw
ὀφειλω	ὀφελεω	ὠφελον (2nd Aorist)	I owe, ought
χαιρω	χαρεω	ἐχαρην (Root Aorist)	I rejoice, I greet

Examples: βαλλεις, βαλεις, χαρουμεν, χαιρετε, ὀφειλομεν, ὀφελουμεν, ἀποθανειται, ἀπεθανεν, σπερουσιν, ἐσπειραν, ἀγγελειτε, ἀγγειλαι, ἐγειραντες, ἐγειροντες

Sometimes you can tell the difference between forms by the use of circumflex accents, which show where contractions have taken place and which are only on the Future forms.

μένει = Present, she stays   μενεῖ = Future, she will stay

You can use pronunciation to distinguish these forms when speaking: μένει is pronounced "MEN-ee," while μενεῖ is pronounced "men-EE"

Vocabulary for Chapter 11

Verbs with 2nd Aorists (see Appendix C)

ἁμαρτανω = I sin, err, do wrong

ἀποθνῃσκω = I die

γινομαι = I am born, become, happen

παραγινομαι = I arrive, stand by, show up

ἐσθιω = I eat

εὑρισκω = I find

καταλειπω = I leave behind

μανθανω = I learn

ὁραω = I see (we will learn the Present and Imperfect of this verb in Chapter 19)

ἰδου = behold, look! (derived from the 2nd Aorist of ὁραω, εἰδον)

πασχω = I suffer, experience

πινω = I drink

πιπτω = I fall

φερω = I carry, bear (English "ferry")

προσφερω = I bring to, offer

φευγω = I flee

Liquid Verbs

ἀπαγγελλω = report, announce

παραγγελλω = order + Dative

αἱρω = I lift up, raise

ἀποκτεινω = I kill

ἀποστελλω = I send

ἐγειρω = I raise, wake up

κρινω = I judge, discern

μενω = I stay, remain, abide

ὀφειλω = I owe, am obligated to

σπειρω = I sow, scatter

χαιρω = I rejoice, greet

Root Aorists

ἀναβαινω = I go up, ascend

καταβαινω = I go down, descend

γινωσκω = I know (usually person or idea)

ἀναγινωσκω = I read

ἐπιγινωσκω = I recognize

Family Story: Peter Comes for a Visit

ὁ Πετρος ἐστιν ὁ ἀδελφος της Τρυφωσης. ὁ μεν Πετρος προς την οἰκιαν αὐτης τοτε προσηρχετο, τον δε

Πετρον ἐδει περιπατησαι παρα την μεγαλην ὁδον. πολλαι οὖν ἡμεραι παρηλθον, και ἠν ὁ Πετρος οὐπω

ἐκει. ἀλλα τοτε, ἡ Σαλωμη ἀνθρωπον παρα τῃ ἀγορᾳ (market) εἰδεν. ἡ Σαλωμη τουτον τον ἀνθρωπον

ἐπεγνω|, ὁ γαρ Πετρος το Πασχα (Passover) ἐν τῃ οἰκιᾳ αὐτης προτερῳ (previous) ἐτει (year, Dative)

ἐτηρησεν.| ἡ Σαλωμη τον Πετρον προς την οἰκιαν ἠγαγεν, | και ὁ οἰκος αὐτον συν χαρᾳ ἠσπασατο.

Scripture: Parable of the Sower
Matthew 13:24-30. Which words do you now recognize?

24 ἀλλην παραβολην παρεθηκεν αὐτοῖς λεγων, "ὡμοιωθη ἡ βασιλεία τῶν οὐρανῶν ἀνθρώπῳ

σπείραντι καλὸν σπέρμα ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ αὐτοῦ. ἐν δὲ τῷ καθεύδειν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, ἦλθεν αὐτοῦ ὁ

ἐχθρὸς, καὶ ἐπέσπειρεν ζιζάνια ἀνὰ μέσον τοῦ σίτου καὶ ἀπῆλθεν. ὅτε δὲ ἐβλάστησεν ὁ χόρτος καὶ

καρπὸν ἐποίησεν, τότε ἐφάνη καὶ τὰ ζιζάνια. προσελθόντες δὲ οἱ δοῦλοι τοῦ οἰκοδεσπότου εἶπον αὐτῷ,

'κύριε, οὐχὶ καλὸν σπέρμα ἔσπειρας ἐν τῷ σῷ ἀγρῷ; πόθεν οὖν ἔχει ζιζάνια;' ὁ δὲ ἔφη αὐτοῖς, 'ἐχθρὸς

ἄνθρωπος τοῦτο ἐποίησεν.' οἱ δὲ δοῦλοι λέγουσιν αὐτῷ, 'θέλεις οὖν; ἀπελθόντες συλλέξωμεν αὐτά;' ὁ

δέ φησιν, 'οὔ, μήποτε συλλέγοντες τὰ ζιζάνια ἐκριζώσητε ἅμα αὐτοῖς τὸν σῖτον. ἄφετε συναυξάνεσθαι

ἀμφότερα ἕως τοῦ θερισμοῦ, καὶ ἐν καιρῷ τοῦ θερισμοῦ ἐρῶ τοῖς θερισταῖς, "συλλέξατε πρῶτον τὰ

ζιζάνια, καὶ δήσατε αὐτὰ εἰς δέσμας πρὸς τὸ κατακαῦσαι αὐτά. τὸν δὲ σῖτον συναγάγετε εἰς τὴν

ἀποθήκην μου."'"

Assignment 30

Name:_____

This Assignment introduces Second Aorists; begin memorizing the irregularities with help from Appendix C or the table in Chapter 11.

All students: Please generate Second Aorist forms to translate the **boldfaced** words. Remember that Infinitives, Imperatives, and Participles have no Past Indicative Augment or PIA.

1. We **ate** with Jesus. _____

2. They **drank** from the cup of bitterness. _____

3. You (pl.) **found** the tomb of that great apostle. _____

4. Cursed with immortality, the Sibyl wanted **to die**. _____

5. O shepherds, **go** (once) to Bethlehem, to Christ the Lord! _____

6. **Having seen** the star, the Magoi followed it. _____

7. **You (s.) knew** that Herod was evil. _____

8. **Having gone down** to Jerusalem, Jesus preached the gospel. _____

9. Soldier, **say** (once) to Herod the message about the Christ. _____

10. It was permitted for the soldiers **to take (once)** bread from us. _____

All Students: Translate the following sentences from Greek into English.

11. θελοντες ἀπελθειν ἐν πλοιοις, προς την θαλασσαν κατεβημεν.

12. ἠλθετε προς την γην οὑ ὁ Ἰησους ἐγενετο.

13. οὐ τα ἡμων πλοια προς την θαλασσαν ἐκειθεν ἠνεγκες;

Grad Assignment 30

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. Having seen his miracles, we worshiped Jesus, the son of God.

2. We carried the bread in front of the big church, where the people were.

3. They knew that Jesus had preached the gospel in Galilee.

4. "Soldiers, find (once) the child who will save Israel," said Herod.

5. ἤσθιον οἱ πιστοι, δεξαμενοι τους ἀποστολους.

6. αἱ ἀδελφαι ἐγενοντο ἀγαθαι, ἀκουσασαι τα βιβλια.

7. ὁ Ἡλιας ὁ προφητης ἐφαγε τον ἀρτον ὁν τα θηρια ἠγαγεν.

8. εἴπομεν ὁτι ὁ Παυλος ἡμιν πολλους λογους ἐγραψεν.

Assignment 31

Name:_____

This Assignment covers Second Aorists; memorize the irregularities in Appendix C.
All Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English to Greek.

1. καὶ εὐθυς κατεβην εἰς τα μνημεια, ὁπου τα δαιμονια κατοικει.

2. ποτε μεν ἐσχες πολλα και μεγαλα πλοια, νυν δε ἐχεις δυο.

3. ἠγαγομεν ἐκεινους τους ἀρτους ἐνεκα της ἐκκλησιας.

4. εὐθυς ἐγνωσαν οἱ ἀποστολοι τον Ἰησουν, ὁς αὐτοις ἠγγιζεν.

5. ὁ Ἰησους ἐπαθε και ἀπεθανε, ἀλλα το μνημειον κατελιπεν.

6. We said that God's glory was here in front of us.

7. Didn't you (pl.) eat the bread of life after having prayed to God?

8. I left my house and went to the land of Israel.

Grad Assignment 31

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1.ἐκ του ποτηριου μη πιε, εἰ μη ἀποθανειν ἐνεκα του εὐαγγελιου θελεις.

2. ἐπεσομεν ἐμπροσθεν του θεου και προσεκυνησαμεν αὐτῳ ἐν τῳ ἱερῳ.

3. ἐξελθουσα ἐκ της ἐρημου, τα προβατα εἰς τας οἰκιας ἠνεγκες.

4. ὦ στρατιωτα, ἐλθε και εἰπε τῳ Ἡρῳδῃ το σημειον ὃ εἰδες. [why the accent?]

5. ὁπου ὁ θεος ἐστιν, εὑρισκομεν την αὐτου χαραν.

6. ζητησαντες ἐκει, εἰδομεν τον Χριστον ἐν τῃ Ἰερουσαλημ.

7.Where is Jesus, whom you (pl.) were seeking? Did he leave his tomb?

8.Did you (pl.) sin against God or against man while not keeping the law?

9.You (pl.) ate and drank with Jesus, but you (pl.) did not yet know that he was the Christ.

Assignment 32

Name:_____

This Assignment covers Liquid Verbs in the Future and Aorist.
The accent ~ often shows that the verb is Epsilon-Contract in the Future.
Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English to Greek.

1. ἀπαγγελοῦμεν τα πονηρα ἐργα ἁ ὁ Ἡρῳδης ποιει.

2. την καλην γην εὑρων, καλως ἐσπειρας.

3. τον νεκρον αἱρομεν και αὑτον εἰς το μνημειον φερομεν.

4. ὁ Πιλατος τον Ἰησουν κατα τους νομους ἀπεκτεινεν.

5. ὁ θεος τους ἀποστολους προς πολλους τοπους ἀποστελεῖ.

6. You (s.) will remain in Jerusalem in the house in front of the temple.

7. While sinning many sins, will you (pl.) judge others?

8. The apostles will die for the sake of the truth, won't they?

Grad Assignment 32

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ἐκβαλῶ τα δαιμονια ἐκ του τεκνου ὡδε.

2. χαιρετε, ὠ ἀδελφαι. πως ἐχετε;

3. μετα τον θανατον τον ἡμων, το ποτηριον της χαρας πιομεθα.

4. ἐφυγον οἱ ἀποστολοι τον Πιλατον και την Ἰερουσαλημ.

5. ὀφελεις τῳ Παυλῳ πολλους λογους ἠ οὐ;

6. τοις τεκνοις ἀγαγειν τον ἀρτον προς την ἐκκλησιαν παραγγελεῖτε.

7. Behold, Mary, see your son!

8. We became apostles of joy after having heard the gospel from Jesus.

9. The brothers knew that Jesus had healed the sisters. [what was the tense of the report to the brothers?]

Chapter 12: Third declension (consonant stems), Part 1

Third Declension

A declension is a pattern of noun endings that "decline" (fall away from) the Nominative. The declensions are often numbered for a not-so-good reason. The first declension uses the vowels α or η, which come early in the alphabet, and the second declension uses the vowels o or ω, which come later in the alphabet. Since we run out of alphabet after ω, the third declension is based on consonant stems or on nouns that did not fit into the first two declensions. Also, the endings for the third declension may be older. For example the Masculine/Feminine Accusative Singular was originally –ν, like the first and second declensions, but when preceded by a consonant, the –ν turned into –α to become pronounceable.

In the vocabulary, Third Declension nouns have two forms: the Nominative Singular, like all the nouns we have seen so far, and the Genitive Singular, then the article for Gender. The Genitive Singular minus the –ος ending supplies the Stem for most of the forms outside the Nominative Singular.

νυξ, νυκτος, ἡ = night   σωτηρ, σωτηρος, ὁ = savior   ὀνομα, ὀνοματος, το = name

Case & Number	3rd Declension Masculine or Feminine	3rd declension neuter	2nd declension neuter	Sample Noun
Nominative Singular	-- / -ς	--	- ον	**νυξ, σωτηρ, ὀνομα**
Accusative Singular	- α	-- (same as Nom.)	- ον	**νυκτα, σωτηρα, ὀνομα**
Genitive Singular	- ος	- ος	- ου	**νυκτος, σωτηρος, ὀνοματος**
Dative Singular	- ι	- ι	- ῳ	**νυκτι, σωτηρι, ὀνοματι**
Vocative Singular	(same as Nom. except where last vowel can shorten or sigma can be lost)*	(same as Nom.)	(same as Nom.)	**νυξ, σωτερ, ὀνομα**

*= For example, ὁ πατηρ = the father (Nominative) becomes in the Vocative ὦ πατερ = O father!. ἡ Δορκας = Dorcas (Nominative) becomes in the Vocative ὦ Δορκα, but Peter uses her Aramaic name, Tabitha/Ταβιθά, when he raises her from the dead in Acts 9:40. But νυξ cannot become νυκ, since the only consonants Greek allows to end words are ν, ρ, or ς. See the next page for Plural forms.

Case & Number	3rd Declension Masculine or Feminine	3rd declension neuter	2nd declension neuter	Sample Noun
Nominative Plural	- ες	- α	-α	νυκτες, σωτηρες, ὀνοματα
Accusative Plural	- ας	- α	-α	νυκτας, σωτηρας, ὀνοματα
Genitive Plural	- ων	- ων	- ων	νυκτων, σωτηρων, ὀνοματων
Dative Plural **	- σι(ν)	- σι(ν)	- οις	νυξι(ν), σωτηρσι(ν), ὀνομασι(ν)
Vocative Plural	- ες	-α	-α	νυκτες, σωτηρες, ὀνοματα

** Dative Plurals have the same kinds of sound changes we saw in the verbs in Future and Aorist when a consonant is followed by a sigma. For example, νυκτσιν → νυξιν, ἐλπιδσιν → ἐλπισιν, φλεβσιν → φλεψιν.

Which endings are the same as the second declension neuter, and which are different? Which endings are the same as each other?

Greek Examples: τον σωτηρα ὑπο τῳ δενδρῳ εἶδον.   προ της νυκτος, ἀρτον ποιησομεν.

Οὐκ ὀνομασιν ἀλληλους δεχεσθε;

English Examples:

They did not see the works of our hands.   You (sing.) recognized the wife of Simon.

The apostles sowed the gospel by blood and by fire.   The names of the prophets are beloved.

Here are some other nouns with slight irregularities:

χάρις, χάριτος, ἡ = grace; the accent is on the first syllable, so it has an Acc. Sing. in -ν
ἐλπίς, ἐλπίδος, ἡ = hope; the accent is on the second syllable, so it has an Acc. Sing. in -α
ἰχθυς, ἰχθυος, ὁ = fish; this word has a stem ending in a vowel, so the –ν can stay –ν. For phonology, insert a "y" between the vowel in the stem and any vowel in the ending: ἰχθυες = "eechthee-yes"

Additional Third Declension Examples						
	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
Nom.	χάρις	χάριτες	ἐλπίς	ἐλπίδες	ἰχθυς	ἰχθυες
Acc.	**χάριν**	χάριτας	ἐλπίδα	ἐλπίδας	**ἰχθυν**	ἰχθυας
Gen.	χάριτος	χαρίτων	ἐλπίδος	ἐλπίδων	ἰχθυος	ἰχθυων
Dat.	χάριτι	χάρισι(ν)	ἐλπίδι	ἐλπίσι(ν)	ἰχθυι	ἰχθυσι(ν)
Voc.	χάρι	χάριτες	ἐλπί	ἐλπίδες	ἰχθυ	ἰχθυες

Examples:

ὁ Πετρος χαριν προς ἡμας ἀξει.　　　　την ἐλπιδα ἐν τοις τεκνοις εἰδομεν.

ὁ ἀποστολος ἰχθυν ἐν τη γη ἐγραψεν.　　τη χαριτι και τη ἐλπιδι περιπατησομεν.

Family Nouns

Some nouns ending in –ηρ, especially the names of family members like "mother, father, and daughter,"

πατηρ, μητηρ, θυγατηρ, originally ended in a vocalic "R" or "R" working as a vowel. No one would care except for the fact that this vocalic "R" can become ηρ, ερ, ρ, or ρα depending on the Third Declension ending.

Third Declension Family Nouns

	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
Nom.	πατηρ	πατερες	μητηρ	μητερες	θυγατηρ	θυγατερες
Acc.	πατερα	πατερας	μητερα	μητερας	θυγατερα	θυγατερας
Gen.	πατρος	πατερων	μητερος	μητερων	θυγατρος	θυγατρων
Dat.	πατρι	πατρασι(ν)	μητερι	μητρασι(ν)	θυγατρι	θυγατρασι(ν)
Voc.	πατερ	πατερες	μητερ	μητερες	θυγατερ	θυγατερες

Comparative Adjectives

We will not learn these officially until a later chapter, but there are some Third Declension adjectives to start getting used to. The first ones to learn are Comparatives μειζων = greater and πλειων = more. When you get past the Nominative Singular Masculine or Feminine, find the true stem by changing the ω to ο to get a form ending in –ον, then add Third Declension endings like so. In the Dative Plural, the form *-ονσι(ν) simplifies to –οσι(ν).

Comparative Adjectives Third Declension

	μειζων Masc or Fem.		μειζον Neuter	
	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
Nom.	μειζων	μειζονες	μειζον	μειζονα
Acc.	μειζονα	μειζονας	μειζον	μειζονα
Gen.	μειζονος	μειζονων	μειζονος	μειζονων
Dat.	μειζονι	μειζοσι(ν)	μειζονι	μειζοσι(ν)
Voc.	μειζον	μειζονες	μειζον	μειζονα

Interrogatives/Indefinites

The words τίς = "Who?", and τί = "What?" are question words or interrogatives. They always come as early as possible in the sentence and have accent marks to show that they are used with questions. Here is the declension, and note how the stem for most of the declension is τιν-, as you would expect from the Genitive Singular.

Interrogatives Third Declension

	τίς Masc or Fem.		τί Neuter	
	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
Nom.	τίς	τίνες	τί	τίνα
Acc.	τίνα	τίνας	τί	τίνα
Gen.	τίνος	τίνων	τίνος	τίνων
Dat.	τίνι	τίσι(ν)	τίνι	τίσι(ν)

Τίς εἶ; = Who are you (sing.)? Τί ἐμοι και ἐσοι; = "What is for me and you (sing.)?" that is, "What business do you have with me?" Τί δακρυεις; = "What do you weep for?" OR "Why are you crying?"

These words can also be used as Adjectives, and they mean "Which…?"

τίνας οἰκιας οἰκοδομησομεν; τίς ἀρχων ἐκει μενει; τίνα τεκνα ἐδιδαξας;

Without accents, these words become τις = "someone, anyone", and τι = "something, anything" and cannot come first in a sentence.

ἀνδρες τινες προς ἐμε ἠλθον. ἐργον τι οὐκ ἐποιησα. γυναικας τινας ἐν τη ὁδῳ εἰδομεν.

See the Vocabulary for Chapter 12, and generate some English sentences that you can translate into Greek using our new Declension.

Vocabulary for Chapter 12

Third Declension Nouns

ἀνηρ, ἀνδρος, ὁ = man, husband (Dat. Pl. ἀνδρασι(ν) like Family Nouns)

ἀστηρ, ἀστερος, ὁ = star

σωτηρ, σωτηρος, ὁ = savior, rescuer

αἰων, αἰωνος, ὁ = age, long time, eternity

ἀρχων, ἀρχοντος, ὁ = leader, ruler

Σιμων, Σιμωνος, ὁ = Simon, "Snubby"

γυνη, γυναικος, ἡ = woman, wife (Voc. Sing. γυναι)

ἐλπις, ἐλπιδος, ἡ = hope, expectation

νυξ, νυκτος, ἡ = night

πους, ποδος, ὁ = foot

σαρξ, σαρκος, ἡ = flesh

χαρις, χαριτος, ἡ = grace

χειρ, χειρος (χερ-), ἡ = hand

θυγατηρ, θυγατρος, ἡ = daughter

μητηρ, μητρος, ἡ = mother

πατηρ, πατρος, ὁ = father, ancestor

πυρ, πυρος, το = fire

ὑδωρ, ὑδατος, το = water

φως, φωτος, το = light

Third-Declension Nouns in -μα

αἱμα, αἱματος, το = blood

θελημα, θεληματος, το = will

ὀνομα, ὀνοματος, το = name

πνευμα, πνευματος, το = spirit, wind

ῥημα, ῥηματος, το = word, saying

στομα, στοματος, το = mouth, opening

σωμα, σωματος, το = body

μειζων, μειζον = larger, greater

πλειων, πλειον = more

τις, τι = (no accent) someone, something

τίς, τί = (note accents) who? what? which?

ὁστις = who, whoever

ὡσπερ = just as

Family Story: Peter Overstays his Welcome

ὁ μεν Πετρος πολλας ἡμερας ἐν τη οἰκιᾳ της Τρυφωης της ἀδελφης ἑαυτου ἐμενεν. ὁ δε Φιλιππος και ὁ Ἰακωβος ὀργην (anger) κατα του Πετρου εἰχον, ὁ γαρ Πετρος ἐργα τινα περι της οἰκιας οὐκ ἐποιησεν, ἀλλα πολλα ἐφαγεν. «Μη ὁ Πετρος τα σκυβαλα (garbage) ἐκβαλει;» εἰπεν ὁ Φιλιππος τη Τρυφωσῃ. «Μη ὁ Πετρος ἐμοι λιθους (rocks) ἐν ἐργῳ μου ἀξει;», εἰπεν ὁ Ἰακωβος. ἡ Τρυφωσα εἰπεν, «Ὁ μεν Πετρος ὁ μου ἀδελφος πολλας ἡμερας ηὐαγγελισατο, και αὐτον ἐδει σχειν εἰρηνην. ἀλλα αὐτον συν ὑμιν ἐργαζεσθαι ἠδη αἰτησω.»

Scripture: God as Consuming Fire

Hebrews 12:25-29. How many Third Declension nouns do you see?

βλέπετε, μὴ παραιτήσησθε τὸν λαλοῦντα, εἰ γὰρ ἐκεῖνοι οὐκ ἐξέφυγον ἐπὶ γῆς παραιτησάμενοι τὸν χρηματίζοντα πολὺ μᾶλλον ἡμεῖς οἱ τὸν ἀπ᾽ οὐρανῶν ἀποστρεφόμενοι. οὗ ἡ φωνὴ τὴν γῆν ἐσάλευσεν τότε νῦν δὲ ἐπήγγελται λέγων, « ἔτι ἅπαξ ἐγὼ σείσω οὐ μόνον τὴν γῆν ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν οὐρανόν.» τὸ δέ «ἔτι ἅπαξ» δηλοῖ τὴν τῶν σαλευομένων μετάθεσιν ὡς πεποιημένων ἵνα μείνῃ τὰ μὴ σαλευόμενα. διὸ βασιλείαν ἀσάλευτον παραλαμβάνοντες ἔχωμεν χάριν δι᾽ ἧς λατρεύωμεν εὐαρέστως τῷ θεῷ μετὰ εὐλαβείας καὶ δέους. καὶ γὰρ ὁ θεὸς ἡμῶν πῦρ καταναλίσκον.

Assignment 33

Name:_____

This Assignment covers the Third Declension.

1. κατα το εὐαγγελιον, ἡ μεν σαρξ ἀποθανεῖται, ἡ δε ψυχη περιπατησει.

2. ὁ Ἰησους ἐστι σωτηρ ἐμος, ἐσωσε γαρ ἐμε ἀπο του θανατου.

3. και ὁ Πετρος δυο ἀλλα ὀνοματα, Σιμωνα και Κεφαν, ἐσχεν.

4. ἡ ἐκκλησια το ἁγιον πνευμα ἐχει, καθως το σωμα αἱμα ἐχει.

5. νυκτος ἀπερχομενοι, το φως των ἀστερων βλεψομεν.

6. Preaching with great hope, the leaders of the church were doing the works of the Holy Spirit.

7. The beasts did not eat Elijah, but carried bread for him.

Grad Assignment 33

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. που ὁ ἀνηρ την γυναικα εὑρεν; ἐν ἐκκλησιᾳ ἠ ἐμπροσθεν του ἱερου;

2. τοις ἐμοις ποσι (*ποδσι) περεπατησα ἀπο της Γαλιλαιας προς την Ἰερουσαλημ.

3. ὁ Παυλος ἐγραψεν, Χαρις σοι και εἰρηνη ἐν τῳ κυριῳ Ἰησου Χριστῳ.

4. το ὀνομα «ἰχθυς» λεγει, « Ἰησους Χριστος Θεου Υἱος Σωτηρ ».

5. πως το του θεου θελημα γινωσκομεν; ἐκ των βιβλιων ἠ ἐκ του πνευματος;

6. το πυρ ὃ εἰδομεν ἠν ἀρα μεγα, και ἀνεβαινε εἰς τα μεγαλα πλοια.

7. The daughter and the mother brought water toward the fire.

8. While praying to God, we wrote the large scrolls with our hands.

9. Grace will lead us toward love for one another.

Assignment 34

This Assignment covers the words **τις, τι, τίς, τί** and the irregular comparatives **μειζων** and **πλειων**.

1. τίς εἶ; το ὀνομα μου ἐστι ὁ Ἰωαννης, ὁς τον Ἰησουν ἐβαπτισεν.

2. ἀπελθοντες, πατερες τινες συν τοις ἑαυτων υἱοις οὐκετι περιπατουσιν.

3. οὐ μειζον στομα ἐχεις ἠ ἐγω, ὠ προφητα;

4. συν τίνι εἰς ἐκεινο το ὑδωρ κατεβης, ὠ Ἰωαννα ὁ βαπτιζων;

5. ἐκεινης της νυκτος, ἐρχομεναι προς τουτο το ἱερον, πλειονας ἀστερας εἰδομεν.

6. τίς, καλως ζητων, το μνημειον του Ἰωαννου ἐξω της ἐκκλησιας εὑρεν;

7. In which place did these soldiers throw evil sayings against Jesus?

8. For the sake of whom did our leaders build this bigger church which we now have?

9. For whom are light and night the same thing? Don't you (pl.) know?

Grad Assignment 34

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. Add the vocabulary words κρεισσων = better and χειρων = worse, which behave like the other -ων adjectives.

1. ὁ ῥαββι εἶπεν, Τίς οὐ θελησει γενεσθαι κρεισσων ἀνθρωπος;

2. ὁ θεος και ἀνδρας και γυναικας ἀπο των χειρονων ἁμαρτιων τῳ αἱματι του ἀρνιου σωσει.

3. τίς εἶδε το ἁγιον πνευμα; οὐχ οἱ μαθηται αὐτο εἶδον;

4. ὦ κυριε, αἱ χειρες σου, ἡμας σῳζουσαι, εἰσιν κρεισσονες ἠ αἱ χειρες ἡμων.

5. μη αἱ των ἀνθρωπων ἁμαρτιαι μειζονες ἠ ἡ ἀγαπη του θεου;

6. τί ἐστι το θελημα του θεου ἡμιν; πως αὐτο εὑρισκομεν;

7. If we walk around in the light, we are doing the will of God.

8. Grace and peace to you (pl.), who preach in the spirit and walk in the light.

9. Keep my feet on the way, O Lord, even if it is not permitted to see the greater age.

Assignment 35

Name:_____

This Assignment is an imaginary dialogue between the Macrina (Μακρινη) the Younger and her little brother Gregory (Γρηγοριος) of Nyssa (c. 380 AD) that attempts to review everything so far. You may have to look up a word or two, but the grammar should be straightforward.

Γρηγοριος--- ὁ ἀδελφος σου ἀπεθανε, και συ εἶ ἐγγυς του θανατου. μη χαραν τινα ἐχεις;

Μακρινη--- ἐν τη ὁδῳ της ἐλπιδος περιπατησασα, ἐχω χαραν μειζονα ἠ ἐσχον ὡς τεκνον.

Γρηγοριος--- τί λεγεις; μη φιλεις τον θανατον ὃς τον σου ἀδελφον ἐλαβεν;

Μακρινη--- τον μεν θανατον οὐ φιλω, τον δε θεον, ὃς την ψυχην τῳ οὐρανῳ τηρει, φιλω.

Γρηγοριος--- μη βλεπεις ἐν τουτοις τοις σωμασι το αἱμα, τα πυρα, και ἐκεινα ἃ πασχομεν;

Μακρινη--- ταυτα ἃ ἐπαθομεν οὐκ ἀρνειται την ἀγαπην του θεου, ὁ γαρ θεος συν ἡμιν ἐστιν.

Γρηγοριος--- πως ἐξεστι σοι γινωσκειν την ἀγαπην του θεου εἰ πασχεις;

Μακρινη--- το μεν σωμα μου πασχει, ἡ δε ψυχη οὐ. περιπατησει γαρ ἡ ψυχη εἰς τας αἰωνας των αἰωνων, και εἰ το σωμα μου ἀποθνησκει και εὑρισκει το μνημα ἑαυτου. μη ἐγνως τουτο;

Γρηγοριος--- ἐγνων, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐμαθον. διο ὁ ἀληθινος «ἐγω» ἐστιν ἡ ψυχη, οὐ το σωμα.

Grad Assignment 35

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English. The following is an imaginary dialogue between Amma Syncletica, leader of a group of nuns, and the novice Mary of Syria.

Συνκλητικη: ὦ Μαρια, τί ποιεις; σημερον δει σε ποιησαι τον ἀρτον ταις ἀδελφαις.

Μαρια: ὦ Συνκλητικη, τῳ κυριῳ προσευχομενη, ἐν τῃ καρδιᾳ ἀγαπην μεγαλην ἐχω.

Συνκλητικη: ὦ Μαρια, μαθε ὁτι ἀδελφη τῳ θεῳ και τῃ ἐκκλησιᾳ δουλευει, οὐχ ἐαυτῃ.

Μαρια: ὦ Συνκλητικη, οὐ ζητουμεν προσευχην, περιπατουσαι ὡδε ἐν ταυτῃ τῃ ἐκκλησιᾳ;

Συνκλητικη: δει μεν ἡμας ζητειν προσευχην, καθως τον θεον. ποιουσαι δε ἀγαθα ἐργα και δικαιοσυνην, γινομεθα ἀγιαι. ἀμην λεγω ὁτι γινομεθα πυρα, καθως της Πεντεκοστης, οἱ ἀποστολοι πυρα ὑπερ τας κεφαλας ἐσχον.

Μαρια: γινωσκω ὁτι δει ἡμας ποιησαι πολλα ἐργα, εἰ ἡ ἐκκλησια περιπατησει. δει δε ἀλλην γυναικα ποιησαι ἀρτον ἀλλῃ ἡμερᾳ.

Assignment 36

Name:_____

This Assignment is a review of a lot of little bits.

1. οἱ ἀδελφοι το εὐαγγελιον του Ἰωαννου ἐν τῃ ἐκκλησιᾳ ἀνεγνωσαν.

2. ἐλθοντες εἰς τα Ἰεροσολυμα, παρα τῳ ἱερῳ μενοῦμεν.

3. καταβας προς τους νεκρους, ἀνηγαγεν ὁ Ἰησους ἡμιν την ἀληθινην ζωην.

4. τίς οὐ γινωσκει τα ἐργα ἁ τουτων των ἡμερων ἐγενετο;

5. πεμψω τινα προς την περαν της θαλασσης ἐκκλησιαν.

6.Don't you (pl.) make bread for the faithful people outside Galilee? [does "people" need a word?]

7.What word does Jesus know that Herod does not know?

8.Who came into the temple with his soldiers?

Grad Assignment 36

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. Add the vocabulary words κρεισσων = better and χειρων = worse, Comparative Adjectives like πλειων and μειζων.

1. τίς ἠν χειρων ἀρχων ἠ ὁ Ἡρῳδης ὁ πονηρος;

2. μη πινεις το ποτηριον ὃ ὑπερ του λαου και των ἁμαρτιων αὐτου πινω;

3. εἰδον την χειρα του θεου ἐν τουτοις τοις ἐργοις ἁ οἱ ἀποστολοι ἐποιουν.

4. τοις μαθηταις πολλους λογους ὁ Παυλος ἐγραψεν, κηρυσσων βιβλιοις.

5. το αἱμα και το ὑδωρ ἐξηλθε ἐκ του σωματος του Χριστου του σωτηρος.

6. While loving one another, you will do the will of God, won't you?

7. Whose blood did we see on the ground?

8. The disciples went down into the water, and Jesus called them.

Assignment 37

Name:_____

How manuscript variants work:

Translate into Greek:

1. The disciples spoke to us about the gospel/good news.

2. The disciples spoke to you (pl.) about the gospel/good news.

How does sentence #1 differ from sentence #2 in the Greek, and how could a tiny scribal error or copying mistake change the sentence from one to the other?

Translate into Greek:

1. We saw Peter, who took the sheep from the temple.

2. We saw Peter, who threw the sheep from the temple.

How does sentence #1 differ from sentence #2 in the Greek, and how could a small scribal error change from one to the other?

Grad Assignment 37

Graduate Students: Invent an example where a scribal error, especially a missing or changed Greek letter, could change the meaning of a sentence. Hint: think of words that you have confused with one another or that begin with the same Greek letter.

Chapter 13: Third declension, Part 2

Third Declension, Part 2

Because the third declension includes a lot of nouns that will not fit into the other two declensions, there are some other patterns of endings that look somewhat different from the other nouns. One weird thing is the Accusative Singular ending in ν instead of α, like χαρις and ἰθχυς in the previous chapter. What we think happened is that the original ending was ν, as in the other declensions, but changed to α when preceded by a consonant: νυκτν → νυκτα. But χαριν and ἰχθυν can stay unchanged because ν is preceded by a vowel. There is a large group of Feminine Third Declension nouns ending in -ις, like πολις = "city", or in –σις, a noun suffix meaning "process of", as in English *electrolysis* or *analysis*. Nouns in this group have -ιν for their Accusative Singular.

Another weird thing is that the Masculine –ευς nouns, usually professions like "priest" or "knight," can have two uncontracted vowels in their endings, such as –εα. This is because of a "lost letter" in Greek, the digamma, which was pronounced like a "w" and occasionally written as ⊂ to represent the number 6. So the Accusative Singular was originally –ε⊂α, pronounced "eh-wah," rather than the unpronounceable –ε⊂ν "eh-wn." In the Nominative Singular and Dative Plural, the ⊂ turns into υ to avoid similar unpronounceable combinations or phonological train wrecks, so ἱερε⊂ς → ἱερευς, and ἱερε⊂σιν → ἱερευσιν.

Finally, the Neuter nouns whose Nom. Sing. ends in –ος have endings that undergo contraction, somewhat like epsilon-contract verbs, where ε + ε = ει and ε + ο = ου, but add the rule ε + α = η. You can call them Contract Nouns.

Case & Number	Uncontracted form	Contracted/Final form
Gen. Sing.	γενε-ος →	γενους
Dat. Sing.	γενε-ι →	γενει
Nom. Pl.	γενε-α →	γενη

Try to avoid confusion with the Masculine and Feminine –ος nouns that follow the Second Declension.

ὁ λογος, ὁ θεος = Second Declension Masculine Nouns

και θεος ἠν ὁ λογος. = And the Word was God. (John 1:1)

ἐλεος, το = mercy, Third Declension Contract Noun

ἐλεος θελω και οὐ θυσιαν = I want mercy and not sacrifice (Hosea 6:6).

Why is ἐλεος a different gender and case from λογος even though it seems to have the same ending?

The following chart looks extra-complicated, but your priority should be to recognize the forms over being able to generate them.

Third Declension Endings, Part 2						
use stem derived from Gen. Sing. minus –ος, except where noted in **boldface**				use stem derived from what Nom. Sing. & Gen. Sing. share		
Case & Number	3rd Decl. Masc.or Fem. νύξ, σώτηρ, ἐλπίς, ἐλπίδος (accent on second syllable)	3rd Decl. Fem., dental stem, accent on first syllable χάρις, χάριτος	3rd Decl. Neut. -μα nouns σῶμα, σώματος	3rd Decl. Fem. ις/σις nouns πόλις, πόλεως	3rd Decl. Masc. -εύς nouns ἱερεύς, ἱερέως	3rd Decl. Neut -ος nouns γένος, γένους
Nominative Singular	-- / -ς	**-ις**	**-- (bold)**	-ις	-εύς	-ος
Accusative Singular	-α	**-ιν**	**-- (bold)**	-ιν	-έα	-ος
Genitive Singular	-ος	-ος	-ος	-εως	-έως	-ους
Dative Singular	-ι	-ι	-ι	-ει	-εῖ	-ει
Vocative Singular	**(same as Nom., drop –ς, or shorten last vowel)**	**(drop final -ς)**	**(same as Nom.)**	-ι (drop final -ς)	-εῦ	(same as Nom.)
Nominative Plural	-ες	-ες	-α	-εις	-εῖς	-η
Accusative Plural	-ας	-ας	-α	-εις	-εῖς	-η
Genitive Plural	-ων	-ων	-ων	-εων	-έων	-ων
Dative Plural *	-σι(ν)	-ιτσιν -> -ισι(ν)	-σι(ν)	-εσι(ν)	-εῦσι	-εσι(ν)
Vocative Plural	-ες	-ες	-α	-εις	-εῖς	-η

 * Dative Plurals have the same kinds of sound changes we saw in the verbs in Future and Aorist when a consonant is followed by a sigma.

Third declension Adjectives

Contract adjectives in –ης are rare, but recognizable, and they show the same contractions as Third declension Neuter nouns in –ος, like ἐθνος or γενος. Example: ἀσθενης, ἀσθενες = ill, sick (never positive in connotation like "Those are some *sick* beats.")

Third-Declension Adjectives in –ης				
	Masc. & Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing.	Masc. & Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nom.	ἀσθενης	ἀσθενες	ἀσθενεις	ἀσθενη
Acc.	ἀσθενη	ἀσθενες	ἀσθενεις	ἀσθενη
Gen.	ἀσθενους	ἀσθενους	ἀσθενων	ἀσθενων
Dat.	ἀσθενει	ἀσθενει	ἀσθενεσι(ν)	ἀσθενεσι(ν)
Voc.	ἀσθενες	ἀσθενες	ἀσθενεις	ἀσθενη

ὁ Ἰησους τους ἀσθενεις ἐσωσεν. ἡ ἀσθενης ἀδελφη εὑρειν τον Ἰησουν ἠθελησεν.

Mixed-Declension Adjective πας, πασα, παν = "every, all"

This adjective follows its own declension, a mixture of the First and the Third. Specifically, the Feminine forms follow the First Declension, mixed type, and the Masculine and Neuter forms follow the Third. If the Nominatives look familiar, it is because we have seen them for Aorist Active Participles for 1st Aorists, and when we learn the rest of the participle endings, Aorist Active Participles will look like πας, πασα, παν. Translation note: the meaning "every" applies only to the singular forms, but the meaning "all" can apply to both singular and plural.

Pilate wanted to tax every person. Pilate wanted to tax all people. We ate all the bread. We ate all the loaves.

Declension of πας = "every, all"

	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing.	Masc. Pl	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nom./Voc.	πας	πασα	παν	παντες	πασαι	παντα
Acc.	παντα	πασαν	παν	παντας	πασας	παντα
Gen.	παντος	πασης	παντος	παντων	πασων	παντων
Dat.	παντι	παση	παντι	πασι(ν)	πασαις	πασι(ν)

This adjective behaves like the demonstratives we have already learned and usually comes before rather than after the article.

Examples:

παντες οἱ ἱερεις τα προβατα εἰδον.

πας ἐν τη Ἰσραηλ τον νομον ἐτηρησεν.

πασα την θυγατερα ἑαυτης ἐπεγνω.

Now, generate some English sentences using "all" or "every," and translate them into Greek.

Numbers

The number "one" is a mixed-declension adjective like πας. For εἷς, μια, ἑν, Masculine and Neuter follow the Third Declension, while Feminine follows the First Declension.

Declension of "one," εἷς, μια, ἑν

Case	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	εἷς	μια	ἑν
Acc.	ἑνα	μιαν	ἑν
Gen.	ἑνος	μιας	ἑνος
Dat.	ἑνι	μιᾳ	ἑνι

We have already seen the number two, in the form δυο, which is used for all cases, numbers, and genders in the New Testament.

But the number three is declinable.

Case	Masc./Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	τρεις	τρια
Acc.	τρεις	τρια
Gen.	τριων	τριων
Dat.	τρισι(ν)	τρισι(ν)

So is the number four.

Case	Masc./Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	τεσσαρες	τεσσαρα
Acc.	τεσσαρας	τεσσαρα
Gen.	τεσσαρων	τεσσαρων
Dat.	τεσσαρσι(ν)	τεσσαρσι(ν)

The Neut. Pl. τεσσερα appears in the LXX (e.g. Zechariah 6:1), but not in the New Testament.

But numbers five and higher are mostly indeclinable:

Number	Greek word	English derivative
5	πεντε	pentangle
6	ἑξ	hexagon
7	ἑπτα	heptathlon
8	ὀκτω	octopus
9	ἐννεα	Enneagram
10	δεκα	decade
11	ἑνδεκα	hendecasyllable
12	δωδεκα	dodecahedron

Now practice using numbers, and remember that all numbers except one are plural or must modify plural nouns.

Negative Pronoun/Adjective: Nobody/Nothing/No

Finally, note the common negation of εἱς, the words for "nobody" and "nothing." To negate facts, use οὐδεις. To negate non-facts, use μηδεις. This word can function as a pronoun, "nobody/nothing," or as an adjective, "no," as in "no dogs allowed."

Case	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	οὐδεις	οὐδεμια	οὐδεν
Acc.	οὐδενα	οὐδεμιαν	οὐδεν
Gen.	οὐδενος	οὐδεμιας	οὐδενος
Dat.	οὐδενι	οὐδεμιᾳ	οὐδενι

Case	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	μηδεις	μηδεμια	μηδεν
Acc.	μηδενα	μηδεμιαν	μηδεν
Gen.	μηδενος	μηδεμιας	μηδενος
Dat.	μηδενι	μηδεμιᾳ	μηδενι

Examples:

οὐδεις τον υἱον ἐπιγινωσκει εἰ μη ὁ πατηρ. (Matthew 11:27b)

παρα του Πιλατου οὐδεμιαν χαριν εὑρισκομεν.

μηδεν ἐργον των Σαββατων ἐργασαι.

Generate English sentences with "nobody," "nothing," or "no," and then translate them into English.

Annotation Techniques

As sentences get longer, you need to understand them systemically, rather than staring at them until their meaning reveals itself. Here is one possible system: Circle verbs, including participles; underline nouns; put wavy lines under adjectives, including articles:

ὁ Ἰησους τα τεκνα της Μαριας ἐν τῳ ἱερῳ ἐβλεψεν.

ἡ Σαλωμη προς την μεγαλην θαλασσαν εὐθυς ἠλθεν

ἡ Τρυφωσα ποιησασα τον ἀρτον την ἀδελφην ἐδεξατο

You can then draw arrows to show what goes with what or the order of English translation.

ἡ Τρυφωσα ποιησασα τον ἀρτον την ἀδελφην ἐδεξατο

So, a possible translation of the above sentence is,

"Tryphosa, after she had made the bread, welcomed her sister."

Use the space below to try it yourself!

Vocabulary for Chapter 13

Neuter Nouns

γενος, γενους, το = people, tribe

ἐθνος, ἐθνους, το = nation

ἐλεος, ἐλεους, το = mercy (originally had a digamma, ἐλε⊂ος)

ἐτος, ἐτους, το = year

μελος, μελους, το = limb, member, part

μερος, μερους, το = part, share, portion

ὁρος, ὁρους, το = mountain, hill

πληθος, πληθους, το = multitude, large amount, quantity

σκευος, σκευους, το = object, vessel, (in pl.) property

σκοτος, σκοτους, το = darkness, gloom

τελος, τελους, το = end, goal, purpose

Agent Nouns (all masculine)

ἀρχιερευς, ἀρχιερεως, ὁ = chief priest

βασιλευς, βασιλεως, ὁ = king

γραμματευς, γραμματεως, ὁ = scribe, clerk

ἱερευς, ἱερεως, ὁ = priest

Abstract Nouns (all feminine)

ἀναστασις, ἀναστασεως, ἡ = resurrection, rising again

γνωσις, γνωσεως, ἡ = knowledge

δυναμις, δυναμεως, ἡ = power, miracle

θλιψις, θλιψεως, ἡ = suffering, oppression, persecution

κρισις, κρισεως, ἡ = judgment

παρακλησις, παρακλησεως, ἡ = encouragement

πιστις, πιστεως, ἡ = faith

πολις, πολεως, ἡ = city

συνειδησις, συνειδησεως, ἡ = conscience

Adjectives

ἀληθης, -ες = true

ἀσθενης, -ες = ill, sick

πας, πασα, παν = every, all, whole (not as in "I feel whole again", but as in "the whole time")

ἁπας, ἁπασα, ἁπαν = every, all (strengthened form of above word)

εἱς, μια, ἑν = one, a single

οὑδεις, οὑδεμια, οὑδεν = no one, nothing, no

μηδεις, μηδεμια, μηδεν = no one, nothing, no

Two last Masculine nouns with odd declensions

Μωυσης, ὁ = Moses, prophet in Hebrew Scriptures (Μωυσης, Μωυσην, Μωυσεως, Μωυσει/Μωυση)

νους, ὁ = mind, intelligence (νους, νουν, νοος, νοι)

Family Story: Oppression in Samaria
This story is set in Samaria, capital of the northern kingdom of Israel, under Assyrian rule (700's BCE)

Words: Ἀβδιας, ὁ = Obadiah; ἀγοραζω = I buy; καθαρος, -α, -ον = pure, ritually clean under Jewish law;

κρεον, το = meat; πατριος, ὁ = ancestor, ποιμαινω = I herd (animals); πολεμητηριον, το = military

headquarters; πωλιον, το = shop; πωλεω = I sell; modern Greek surnames ending in "–opolos" indicate

"sellers of (something)" στρατηγος, ὁ = general

ὁ Ἰακωβος λεγει, «πολλοι ἀνθρωποι την θλιψιν δια την πιστιν ἐπαθον. ὁ γουν πατριος μου ὁ Ἀβδιας

θλιψιν ὑπο των Ἀσσυριων ἐπαθεν, ὠν Ἰουδαιος και πιστος τῳ ἑνι θεῳ. ὁ Ἀβδιας μεν πωλιον προς τῳ

ἱερῳ ἐσχεν, καρπους δε ἐπωλησεν. ὁ γαρ καρπος ἐστι καθαρος, οὑ καθως κρεα. πολλοι μεν καρπους ἐκ

του πωλιου ἠγορασαν, ὁ δε στρατηγος ὁ Ασσυριος πωλιον ἐπι τῳ πολεμητηριῳ ἠθελησεν. ὁ στρατηγος

το πωλιον ἐλαβε τε και ἀπεστειλε τον Ἀβδιαν και τους φιλους προς την ἐρημον. ἐκει ὁ Ἀβδιας προβατα

ἐποιμαινεν.»

Scripture: Wipe Away Every Tear

Revelation 7:14-17 (read without translating)

καὶ εἴρηκα αὐτῷ « κύριέ μου, σὺ οἶδας.» καὶ εἶπέν μοι «οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ ἐρχόμενοι ἐκ τῆς

θλίψεως τῆς μεγάλης καὶ ἔπλυναν τὰς στολὰς αὐτῶν καὶ ἐλεύκαναν αὐτὰς ἐν τῷ αἵματι τοῦ

ἀρνίου. διὰ τοῦτό εἰσιν ἐνώπιον τοῦ θρόνου τοῦ θεοῦ καὶ λατρεύουσιν αὐτῷ ἡμέρας καὶ

νυκτὸς ἐν τῷ ναῷ αὐτοῦ καὶ ὁ καθήμενος ἐπὶ τοῦ θρόνου σκηνώσει ἐπ᾽ αὐτούς. οὐ

πεινάσουσιν ἔτι, οὐδὲ διψήσουσιν ἔτι, οὐδὲ μὴ πέσῃ ἐπ᾽ αὐτοὺς ὁ ἥλιος οὐδὲ πᾶν καῦμα.

ὅτι τὸ ἀρνίον τὸ ἀνὰ μέσον τοῦ θρόνου ποιμανεῖ αὐτούς καὶ ὁδηγήσει αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ ζωῆς πηγὰς

ὑδάτων, καὶ ἐξαλείψει ὁ θεὸς πᾶν δάκρυον ἐκ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν αὐτῶν.

Assignment 38

Name:_____

This Assignment covers the new –ις and –ευς nouns, contract nouns and 3rd declension –ης adjectives.

1. τίς συν τοις μεγαλοις βιβλιοις εἰς την πολιν ἦλθεν;

2. οὐ καλεσει ὁ θεος πολλους ἀπστολους οἳ ταυτα τα ἐθνη σωσουσιν;

3. ὁ Χριστος ἐστι ὁ ἀληθης ἀρτος, ὁς ἀπο του οὐρανου καταβαινει.

4. ὁ Ἰωαννης, ὁ τον Ἰησουν βαπτισας, τῳ βασιλει των βασιλεων προσεκυνησεν.

5. δεχομενοι τον Παυλον, οἱ ἀρχιερεις ἐκ του ἱερου κατεβησαν.

6. ἰδουσαι το ὀρος, αἱ γυναικες ἐκεινῳ τῳ ἐτει προς τας οἰκιας ἑαυτων ὑπ-ηγαγον.

7. We found the place where Paul fell to the earth because of his oppression of the faithful.

8. Who does not know that Jesus brought miracles and resurrection for us?

9. [Pick one Greek sentence above and circle the verbs (including participles), underline the nouns, and put wavy or dashed lines under the adjectives, articles, and adverbs.]

Grad Assignment 38

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. Add the vocabulary words κρεισσων = better and χειρων = worse

1. τίς πιστιν ἀληθη τε και συνειδησιν ἀγαθην ἐχει;

2. μη ἐγω εὑρον ὀνομα κρεισσον ἠ ἡ ἀλλη ἀδελφη ἡ ἐμη;

3. ἐφαγομεν τον ἀρτον και το ποτηριον ἐπιομεν, προσευχομεναι τῳ θεῳ.

4. τους ὀφθαλμους τους ἐμους προς τα ὀρη αἰρω. ποθεν ὁ σωτηρ μου ἐρχεται;

5. πολλα δαιμονια ἐκβαλων, ὁ Ἰησους τα μελη του ἀσθενους ἀνθρωπου ἐσωσεν.

6. μη ζητεις την γνωσιν των δαιμονιων, γνους την ἀγαπην του θεου;

7. Beasts want to eat, but the faithful people want resurrection.

8. Even after those kings, the oppression against the true church is worse than ever.

9. [Pick one Greek sentence above. Circle the verbs (including participles), underline the nouns, and put wavy or dashed lines under adjectives, articles and adverbs.]

Assignment 39

Name:_____

This homework covers πας, εἰς, οὐδεις, μηδεις.

1. παντες οἱ μαθηται ἐγνωσαν, ὅτι ἡ ἀναστασις του Ἰησου ἐγενετο.

2. εὑρομεν οὐδεμιαν, ἣ ἀρτον τῳ βασιλει ποιησαι ἠθελησεν. [why accent the eta?]

3. μηδεις τους Ἰουδαιους ἀπο της κακης θλιψεως ὑπο του Ἡρῳδου σωσει;

4. ἰδε τον Μωυσην, ὃς ἀπο του ὀρους του κυριου τον νομον φερει.

5. δεχομεναι τον Πετρον, πασαι αἱ θυγατερες του Βαρναβα το εὐαγγελιον ἠκουσαν.

6. κηρυσσων τοις ἐθνεσιν, ὁ Παυλος εἰπεν, « Ἐν τῳ Χριστῳ, οὐδεις ἀνηρ, οὐδεμια γυνη.»

7. No one is willing to heal the sick people who walk around near the temple.

8. After coming to this land, we preached the gospel to every good person.

9. [Pick one Greek sentence above and circle the verbs, underline the nouns or pronouns, and put wavy ordashed lines under the articles, adjectives, and adverbs.]

Grad Assignment 39

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek. Add the vocabulary words κρεισσων = better and χειρων = worse, not to be confused with the word for "hand"

1. τίνες μαθηται, παθοντες την θλιψιν, το άληθες εὐαγγελιον ἐγνωσαν;

2. ἡμας δει φαγειν μηδεμιαν σαρκα, ταυτης της ἁγιας ἡμερας.

3. πας γινωσκει ὁτι ὁ Χριστος ὁ σωτηρ ἡμας ἐκ του του θανατου σωματος ῥυσεται.

4. μηδεις ἁπο των Ἰεροσολυμων εἰς την ἁλλην πολιν ἐρχεται;

5. πολλα δαιμονια τον ἁσθενη ἀνθρωπον ἠσθιεν, ἀλλα ὁ Ἰησους αὐτα ἐξεβαλεν.

6. ὡ ἀδελφη, μη παρελθε τα μνημεια, ὁπου παντα τα δαιμονια περιπατει.

7. Every member of the body of Christ has something that it offers to us.

8. The people that walked in darkness saw the true light.

9. [Pick one Greek sentence above. Circle the verbs, underline the nouns or pronouns, and put wavy or dashed lines under articles, adjectives, and adverbs.]

Assignment 40

Name_____

The Intelligence of Elephants (adapted from Arrian, *Indica* 14.4-6).

Translate into English with the help of the vocabulary on the next page. Participles are **boldfaced**.

1. ὁ γαρ ἐλεφας ἐστι θυμοσοφος, εἰπερ τι ἀλλο θηριον ἐστι. και ἐλεφαντες τινες...τους ἀμβατας, τους

ἐν πολεμῳ **ἀποθανοντας, ἀραντες**, αὑτους ἐξενεγκον εἰς ταφην.

2. οἱ μεν ἀλλοι ἐλεφαντες και των **πεσοντων** ἀμβατων προεκινδυνευσαν, ὁ δε ἐλεφας, ὁ δια ὀργην

ἀποκτεινας τον ἀμβατην, ὑπο μετανοιας τε και ἀθυμιας ἀπεθανεν.

3. ἐγω δε εἰδον και τον **κυμβαλιζοντα** ἐλεφαντα και τους ἀλλους **ὀρχουμενους**, ἐπει κυμβαλα ἠν ἐν

τοις σκελεσι τοις ἐμπροσθεν τοις του **κυμβαλιζοντος**, και ἐπει ἐν τῃ προβοσκιδι ἀλλο κυμβαλον ἠν.

4. ὁ μεν ἐλεφας τῳ προβοσκιδι ἐν μερει ἐκρουε το κυμβαλον ἐν ῥυθμῳ ἐπι ἑκατερα τα σκελη, οἱ δε

ἀλλοι ἐλεφαντες ἐν κυκλῳ ὠρχουντο, και **ἐπαιροντες** τε και **ἐπικαμπτοντες** τα ἐμπροθεν

σκελη,...καθως ὁ **κυμβαλιζων** ἐλεφας αὑτοις ὑφηγειτο.

Vocabulary for Assignment 40, The Intelligence of Elephants

ἀθυμια, ἀθυμιας, ἡ = despair
αἱρω, ἀρῶ, ἡρα, ἡρκα, ἡρμαι, ἡρθην = pick up, lift
ἀμβατης, -ου, ὁ = driver
ἀποκτεινω, ἀποκτενέω, ἀπεκτεινα, ἀπεκτονα, --, -- = kill
εἰπερ = if indeed
ἑκατερος, ἑκατερα, ἑκατερον = each (of two)
ἐκ-φερω, ἐκ-οισω, ἐξ-ηνεγκα, ἐξ-ενηνοχα, ἐξ-ενηνεγμαι, ἐξ-ηνεχθην = carry out
ἐλεφας, ἐλεφαντος, ὁ = elephant
ἐμπροσθεν = in front (adverb)
ἐπ-αιρω, ἐπ-αρῶ, ἐπ-ηρα, ἐπ-ηρκα, ἐπ-ηρμαι, ἐπ-ηρθην = raise, lift
ἐπι-καμπτω, ἐπι-καμψω, ἐπ-εκαμψα = bend the knees
θηριον, -ου, το = wild beast
θυμοσοφος, -η, -ον = intelligent
κρουω, κρουσω, ἐκρουσα = strike, beat
κυκλος, -ου, ὁ = circle
κυμβαλιζω, κυμβαλιεω, ἐκυμβαλισα = play the cymbal
κυμβαλον, -ου, το = cymbal
μερος, μερους, το = turn
μετανοια, μετανοιας, ἡ = repentance, regret
ὀρχεομαι, ὀρχησομαι, ὠρχησαμην = dance
πιπτω, πεσεομαι, ἐπεσον, πεπτωκα, --, -- = fall
πολεμος, -ου, ὁ = war
προβοσκις, προβοσκιδις, ἡ = trunk
προκινδυνευω, προκινδυνευσω, προεκινδυνευσα = protect + Genitive
ῥυθμος, -ου, ὁ = rhythm, beat
σκελος, σκελους, το = leg
ταφη, -ης, ἡ = burial, grave
ὑφ-ηγεομαι, ὑφ-ηγησομαι, ὑφ-ηγησαμην, ----, ὑφ-ηγημαι, ---- = give the beat to + Dative

Chapter 14: Participles, concluded

Participles Again, All the Cases

Participles can also occur in cases other than the Nominative, but we learned the Nominative first because it is the most common case. The combination of numbers (2), genders (3), cases (4), tenses (4), and voices (3) leads to a total of 288 possible forms for each verb. Over half the 500 possible forms for each Greek verb are Participles! But you do not have to learn each form separately; if you use the six Principal Parts and the rules in the table below, you can generate or recognize all the forms yourself.

Part 1 = the Present Stem or First Principal Part, 1st sing. Present Indicative Active, example: λυω = I release

Part 2 = the Future Stem or Second Principal Part, 1st sing. Future Indicative Active, example: λυσω = I will release

Part 3 = the Aorist Active/Middle Stem or Third Principal Part, 1st sing. Aorist Indicative Active, example: ἐλυσα = I released

Part 4 = the Perfect Active Stem or Fourth Principal Part, 1st sing. Perfect Indicative Active, example: λελυκα = I have released

Part 5 = the Perfect Middle/Passive Stem or Fifth Principal Part, 1st sing. Perfect Indicative Passive, example: λελυμαι = I have been released

Part 6 = the Aorist Passive stem or Sixth Principal Part, 1st sing. Aorist Indicative Passive, example: ἐλυθην = I was released

3/1/3 means that the Masculine and Neuter follow the 3rd declension, like **ἀρχων, ἀρχοντος, ὁ** for the Masculine, and **ὀνομα, ὀνοματος, το** for the Neuter. The feminine follows the 1st declension, usually mixed-type like **θαλασσα, θαλασσης, ἡ**. **2/1/2** means that the Masculine and Neuter follow the 2nd declension (like **λογος** and **ἐργον**, respectively), while the Feminine follows the 1st declension, usually eta-type like **ἀγαπη, ἀγαπης, ἡ** or **ἀδελφη, ἀδελφης, ἡ**.

Key Letters After the Stem help you spot each participle but CANNOT be used to generate all of the forms. MNS = Masculine Nominative Singular, NN/AS = Neuter Nominative/Accusative Singular

Q & D Translation means "Quick and Dirty Translation"; usually you will need to turn the participle into a separate clause in English, but sometimes the participle is practically an adjective. For how to turn a Participle into a separate clause, see the Greek Participle Uses chart below.

Participle Formation Chart

Tense & Voice	Stem and Principal Part to use	Key Letters After Stem Masc&Neut, Fem	Declension to follow (1 = 1st, 2 = 2nd, 3 = 3rd) for Masc/Fem/Neut	Quick & Dirty Translation
Present Active	Part 1, minus – ω	-οντ-, -ουσ— NMS –ων NN/AS -ον	3/1/3	--ing
Present Middle / Passive	Part 1, minus –ω or –ομαι	-ομεν-	2/1/2	Passive: being –ed
Future Active (rare in NT)	Part 2, minus – ω	-οντ-, -ουσ- NMS –ων NN/AS -ον	3/1/3	about to –ing
Future Middle (rare in NT)	Part 2, minus –ω or –ομαι	-ομεν-	2/1/2	about to –ing
1st Aorist Active	Part 3, minus PIA (ἐ), minus – α	-αντ-, -ασ- NMS –ας NN/AS -αν	3/1/3 (like πας, πασα, παν)	having –ed (•)
2nd Aorist Active	Part 3, minus PIA (ἐ), minus – ον	-όντ-, -οῦσ— NMS –ών NN/AS -όν	3/1/3	having –ed (•)
Aorist Middle	Part 3, minus PIA (ἐ), minus –α or –άμην	-αμεν-	2/1/2	having –ed (•)
Perfect Active	Part 4, minus –α	-οτ-, -υι- NMS –ως NN/AS -ος	3/1/3	having –ed (→ |)
Perfect Middle / Passive	Part 5, minus –μαι	-μεν-	2/1/2	Passive: having been –ed (→ |)
Aorist Passive	Part 6, minus PIA (ἐ), minus –ην	-εντ-, -εισ- NMS –είς NN/AS -έν	3/1/3	having been –ed (•)
Future Passive (rare in NT)	Part 6, minus PIA (ἐ), minus –ην	-ησομεν-	2/1/2	about to be –ed

Why am I showing you the Passive before we 'officially' learn it in the next chapter? In the words of a popular meme, "It's a surprise tool that will help us later."

Here is a Participle Synopsis with the verb λυω, λυσω, ἐλυσα, λελυκα, λελυμαι, ἐλυθην, modifying a Feminine Dative Plural noun. Remember, it means "I free" in the Active, "I ransom" in the Middle, and "I am freed" in the Passive.

Participle Synopsis: λυω in Feminine Dative Plural

Tense & Voice	Form	Q & D translation
Present Active	λυουσαις	freeing
Present Middle / Passive	λυομεναις	ransoming/being freed
Future Active	λυσουσαις	about to free
Future Middle	λυσομεναις	about to ransom
1ˢᵗ Aorist Active	λυσασαις	having freed (•)
2ⁿᵈ Aorist Active	(none)	
Aorist Middle	λυσαμεναις	having ransomed (•)
Perfect Active	λελυκυιαις	having freed ($\rightarrow$ |)
Perfect Middle / Passive	λελυμεναις	having ransomed/ been freed ($\rightarrow$ |)
Aorist Passive	λυθεισαις	having been freed (•)
Future Passive	λυθησομεναις	about to be freed

See the next page for a Guide to Participle Uses that will be useful for all your future studies of Greek. This is a repeat of the chart in Chapter 7, but will make more sense now.

Participle Uses Overview, once more

Participle Use	Usage hints in Greek	Translation hints in English
1) attributive	preceded by article; negative **οὐ** is for specific persons/things, **μή** for non-specific	translate with relative clause **who, which, that**
2) temporal	can have **ἔπειτα** in main clause to show that main verb happens after participle	translate with **after** (Aorist or Perfect Participle), **when** or **while** (Aorist or Present Participle) or (rarely) **before** (Future Participle)
3) causal	can use with **οἷα, ἅτε** to show speaker's assertion, with **ὡς** to show someone else's assertion	translate with **since** or **because** and note source of assertion if indicated
4) concessive	can use with **καίπερ** near participle or **ὅμως** near main verb	translate with **although**
5) purpose	can use future participle with optional **ὡς**, or other tenses with required **ὡς**	translate like so: Primary Main Verb: **so that...may ---** ; Secondary Main Verb: **so that...might ---**
6) protasis of condition	negative is always **μή**	translate with **if** like protasis of condition depending on condition type
7) genitive absolute	almost always modifies noun in Genitive, no overlapping words with rest of sentence	translate like types 2-6
8) supplementary	use with certain verbs to complete their meaning (e.g. "stop")	translate as English gerund (noun in "-ing")
9) indirect statement	use with verbs of thinking, saying, perceiving, etc. ["head" verbs]	translate with **that;** turn Accusative into Subject; turn Participle into Indicative Verb
10) co-ordinating	no markers	translate as finite verb + "and" + main verb

Here are some examples:

ὁ Ἰησους τους ἀποστολους διαλογιζομενους τον ἀμπελωνα εὑρεν.

ὁ Παυλος την Τρυφωσαν προς τη εἰκωνι του Καισαρος κηρυξασαν ἐδεξατο.

ὁ Πετρος τους ἀμαρτωλους τους μη ἀκουοντας τον λογον του θεου μισησει.

ἡ Σαλωμη τα προβατα οἱα ἐξελθοντα ἐκ της οἰκιας ἐδιωκεν.

ἐστι φωνη του φροφητευοντος ἐν τη ἐρημῳ, «Ἑτοιμαζετε την ὁδον του κυριου.»

Fun Activity

To practice Present Participles, think about actions you see people doing, and write a sentence about it.

Example: "I saw Tryphosa writing a message to Salome." = την Τρυφωσαν γραφουσαν λογον προς την Σαλωμην εἰδον.

To practice Aorist Participles, think of two actions, and decide which one happened first. The first Action is an Aorist Participle, and the second Action is an Indicative. If the two actions do not have any overlapping nouns or pronouns, try creating a Genitive Absolute (see #7 in the chart) by making the Aorist Participle and the noun it modifies Genitive, then put everything else in its regular case.

Example: "I saw Philip after he wrote a message" = τον Φιλιππον γραψαντα λογον εἰδον.

Annotating Sentences, Part 2: Reed-Kellogg Diagrams and Syntax Trees

Besides the informal system of circling, underlining, and drawing arrows, other systems of marking up sentences and sorting them out are Reed-Kellogg diagrams and Syntax trees. The master of Reed-Kellogg diagrams for the Greek New Testament is Prof. Randy Leedy, formerly of Liberty University. Syntax trees are taught in Linguistics program, such as upper-division courses in Syntax. You will need to know either Reed-Kellogg Diagrams or Syntax Trees for the next few homework assignments.

Reed-Kellogg Diagrams

Reed-Kellogg Diagrams were formerly taught in English classes in the United States, even in my lifetime. But they are now no longer taught, partly because English speakers tend to understand the syntax of English pretty well, even if they do not have the names for everything. Nevertheless, Reed-Kellogg diagrams can be useful in translating a sentence in another language into English, since they tend to sort the flexible word order of Greek into the rigid word order of English.

Quick Example:
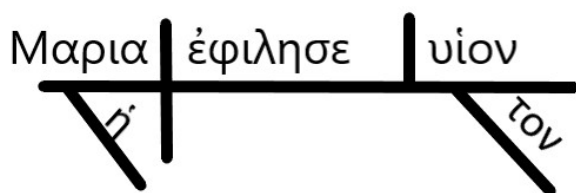
ἐφιλησε τον υἱον ἡ Μαρια. = Mary loved the Son. Do you see how the Reed-Kellogg Diagram transforms the quilt-like structure of the Greek sentence, Verb-Object-Subject, into the linear English sentence, which follows a rigid Subject-Verb Object structure?

See below for the general way to do Reed-Kellogg Diagrams.

Reed - Kellogg   Diagrams

Subject | Verb | Object
- Article
- Adjective
- Adverb
- Preposition
- (of) Genitive Noun
- Object of Preposition
  - Article
  - Adjective
  - Conj.
  - Adjective

Conjunction (Conj.)

can be Noun or Adjective

Subject | Linking Verb / Predicate Nominative
- Participle | Object of Participle
- (for) Dative Noun
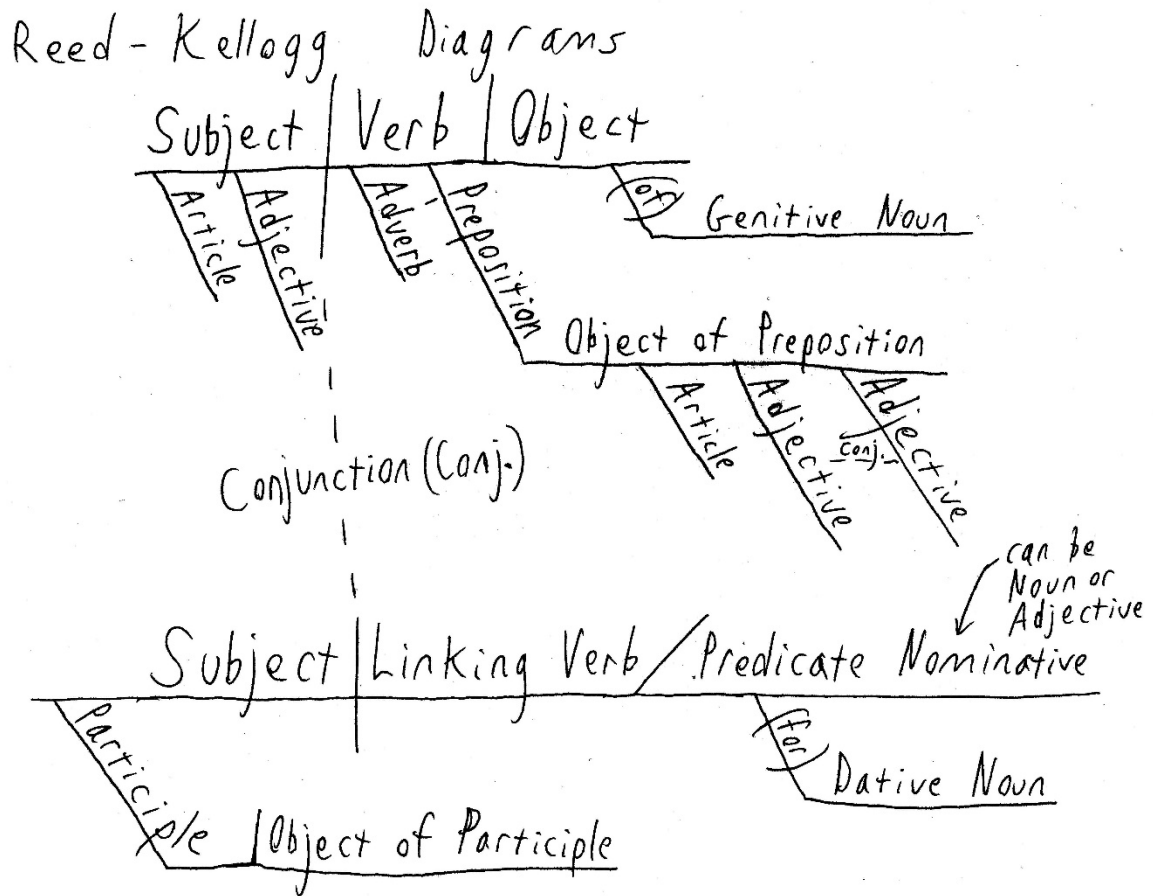
Example in English:

We saw John baptizing many sinners in the river.
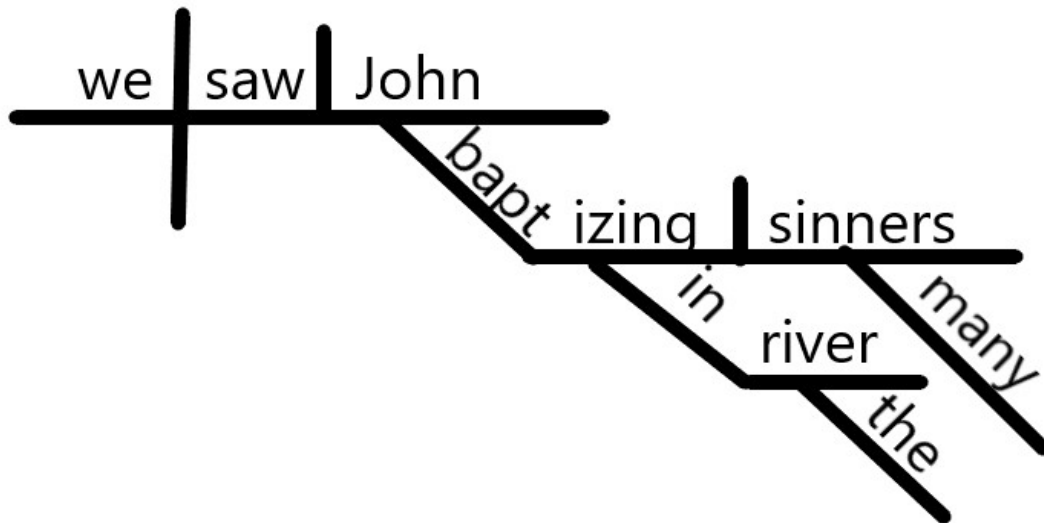
Example in Greek:

τον Ἰωαννην πολλους ἁμαρτωλους ἑν τῳ ποταμῳ βαπτιζοντα εἱδομεν.

Note: We can tell that John is doing the baptizing, especially in the Greek, and we can infer that "in the river" modifies "baptizing" rather than "we," "John," or "sinners," even though John and the sinners are also in the river.
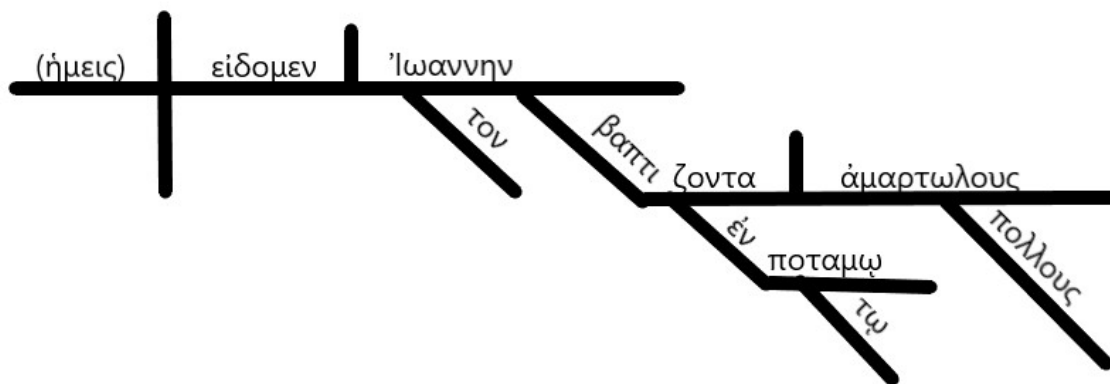
How does the Greek Reed-Kellogg diagram differ from the English one?

Syntax Trees

Another structure is the Syntax Tree from Linguistics, and here is the basic layout. Note how everything is labeled before it is given, unlike in the Reed-Kellogg diagrams, which assume you know the general structure.

Syntax Tree Schematic
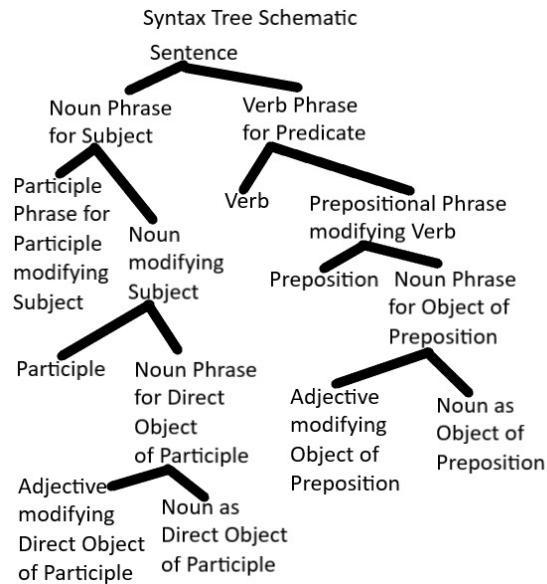
Example from English

We saw John baptizing many sinners in the river.
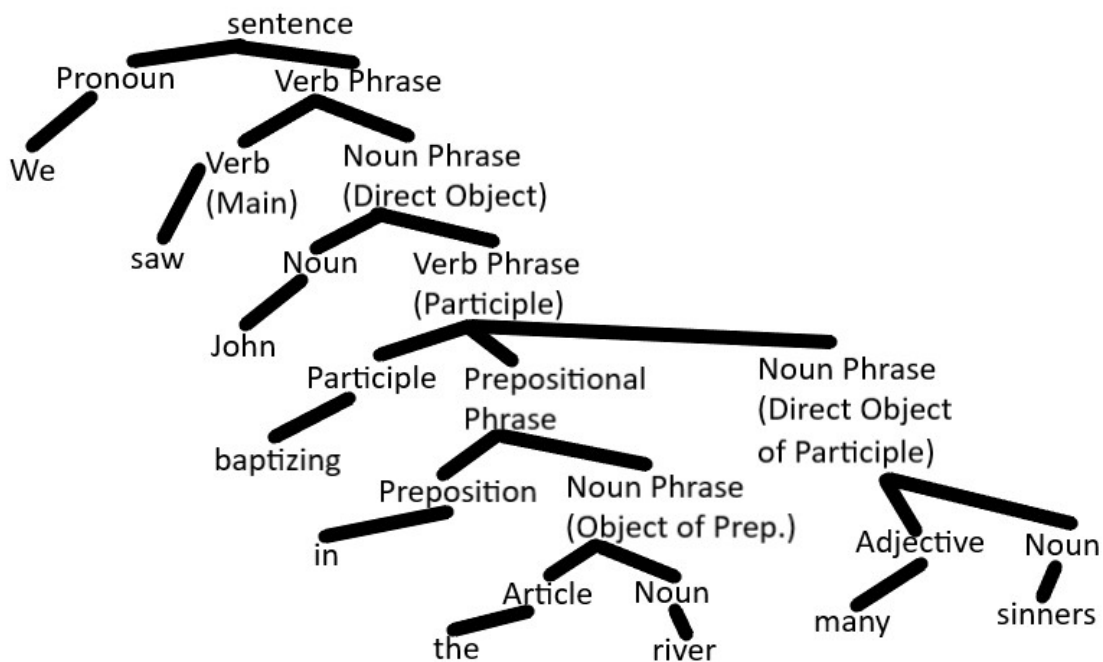
Example from Greek

τον Ἰωαννην βαπτιζοντα πολλους ἁμαρτωλους ἐν τῳ ποταμῳ εἰδομεν.
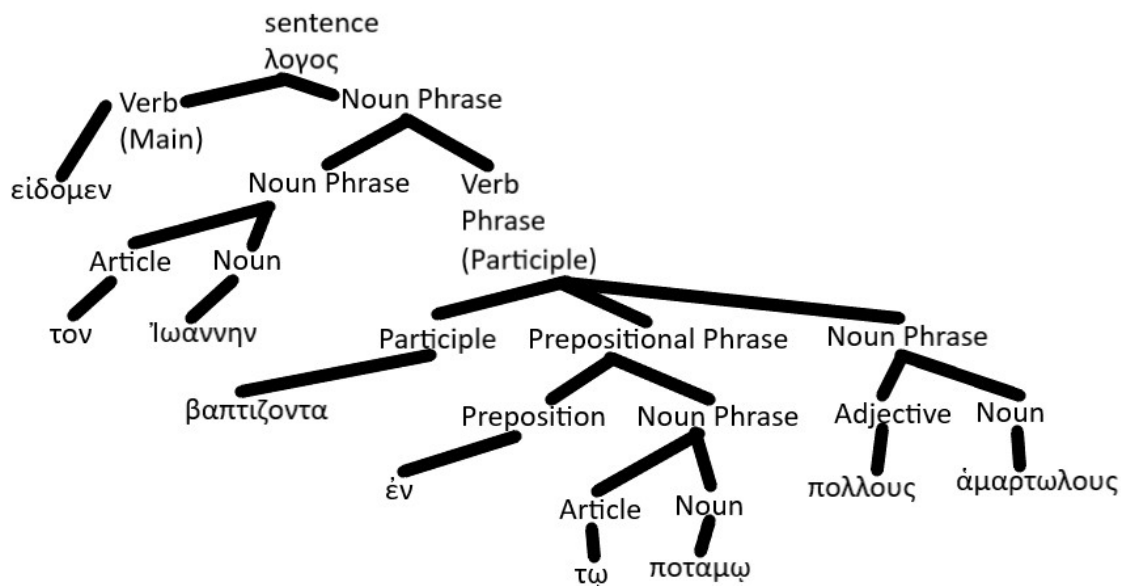
How does the Greek Syntax Tree differ from the English one? Practice with short English sentences first, then long English sentences, before you start doing Syntax Trees for Greek sentences.

Vocabulary for Chapter 14

Nouns

ἁμαρτωλος, ὁ = sinner

διδασκαλος, ὁ = teacher

θρονος, ὁ = throne

Ἰακωβος, ὁ = James

λιθος, ὁ = stone

πρεσβυτερος, ὁ = old person, elder

ἀμπελων, ἀμπελωνος, ὁ = vineyard

εἰκων, εἰκωνος, ἡ = image, statue

Ἑλλην, Ἑλληνος, ὁ = (the) Greek

Ἑλληνικος, -η, -ον = Greek (adjective)

Καισαρ, Καισαρος, ὁ = Caesar

κριμα, κριματος, το = judgement

οὑς, ὡτος, το = ear

παιδιον, το = child, enslaved child

παις, παιδος, ὁ = child, enslaved child

σπερμα, σπερματος, το = seed

πασχα, το (indeclinable noun) = Passover

Verbs

ἀγοραζω = I buy

βλασφημεω = I blaspheme

διακονεω = I manage, I serve + Dat.

διαλογιζομαι = I consider, argue, discuss

ἐλπιζω = I hope, expect

ἑτοιμαζω = I make ready, prepare

κρατεω = I grasp, arrest + Gen.

μισεω = I hate, loathe

πειραζω = I tempt, test, try

πρασσω = I do, act

προφητευω = I prophesy

σκανδαλιζω = I cause to fall, make stumble

ὑποτασσω = I subject someone (Acc.) to something (Dat.)

φυλασσω = I guard, (in Middle) am on guard against + Acc.

φωνεω = I call, call out

χαριζομαι = I give freely, gratify + Dative

Conjunction

καιπερ = although + Participle

Family Story: Jerusalem is Conquered

Vocabulary: γενεα, ἡ = family, πατριος, ὁ = ancestor, Σεμει, ὁ = Shimei, Βαβυλωνιος, -α, -ον = Babylonian

Περσος, -η, -ον = Persian.

Εἰπεν ἡ Τρυφωσα τοις τεκνοις τοις ἀκουουσιν (Participle) περι της γενεας της ἑαυτης, «Καιπερ

πρεσβυτερος ὤν, ὁ πατριος ἡμων ὁ Σεμει ἐν τη Ἱερουσαλημ περεπατησεν. Οἱ μεν Βαβυλωνιοι την πολιν

λαβειν ἐπειρασαν ἀπο των Ἰουδαιων στρατιωτων των αὐτην φυλασσοντων. Μετα δε ἐτος, οἱ

Βαβυλωνιοι την πολιν ἐλαβον και ἐκρατησαν του Σεμει του ἑτοιμασαντος τους Ἰουδαιους στρατιωτας

ὡς φυλασσοντας. Ἀλλα οἱ Περσοι, λαβοντες την πολιν, τοις Ἰουδαιοις τοις το ἱερον παλιν οἰκοδομησαι

θελουσιν (Participle) ἐχαρισαντο.

Scripture: Jesus Calls His Disciples

Mark 1:16-20

16 καὶ παράγων παρὰ τὴν θάλασσαν τῆς Γαλιλαίας, εἶδεν Σίμωνα καὶ Ἀνδρέαν τὸν ἀδελφὸν Σίμωνος

ἀμφιβάλλοντας ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ, ἦσαν γὰρ ἁλιεῖς. καὶ εἶπεν αὐτοῖς ὁ Ἰησοῦς, « δεῦτε ὀπίσω μου καὶ

ποιήσω ὑμᾶς γενέσθαι ἁλιεῖς ἀνθρώπων.» 18 καὶ εὐθὺς ἀφέντες τὰ δίκτυα, ἠκολούθησαν αὐτῷ 19 καὶ

προβὰς ὀλίγον εἶδεν Ἰάκωβον τὸν τοῦ Ζεβεδαίου καὶ Ἰωάννην τὸν ἀδελφὸν αὐτοῦ καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ

πλοίῳ καταρτίζοντας τὰ δίκτυα 20 καὶ εὐθὺς ἐκάλεσεν αὐτούς, καὶ ἀφέντες τὸν πατέρα αὐτῶν

Ζεβεδαῖον ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ μετὰ τῶν μισθωτῶν, ἀπῆλθον ὀπίσω αὐτοῦ.

Assignment 41

Name:_____

This Assignment begins the study of Participles in all three genders, numbers, and cases. First, learn the forms, then generate in isolation, then translate in context. All students:

Example: We saw John baptizing many because of their sins. = εἰδομεν τον Ἰωαννην __ βαπτιζοντα___ πολλους δια τας αὐτων ἁμαρτιας.

1.We brought bread for Mary, who was teaching the children about the gospel. = ἀρτον ἠνεγκομεν τῃ

Μαριᾳ τῃ _____ τα τεκνα περι του εὐαγγελιου.

2.Herod's soldiers seized John as he was preaching in the wilderness. = οἱ στρατιωται τον Ἰωαννην ἐν τῃ

ἐρημῳ _____ ἐλαβον.

3.I will look at the tomb of the kings, because they died in the city, not in the wilderness. = το μνημειον

βλεψω των βασιλεων _____ ἐν τῃ πολει, οὐκ ἐν τῃ ἐρημῳ.

4.Didn't you (pl) hear the voice of the man who was crying out in front of the temple? = οὐ την φωνην

του ἀνδρος του _____ ἐνωπιον του ἱερου ἠκουσατε;

5.What animal, eating appropriately, did you (sing.) find beneath the house? = τί θηριον, καλως

_____ ὑπο την οἰκιαν εὑρες;

6.Did they believe us after we prayed to the true and only God? = τῳ μονῳ θεῳ ἀληθει

_____ ἡμιν ἐπιστευσαν;

7. τῃ γυναικι, τῃ ποιησασῃ τα μεγαλα σημεια, εἰπομεν.

8. ἀπελθειν ἀπο του οἰκου ὑμας, παντα τον ἀρτον φαγουσας, δει.

Grad Assignment 41

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ἐβαπτιζομεν τους κακους τους μετανοησαντας.

2. ὁ ῥαββι τους γραμματεις, περι των νομων παντοτε λεγοντας, οὐκ ἐφιλει.

3. οὐ πιστευει τα ἐθνη τω θεω τω την Ἰσραηλ σωσαντι.

4. ζητησω την βασιλειαν του θεου, ἐρχομενην προς ἡμας.

5. του πατρος λαλουντος τω βασιλει ἀκουομεν.

6. εἰπομεν τοις τεκνοις ἀρνησαμενοις τα ἐργα αὐτων.

7. No one saw the wild beasts walking down from the hills, did he or she?

8. We left behind the king who had persecuted us, didn't we?

9. We love the sisters, since they are righteous and faithful.

10. [Pick one Greek sentence from 1-6 above and circle the verbs, underline the nouns or pronouns, draw boxes around prepositions, and put wavy or dashed lines under the articles, adjectives, and adverbs. Then draw arrows to show the order of translation. More than one order is possible.]

Assignment 42

Name:_____

This Assignment continues the study of participles. Learn vocabulary for Chapter 14. Review the Participle Uses Handout, Reed-Kellogg diagrams, and Syntax Trees.

1. οὐκ ἐσκανδαλιζομεν τον Ἡρῳδην, ὀντα ἠδη κακον.

2. οἱ Ἰουδαιοι λιθους προς τους Ἑλληνας τους κατα του θεου βλασφημησαντας ἐβαλον.

3. μη ὑπαγοντα, δει ἡμας ἐκβαλειν ἐκ των παιδων τα πονηρα δαιμονια. [why μη and not οὐ]?]

4. ηὐλογησεν ὁ Ἰακωβος την γυναικα, καιπερ προφητευσααν τον ἑαυτου θανατον.

5. ὠ ἁμαρτωλοι, εἰς το κριμα του θεου του πειραζοντος παντας ἀνθρωπους ἐρχεσθε.

6. διαλογιζεσθαι την του ἀμπελωνος παραβολην ἐξεσται ταις ἀδελφεις ταις ἐλπιζουσαις.

7.We hate the person who does not serve the church**.**

8.After they had bought the bread, the disciples were preparing the Passover for Jesus the teacher.

9.[Pick one Greek sentence from 1-6 and put it into a Reed-Kellogg diagram or Syntax Tree in the space below.]

Grad Assignment 42

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate the following sentences from Greek into English.

1. ἡμας Ἰουδαιους τω Καισαρι τω βλασφημουντι ὁ Ἡρῳδης ὑπεταξεν.

2. ὁ ῥαββι δυο ὀνους ὡς πρασσοντας ἐργα του οἰκου ἠγορασεν. [ὀνος, ὁ = donkey]

3. οἱ πρεσβυτεροι σε ῥηματα ἀληθη περι της ἀνατασεως προφητευσασαν πειρασουσιν.

4. ἐποιησεν ὁ θεος τον ἀνθρωπον ἐν τῳ ἑαυτου εἰκωνι ἑτοιμαζοντι ἡμας ὑπερ του οὐρανου.

5. ἐλπιζω οἰκοδομησαι το ἀληθες ἱερον λιθοις ταυτης της γης, οὐ της του Καισαρος γης.

6. οὐδενι ἐξεστι φωνησαι τον Καισαρα κρατησαντα των προφητων.

7.Then [you (s.)] guard the city from the soldiers after they traveled along Egypt!

8.We prepared the teachers, since they were going toward another land in boats.

9.[Pick one Greek sentence from 1-6 and diagram it as a Reed-Kellogg diagram or Syntax Tree in the space below.]

Assignment 43

Name:_____

This Assignment continues the study of participles, Reed-Kellogg diagrams, and Syntax Trees.

1. το ἱερον οἰκοδομουντες, εὑρειν μεγαλους λιθους ἠλπισαν.

2. ἀκουσεσθε ταυτα τα ῥηματα τα ὀντα ἁγια, τοις ὀφθαλμοις ἡ τοις ὠσιν;

3. διαλογιζομεναις ἐν τη ἐκκλησια, ταις πισταις γυναιξι διακονησομεν.

4.[Pick one Greek sentence from 1-3 and diagram it as a Reed-Kellogg diagram or Syntax Tree in the space below.]

Translate the following sentences into Greek.
5.We will guard the city of the prophet when he speaks to us about God.

6.Paul sent servants or scrolls to a city, if it had not received him already.

7.She who does not hate her sister does the will of God.

8.Who praised Jesus, after he healed the sick people?

Grad Assignment 43

Name:_____

Graduates: This Assignment continues the study of participles. Learn vocabulary on page 163. Review

the Participle Uses Handout and Reed-Kellogg diagrams or Syntax Trees.

9. οὗτοι οἱ δουλοι διακονουσι τῳ κυριῳ τον ἀμπελωνα παρα τῃ ἐκκλησιᾳ ἀγορασαντι.

10. τίσιν ἀποτολοις, τοις τῳ εὐαγγελιῳ πιστευουσιν, ἐκεινους τους λογους ὁ Ἰησους εἶπεν;

11. ὦ θυγατερ της Ἰερουσαλημ, εἰς την Ἰσραηλ νυν ἀνελθε.

12.[Pick one Greek sentence from 9-11 and diagram it as a Reed-Kellogg diagram or Syntax Tree in the space below.]

Translate the following sentences into Greek.
13. Sons, guard your land that has the vineyard with your lives.

14. It is not permitted for the scribes to write scrolls on behalf of the king, if he orders them.

15. Because we love bread, Jesus offered some to us.

16. If we do not work, it is not necessary for us to eat.

Chapter 15: Verb Voices: Active, Middle, and Passive

Passive Voice

With Passive verbs, the subject receives the action rather than performs it, as in Active verbs.

In English, Passive verbs feature a form of the verb "to be" plus the Passive Participle (ends in "–en" or "–ed")

I **am saved**. You **were found** by the soldiers. Greek **has been learned** by you. I **was hit** by a stone.

For the Greek tenses, here are some quick equivalents:

I am released = Greek Present Passive = λυομαι

I will be released = Greek Future Passive = λυθησομαι

I was being released = Greek Imperfect Passive = ἐλυομην

I was released = Greek Aorist Passive = ἐλυθην

We will learn how to generate the forms soon. For a complete list of Greek equivalents, see Appendix C.

Notice how with the Passive verbs, the person performing the action, where known, is indicated as the object of the preposition "by." In Greek, use **ὑπο** + Genitive for "by" in this sense, a construction called the **Genitive of Agent**. For things used as tools or means, use the **Dative of Means or Instrument**. Ideas are in-between people and things, so you will find them in the Dative without a preposition or in the Genitive with **ὑπο**.

Genitive of Agent: You were found **by the soldiers.** = ὑπο των στρατιωτων…

Dative of Means: I was hit **by a stone.** = λιθῳ…

Genitive of Agent/Dative of Means: he was taken **by death.** = ὑπο του θανατου/τῳ θανατῳ

Forms of the Passive

In Greek, some of the tenses have special forms for the Passive, but some are the same as the Middle-Only verbs, such as in the Present and the Imperfect.

Middle & Passive Endings

Middle-Only Verbs, which end in –**μαι** in the vocabulary, lend their endings to the Middle Voice and Passive Voice, so please review them now. In the grid below, Primary means "used for the Present, Future, or Perfect tenses," and Secondary means "used for the Imperfect, Aorist, and Pluperfect Tenses, used for the Tenses that have Past Indicative Augments." The Aorist Passive is a Root Aorist like ἐβην, but with Active-looking forms.

	Primary Middle/ Passive		Secondary Middle/ Passive		Aorist Passive	
	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1	-μαι	-μεθα	-μην	-μεθα	-ην	-ημεν
2	-σαι	-σθε	-σο	-σθε	-ης	-ητε
3	-ται	-νται	-το	-ντο	-η	-ησαν

 Also, often these endings will have theme vowels put between them and the stem, sometimes an "o" vowel [**o, ω**] before an ending beginning with a nasal [**μ, ν**], and an "e" vowel [**ε, η**] before other endings. In the chart below, a backslash [/] indicates alternation between two theme vowels. In the second singular with theme vowels, sigma often drops out between two vowels, leaving a mashed-together ending, as shown in the rightmost column on the chart below.

Review Principal Parts (Chapter 6) or Appendix D.

Also, Part 1 means the vocabulary form, but Part 6 means the rightmost form in the Principal Parts chart in Appendix E. With verbs like λυω, you can actually form Part 6 from Part 1: Take Part 1, drop –ω, add PIA to the left, and -θην to the right. θ is a Passive marker, and –ην is the First Person Singular Root Aorist ending, as above, so the result is ἐλυθην. Part 6 always ends in –ην, usually –θην unless the stem is aspirated like φ, as in γραφω = I write.

Passive Endings in (an overly) Schematic Chart

Tense & Mood	Stem	Theme Vowels	Endings	2nd Sing. Result
Present Indicative Passive	Part 1, minus —ω	o/ε	Primary	-εσαι = -ῃ
Imperfect Indicative Passive	Part 1, minus –ω, plus PIA (ἐ-)	o/ε	Secondary	-εσο= -ου
Future Indicative Passive	Part 6, minus PIA (ἐ-), minus -ν, plus -σ-	o/ε	Primary	εσαι = -ῃ
Aorist Indicative Passive	Part 6, minus -ην	(none)	Root Aorist Active like βαινω, ἐβην	-ης
Present Imperative Passive	Part 1, minus —ω	ε	-σο (singular), -σθε (plural)	-ου
Aorist Imperative Passive	Part 6, minus PIA, minus -ν	(none)	-τι (singular), -τε (plural)	-ητι
Present Infinitive Passive	Part 1, minus —ω	ε	-σθαι	
Aorist Infinitive Passive	Part 6, minus PIA, minus -ν		-ναι	
Present Participle Passive	Part 1, minus —ω	ομεν	Masc. = -ος Fem. = -η Neut. = -ον Like καλος, 2/1/2	
Aorist Participle Passive	Part 6, minus PIA, minus -ην	(none)	Masc. = -εις, -εντ- Fem. = -εισα, -εισ- Neut. = -εν, -εντ- Like πας, πασα, παν, 3/1/3	

Principal Parts Examples

Part 1	Part 2	Part 3	Part 4	Part 5	Part 6
λυω = I release	λυσω = I will release	ἐλυσα = I released	λελυκα = I have released	λελυμαι = I have been released	ἐλυθην = I was released
φερω	ὀψομαι	ἠνεγκον	ἐνηνοχα	ἐνηνεγμαι	ἠνεχθην

How would you translate the following Greek forms?

λυομεθα, ἐλυθητε, λυθηναι, λυθησονται, λυεσθε, λυομενας, λυθεντας

φερῃ, ἠνεχθημεν, φερεσθαι, ἐνεχθησεται, ἐνεχθηναι, ἐνεχθεισαις, φερομενου

Middle Voice of Active Verbs

In addition to our familiar Middle-Only Verbs, some Active verbs have Middle forms with special meanings.

1) Reflexive Action: I bathe myself (λουομαι), you yourself bathe yourself (συ λουῃ); contrast with Active: I bathe the children (λουω τα τεκνα).
2) Reciprocal Action: I converse (διαλογουμαι) with Salome (and she with me).
3) Causative Action: We have Philip taught (παιδευομεθα) how to use a shield, contrast with Active: We (ourselves) teach (παιδευομεν) Philip how to use a shield.
4) Intransitive Action: We stop (παυομεθα) next to the temple. (No Direct Object, many Middle-Only Verbs have no Active forms for this reason). You could also understand this example as Reflexive: We stop ourselves (παυομεθα) next to the temple.
5) Other Meanings of Verb: της γης ἀρχω. = I rule (Active) the land.
   των ἐργων ἀρχομαι. = I start (Middle) the tasks.
6) Fairy Dust/Unicorns: ἀρτον ἐποιησαμην. = I made bread (but I want to show you that I know how to use the Middle Voice and that I sprinkle my Greek prose with Fairy Dust and Unicorns). This might be the reason for the Middle in Acts 1:1.

Hint: If you see a Direct Object, the verb is probably Middle or Middle-Only. If you see **ὑπο** + Genitive, the verb is probably Passive.

Examples: **τους ἱερεις δεχομεθα.** = We receive the priests. **Middle/Middle-Only**

ὑπο των ἱερεων λυομεθα. = We are released by the priests. **Passive**

τους ἱερεις λυομεθα. = We ransom (cause to be set free) the priests. **Middle**

ὑπο της ὀργης ἀπεκτεινομεθα. = We were being killed by our anger. **Passive**

τῳ ἀληθει θεῳ προσηυχομεθα. = We were praying to the true God. **Middle/Middle-Only**

αὐτη τῳ ἐλεει του θεου ἐλυετο. = She herself was being released by God's mercy. **Passive**

Passive Voice of Middle-Only Verbs

Some Middle-Only Verbs are Intransitive and do not have a Passive. As in English, "I am gone" means "I have gone" not that someone else is "go-ing" me. But a few have a real Passive, such as δεχομαι = I welcome. Because of the way the endings work, the Present and Imperfect could be either Middle or Passive. For example the Imperfect form ἐδεχομην could mean "I was welcoming" or "I was being welcomed," and only context can help.

τον Παυλον ἐδεχομην. = I was welcoming Paul.

ὑπο του Παυλου ἐδεχομην. = I was being welcomed by Paul.

This ambiguity is not present in the Future or Aorist, as we will see below.

Aorist & Future Passive: use Principal Part 6

Examples:

τοις μεγαλοις λιθοις ἐβληθητε. (βαλλω, λιθος = stone)

παρα την ὁδον ὑπο των στρατιωτων ἠχθημεν. (ἀγω)

ὑπο του βασιλεως δια την πιστην ζητηθησομεθα. (ζητεω)

ὑπο της Τρυφωσης ἐδεχθημεν. (δεχομαι)

Review Examples: Middle-Only Verbs (Often Intransitive Verbs, esp. Motion, or Verbs that contain their own objects):

ἀπο της οἰκιας εἰς το ἱερον ἐρχομεθα. = We are going from our house into the temple.

παντοτε δια των Ἱεροσολυμων εὐαγγελιζονται.= They are preaching the gospel everywhere throughout Jerusalem.

Middle Voice (Reflexive, Reciprocal, Causative, Other) of a Verb that has an Active Voice:

τα ἀγαθα τεκνα διδασκομεθα. = We are having the good children educated.

Passive (The Subject is affected by someone [ὑπο + Genitive = Genitive of Agent] or by something [Dative of Means] else, or both):

ὑπο των Ἰουδαιων ἐκ του ἱερου ῥαβδοις ἐκβαλλομεθα.= We are being thrown out of the temple with rods by the Judaeans.

Passive-Only Verbs

Just as we had Middle-Only Verbs, we now have Passive-Only verbs, but there are only five of them in the New Testament.

Passive-Only Verbs

Part 1	Future and Aorist (Parts 2 and 6)	Meaning	Explanation
ἀποκρινομαι	ἀποκρινεομαι, ἀπεκριθην	= I answer, reply	Perhaps this verb originally meant, "I am interrogated," then meant, "I reply to interrogation," and then "I reply"
βουλομαι	βουλησομαι, ἐβουληθην	= I wish, want (often with Infin.)	Perhaps this verb originally meant "I am afflicted with wishes for", since wishes and desires were thought to come from hearts or livers rather than from minds or souls
πορευομαι	πορευσομαι, ἐπορευθην	= I go, travel	This verb probably originally meant, "I am carried" or "I ride" since elite Greeks walked or rowed themselves from place to place as little as possible
φοβεομαι	φοβηθησομαι, ἐφοβηθην	= I fear, am afraid	This verb probably comes from an obsolete verb, φοβεω, "I cause fear, I strike fear into", so if someone strikes fear into you, you are made to feel fear (Passive), and therefore you are afraid (Intransitive), or you feel fear (Active)
μιμνησκομαι (Ch. 20)	μνησομαι, ἐμνησθην	= I recall, remember + Genitive	The Active form of the Verb meant "remind," so the Passive meant, "I am reminded of," but the Active forms have disappeared by the time of the NT. The English analogy explains why the verb takes a Genitive "Object" of the thing remembered.

Examples: την βασιλειαν του Ἡρῳδου φοβουμεθα. ὁ Ἰωαννης ἀπεκρίθη, «Οὐ.» ὦ Πετρε, βουλη προς τα Ἱεροσολυμα πορευθηναι;

Review: Voice

English verbs have two voices, Active and Passive.

With an Active-Voice verb, the Subject performs the action.

Example: Tryphosa writes the letter.

With a Passive-Voice verb, the Subject receives the action.

Example: The letter is written by Tryphosa.

Note the use of the English verb "be" and the Participle "written," which is true of all English Passive forms. Also, note the preposition "by," followed by the person who is writing the letter, the Agent.

Greek verbs have three voices, Active, Middle, and Passive.

With an Active-Voice verb, the Subject performs the action.

Example: ἡ Τρυφωσα την ἐπιστολην γραφει. = Tryphosa writes the letter.

The Subject, ἡ Τρυφωσα, is in the Nominative case, and the Direct Object, την ἐπιστολην, is in the Accusative case.

With a Middle-Voice verb, the relationship is more complicated. The Subject could perform the action on herself, have the action performed by someone else, cause the action to be perfomed, perform the action reciprocally with someone else, or just use a Middle-Voice verb to be fancy.

Example: ἡ Τρυφωσα την ἐπιστολην γραφεται.

This sentence could mean that Tryphosa has the letter written by a secretary, that she is making someone else write the letter, that she is causing the letter to be written, or even that she is writing the letter for herself without intending anyone else to read it. But the key thing to note is that Verbs in the Middle Voice can have Direct Objects, like την ἐπιστολην in this sentence.

Remember that we learned Middle-Only verbs, which have no Active forms. Often we translate these verbs like Active-Voice verbs.

ἡ Τρυφωσα προς το ἱερον ἐρχεται. = Tryphosa is going to the temple.

NOT "Tryphosa is gone to the temple," which is an older way to say, "Tryphosa went to the temple."

With a Passive-Voice verb, the Subject receives the action.

Example: ἡ ἐπιστολη ὑπο της Τρυφωσης γραφεται. = The letter is written by Tryphosa.

Note that the Subject, ἡ ἐπιστολη, is still Nominative, but the person performing the action is in the Genitive Case with ὑπο, ὑπο της Τρυφωσης, a Grammatical Construction called the Genitive of Agent.

We could even take people out of the sentence.

ἡ ἐπιστολη τῳ στυλῳ γραφεται. = The letter is written with a pen.

The Dative of Means or Instrument, τῳ στυλῳ in this sentence, is sometimes found with Passive Verbs.

Or there could be no Agent or Means.

ἡ ἐπιστολη γραφεται. = The letter is written. (By whom? With what?)

But there are also Passive-Only verbs, which have no Active forms. We usually translate these verbs like Active-Voice verbs.

Example: ἡ Τρυφωσα ἐκ του ἱερου πορευεται. = Tryphosa travels from the temple.

Write an English sentence with a Passive-Voice verb, then translate it into Greek.

Vocabulary for Chapter 15

Nouns

διαβολος, ὁ = devil, slanderer

καρπος, ὁ = fruit, result

ναος, ὁ = temple, sanctuary, shrine

Φιλιππος, ὁ = Philip

φοβος, ὁ = fear

χρονος, ὁ = time ('clock' time, not 'opportunity' time)

Passive-Only Verbs

ἀπο-κρινομαι = I reply + Dative

βουλομαι = I wish

πορευομαι = I go, travel

ἐκ-πορευομαι = I go out

φοβεομαι = I fear, am afraid

Regular Verbs

ἀγιαζω = I make holy, hallow

ἀσθενεω = I am sick, am weak

βασταζω = I take up (a load)

γαμεω (again) = I marry

γνωριζω = I inform, make known

δουλευω = I am a slave, I serve + Dat.

ἐκχεω = I pour out

ἐνδυω = I dress (with clothing)

ἐπιστρεφω = I turn (back)

ἡκω = I have come, I am present

ἰσχυω = I am strong, I prevail

κελευω = I order, command

κλαιω = I grieve, pain

κωλυω = I prevent, hinder

λυπεω = I grieve, feel pain

ὀμνυω = I swear, take an oath

περισσευω = I exceed, overflow

τελεω = I complete, finish

ὑποστρεφω = I turn back, return

φαινω = I shine, (in Middle) appear

φρονεω = I ponder, consider, think over

Family Story: Asking and Answering

ἡ Τρυφωσα μεν εἶπεν, « ὑπο τίνος ὁ πιθηκος ἐβλεφθη; ». ἡ δε Σαλωμη ἀπεκριθη, « ὁ πιθηκος ὑπο μου ἐβλεφθη. » ὁ μεν Φιλιππος εἶπεν, « τα ἐργα της οἰκιας οὐκ ἐποιηθη.» ὁ δε Ἰακωβος ἀπεκριθη, « τα ἐργα της οἰκιας οὐκ ἐποιηθη ὑπο σου. » ἡ μεν Σαλωμη εἶπεν, « ὑπο τίνων οὑτος ὁ καλος ἀρτος ἐποιηθη;» ἡ δε Τρυφωσα ἀπεκριθη, « ἡ Ἰωαννα ἡ ἀδελφη μου και ἐγω τουτον τον ἀρτον ἐποιησαν. » ὁ μεν Ἰακωβος εἶπεν, « ὑπο τίνων οὑτοι οἱ καλοι λιθοι ὑπερ του τειχους (wall) ἡτοιμασθησαν; » ὁ δε Φιλιππος ἀπεκριθη, « οὑτοι οἱ λιθοι ὑπο των παιδων του Πετρου ἡτοιμασθησαν.»

Scripture: Jesus Answers Nicodemus

γεγεννημενον, το = that which has been born; γεννηθη = is born (Passive Subjunctive);

γεννηθηναι = to be born (Aorist Passive Infinitive); γερων, γεροντος, ὁ = old man; δυναται =

he/she/it/they (sing.) can (Passive-Only Verb); ἐαν μη = unless; κοιλια, ἡ = womb; ὠν = being

(John 3:3-6, MGNT) 3 ἀπεκρίθη Ἰησοῦς καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῷ, «ἀμὴν, ἀμὴν, λέγω σοι, ἐὰν μή τις

γεννηθῇ ἄνωθεν, οὐ δύναται ἰδεῖν τὴν βασιλείαν τοῦ θεοῦ.» 4 λέγει πρὸς αὐτὸν ὁ Νικόδημος

«πῶς δύναται ἄνθρωπος γεννηθῆναι, γέρων ὤν; μὴ δύναται εἰς τὴν κοιλίαν τῆς μητρὸς αὐτοῦ

δεύτερον εἰσελθεῖν καὶ γεννηθῆναι;» 5 ἀπεκρίθη Ἰησοῦς, «ἀμὴν, ἀμὴν, λέγω σοι, ἐὰν μή τις

γεννηθῇ ἐξ ὕδατος καὶ πνεύματος, οὐ δύναται εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν τοῦ θεοῦ 6 τὸ

γεγεννημένον ἐκ τῆς σαρκὸς σάρξ ἐστιν καὶ τὸ γεγεννημένον ἐκ τοῦ πνεύματος πνεῦμά ἐστιν.

Assignment 44

Name:_____

All Students: Please learn the vocabulary words for the chapter first! Remember ὑπο = by (a person)
Do a Reed-Kellogg diagram or Syntax Tree for one of the sentences in Sentences 1-6.

1. πολλα ὑπο του Ἰησου ἐν ταυτη τη πολει ἐπραχθη.

2. προς ὑμας ἐρχεσθαι θελω, ἀλλα ὑπο του πονηρου κωλυομαι.

3. ὁ Φιλιππος τῳ θανατῳ της μιας θυγατρος ἑαυτου ἐλυπειτο.

4. ἐβαπτισθητε μεν ὑδατι, βαπτισθησεσθε δε ἐν τῳ ἁγιῳ πνευματι.

5. ἡ Μαρια εἰπε ὁτι Λαμβανουσα τους καρπους ἐτελησα, και νυν ἀκουσαι το εὐαγγελιον θελω.

6. ἁγιαζε το ὀνομα του θεου, και το πνευμα αὐτου ἐπι σου ἐκχησει.

7. The words of life were being spoken by Jesus.

Name:_____

Graduate Students: do a Reed-Kellogg diagram or Syntax Tree for one of the sentences in Sentences 1-3.

1. ὦ λογε του κυριου, γνωριζου ὑπο παντων των λαων.

2. ἀπο του φοβου και ἀπο του διαβολου ὑπο του θεου σωζεσθαι θελω.

3. ὑπο του βασιλεως του Ἡρῳδου ὁ Ἰωαννης ὁ βαπτιζων ἐκρατηθη.

4. Now it is necessary for the bread to be being made by us, so we may eat it.

5. I myself, who am a daughter of James, am married off by him to Peter.

6. These tasks will not be finished before the end of the time.

Assignment 45

Name:_____

Please review the Middle Voice and the Passive-Only verbs, which are
found in the Main Verbs in the following sentences, then translate from Greek to English
or from English to Greek.

1. οἱα δεχομενοι το ἁγιον πνευμα, ἐνδυομεθα τον Χριστον.

2. τον διαβολον και τα πονηρα ἐργα φυλαξομαι, προσευχομενη τῳ θεῳ. [Why Middle, not Active?]

3. ἐποιησασθε την παραβολαν του οἰκου του καλως οἰκοδομηθεντος.

4. ὠ βασιλευ, βουλῃ καταβηναι εἰς τα μεγαλα πλοια;

5. «Τί ἐστιν ἡ ἀληθεια;» ἀπεκριθη ὁ ἀρχων της γης.

6. τα θηρια τα φαγοντα ὁλον το προβατον φοβηθησομαι.

7. Peter and Barnabas replied to their Lord, "We are greater than all the other apostles."

8. Does God show himself to you, if you want to seek His throne?

Grad Assignment 45

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate from Greek to English or from English to Greek.

1. ὀμνυομεν ὁτι οὑτος ὁ ναος ἐν τοις Ἱεροσολυμοις παλιν ἁγιασθησεται.

2. καιπερ ἐνωπιον της θλιψεως ἰσχυοντες, τῳ φοβῳ ἐκωλυθητε.

3. σωσασαι τους ἀσθενεις, αὐτους ἐγειραι και περιπατησαι ἐκελευον.

4. ὑπο του Ἡρῳδου, ἀτε διωκοντος τους πιστους, ἐλυπουμην.

5. την πονηραν θαλασσαν και τους λιθους τους πιπτοντας ἐφοβουμεθα.

6.The soldiers wanted us to weep, but we rejoiced in the Lord.

7.Philip the Great knows that you (pl.) will never be turned back by persecution.

8.Who will ponder the great works of God that are in all places and at all times?

Chapter 16: Perfect (Stative) Aspect

Verbal Aspect Review(all tenses)

The following chart reviews Verbal Aspect, which describes the nature of an action rather than the time when it occurs (Past, Present, Future).

Verbal Aspect (all languages)	Greek Tenses
Progressive/Continuing: →	Present, Imperfect
Simple/Once-and-for-all: ●	Aorist, Future
Completed: →|	Perfect, Pluperfect

This chart is oversimplified, since the Future sometimes expresses Progressive Aspect, and the Present sometimes expresses Simple Aspect in the Indicative Mood. See the Appendix for the Fifteen Tenses of English.

Perfect/Completed Aspect

English indicates Completed Aspect with the helping verb "have/has." Its past form is "had."

I **have written** to you about this problem already. ← note that the Present time is the reference point, indicated by a vertical line (|) in the chart above, as if "before now" is implied.

They **had written** to me before Pentecost. ← note that the reference point is a time in the Past, "before [a past event]"

Review of Principal Parts with λυω, with Verbal Aspect in symbols

1. λυω = I release, am releasing (●, -->)
2. λυσω = I will release, will be releasing (●, -->)
3. ἐλυσα = I released (●)
4. λελυκα = I have released (--> |)
5. λελυμαι = I have been released (--> |)
6. ἐλυθην = I was released (●)

Most Principal Parts 4 & 5 will feature epsilon-reduplication, where you take the initial consonant of the verb, add an epsilon after it, then add the two-letter combination onto the left side of the verb. Verbs that begin with vowels are tricksy, since you cannot add epsilon to a vowel, so usually they become longer, ε -> η, ο -> ω, and iota go subscript.

Examples: λ̲ελυκα, λ̲ελυμαι, γ̲εγραφα, γ̲εγραμμαι, σ̲εσωκα, σ̲εσωσμαι (σωζω), οἰκοδομεω, ᾠκοδομηκα

Many Principal Part 4's have a kappa or an aspirated consonant just before the ending.

Examples: λελυ̲κα, γεγρα̲φα, ᾠκοδομη̲κα

Some Principal Part 5's will have two consonants just before the ending.

Examples γεγρα̲μ̲μαι, σεσω̲σ̲μαι

Greek uses Principal Parts 4 and 5 to form the Perfect and Pluperfect, like so:

Active: use Principal Part 4, lop final –α to get the Perfect Active Stem.

    a)   Perfect Indicative Active

Add the following Personal Endings to the Perfect Active Stem. Most of the endings look Aorist, but they are added to a different stem.

Personal Endings of Perfect Active Tense

Person	Sing. endings	Pl. endings	Sing. Example	Pl. example
1st	-α	-αμεν	γεγραφα	γεγραφαμεν
2nd	-ας	-ατε	γεγραφας	γεγραφατε
3rd	-ε(ν)	-ασι(ν)	γεγραφε(ν)	γεγραφασι(ν)

Compare to the Aorist:

Comparison of Perfect Active and Aorist Active forms

Person	Perfect Sing.	Perfect Pl.	Aorist Sing.	Aorist Pl.
1st	γεγραφα = I have written	γεγραφαμεν = we have written	ἐγραψα = I wrote	ἐγραψαμεν = we wrote
2nd	γεγραφας = you (sing.) have written	γεγραφατε = you (pl.) have written	ἐγραψας = you (sing.) wrote	ἐγραψατε = you (pl.) wrote
3rd	γεγραφε(ν) = he, she, it, *they has written	γεγραφασι(ν) = they have written	ἐγραψε(ν) = he, she, it, *they wrote	ἐγραψαν = they wrote

    b)   Perfect Infinitive Active

Add the ending -εναι to the Perfect Stem. The resulting form means "to have ---ed"

γεγραφ + εναι = γεγραφεναι = "to have written"

    c)   Perfect Participle Active

See Chapter 14 for Participles, but here it is again.

Take Principal Part 4, lop off –α to get the Perfect Stem and add Perfect Active Participle markers, then Endings. Example: γεγραφ + -ως, -υια, -ος = γεγραφως, γεγραφυια, γεγραφος. When you move away from the Nominative Singular, the Masculine and Neuter will show the –οτ- Perfect Active Participle marker, and the Feminine will show the –υι- Perfect Active Participle marker. The Masculine and Neuter use 3rd Declension endings, while the Feminine uses 1st Declension alpha-type endings (3/1/3 = M/F/N).

Perfect Active Participle Example

Case & Number	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom./Voc. Sing.	γεγραφως	γεγραφυια	γεγραφος
Acc. Sing.	γεγραφοτα	γεγραφυιαν	γεγραφος
Gen. Sing.	γεγραφοτος	γεγραφυιας	γεγραφοτος
Dat. Sing.	γεγραφοτι	γεγραφυιᾳ	γεγραφοτι
Nom./Voc. Pl.	γεγραφοτες	γεγραφυιαι	γεγραφοτα
Acc. Pl.	γεγραφοτας	γεγραφυιας	γεγραφοτα
Gen. Pl.	γεγραφοτων	γεγραφυιων	γεγραφοτων
Dat. Pl.	γεγραφοσι(ν)	γεγραφυιαις	γεγραφοσι(ν)

    d)   Pluperfect Indicative Active

This form is rare, but occurs often enough to be annoying, so I give it here for completeness. Take the Perfect Stem, add the Pluperfect Active Personal Endings to the right side/ending. It is optional to add a Past Indicative Augment to the Perfect Stem.

Perfect Stem: γεγραφ-

ἐ + γεγραφ + ειν = ἐγεγραφειν OR γεγραφ + ειν = γεγραφειν = I had written

Pluperfect Indicative Active Endings and Example Forms

Person	Sing. endings	Pl. endings	Sing. example	Pl. example
1st	-ειν	-ειμεν	ἐγεγραφειν OR γεγραφειν	ἐγεγραφειμεν OR γεγραφειμεν
2nd	-εις	-ειτε	ἐγεγραφεις OR γεγραφεις	ἐγεγραφειτε OR γεγραφειτε
3rd	-ει	-εισαν	ἐγεγραφει OR γεγραφει	ἐγεγραφεισαν OR γεγραφεισαν

Middle-Only, Middle, Passive, and Passive-Only forms are all identical. For the Perfect Middle/Passive Stem, use Principal Part 5 minus final –μαι. For the verb, λυω, λυσω, ἐλυσα, λελυκα, λελυμαι, ἐλυθην, the Perfect Middle/Passive Stem is λελυ-.

With verbs formed from Principal Part 5, sometimes the Genitive of Agent is replaced by the Dative of Agent without a preposition.

Example: We have been arrested by Pilate. = **ὑπο του Πιλατου** κεκρατημεθα ← Gen. of Agent

OR **τῳ Πιλατῳ** κεκρατημεθα. ← Dative of Agent

    e)   Perfect Indicative Middle/Passive

For the Perfect Indicative Middle/Passive, use the Primary Middle/Passive endings because the Perfect Tense is considered Primary because it shows time in reference to the Present Tense. Add these endings the Perfect Middle/Passive Stem without theme vowels.

Perfect Indicative Middle/Passive Endings and Example Forms

Person	Sing. endings	Pl. endings	Sing. example	Pl. example
1st	-μαι	-μεθα	λελυμαι	λελυμεθα
2nd	-σαι	-σθε	λελυσαι	λελυσθε
3rd	-ται	-νται	λελυται	λελυνται

Why didn't I use γραφω? Because look what happens when a verb stem ends in a consonant. Principal Part 5 of γραφω is γεγραμμαι, and it looks as though the Perfect Middle/Passive Stem should be γεγραμ-. But it is actually γεγραφ-, plus some sound changes to make the forms pronounceable.

Consonant-Stem Perfect Indicative Middle/Passive Example

Person	Sing. Example	Pl. example
1st	γεγραφμαι → γεγραμμαι φ + μ → π + μ → μ + μ → μμ	γεγραφμεθα → γεγραμμεθα φ + μ → π + μ → μ + μ → μμ
2nd	γεγραφσαι → γεγραψαι φ + σ → π + σ → ψ	γεγραφσθε → γεγραφθε φ + σθ → φθ
3rd	γεγραφται → γεγραπται φ + τ → π + τ → πτ	γεγραφνται → γεγραμμενοι /-αι εἰσιν OR γεγραμμενα ἐστιν no way to simplify, so use the Perfect Middle/Passive Participle plus the verb εἰμι in the Present Indicative. We will see similar forms later in Chapter 20, where they are called Periphrastic forms.

    f)   Perfect Infinitive Middle/Passive

Use the Perfect Middle/Passive Stem plus the Middle/Passive Infinitive ending -σθαι. Again, there is no theme vowel.

λελυσθαι = Passive: to have been freed; Middle: to have ransomed

γεγραφθαι = Passive: to have been written; Middle: to have indicted, to have caused to be written

    g)   Perfect Participle Middle/Passive

This was covered briefly in Chapter 14, but here is a fuller treatment. Take the Perfect Middle/Passive Stem, add the Non-Active Participle Marker –μεν-, then add the same endings as the adjective ἀγαθος, -ος, -η, -ον. (2/1/2 = M/F/N). Again, there is no theme vowel.

Perfect Participle Middle/Passive Example

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom. Sing.	λελυμενος	λελυμενη	λελυμενον
Acc. Sing.	λελυμενον	λελυμενην	λελυμενον
Gen. Sing.	λελυμενου	λελυμενης	λελυμενου
Dat. Sing.	λελυμενῳ	λελυμενῃ	λελυμενῳ
Nom. Pl.	λελυμενοι	λελυμεναι	λελυμενα
Acc. Pl.	λελυμενους	λελυμενας	λελυμενα
Gen. Pl.	λελυμενων	λελυμενων	λελυμενων
Dat. Pl.	λελυμενοις	λελυμεναις	λελυμενοις

Consonant-Stem Perfect Participle Middle/Passive Example

Case	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom. Sing.	γεγραμμενος	γεγραμμενη	γεγραμμενον
Acc. Sing.	γεγραμμενον	γεγραμμενην	γεγραμμενον
Gen. Sing.	γεγραμμενου	γεγραμμενης	γεγραμμενου
Dat. Sing.	γεγραμμενῳ	γεγραμμενῃ	γεγραμμενῳ
Nom. Pl.	γεγραμμενοι	γεγραμμεναι	γεγραμμενα
Acc. Pl.	γεγραμμενους	γεγραμμενας	γεγραμμενα
Gen. Pl.	γεγραμμενων	γεγραμμενων	γεγραμμενων
Dat. Pl.	γεγραμμενοις	γεγραμμεναις	γεγραμμενοις

h) Pluperfect Indicative Middle/Passive

For these tense/voice combinations, add the Secondary Middle/Passive endings to the Perfect Middle/Passive Stem, and the Past Indicative Augment is again optional. The Pluperfect is considered a Secondary Tense because it shows Completed action in reference to the Past.

ἐ + λελυ + μην = ἐλελυμην OR λελυ + μην = λελυμην

Pluperfect Indicative Middle/Passive Endings and Example

Person	Sing. endings	Pl. endings	Sing. example	Pl. example
1ˢᵗ	-μην	-μεθα	ἐλελυμην OR λελυμην	ἐλελυμεθα OR λελυμεθα
2ⁿᵈ	-σο	-σθε	ἐλελυσο OR λελυσο	ἐλελυσθε OR λελυσθε
3rd	-το	-ντο	ἐλελυτο OR λελυτο	ἐλελυντο OR λελυντο

Note that λελυμεθα and λελυσθε are the same in the Perfect or Pluperfect; context will tell you which one is meant.

Pluperfect Indicative Middle/Passive Endings and Example, Consonant Stem

Person	Sing. Endings	Pl. endings	Sing. example	Pl. example
1st	-μην	-μεθα	ἐγεγραμμην OR γεγραμμην	ἐγεγραμμεθα OR γεγραμμεθα
2nd	-σο	-σθε	ἐγεγραψο OR γεγραψο	ἐγεγραφθε OR γεγραφθε
3rd	-το	-ντο	ἐγεγραπτο OR γεγραπτο	γεγραμμενοι/-αι ἦσαν OR γεγραμμενα ἦν

Uses/Translations:

Perfect Indicative Active: "have ---ed"

γεγραφα, τετηρηκα, πεποιηκεν

Perfect Infinitive Active: "to have –ed"

τον ἀρτον πεποιηκεναι θελω.

Perfect Participle Active: "having ---ed" (but try to express as full clause)

γεγραφυια την ἐπιστολην, ἡ Τρυφωσα καθευδει. = Having written the letter, Tryphosa lies down. OR After she has written the letter, Tryphosa lies down.

NOTE: if the main verb is Imperfect, Aorist, or Pluperfect, the translation of the Perfect Participle will be the same as the Aorist Participle: γεγραφυια την ἐπιστολην, ἡ Τρυφωσα καθηυσεν. = After she had written the letter, Tryphosa lay down.

Pluperfect Indicative Active: "had ---ed"

ἐγεγραφειμεν, ἐτετηρηκειτε, λελυκεισαν

Perfect Indicative Middle/Passive: "have been ---ed"

λελυμαι, πεποιησαι, γεγραπται

Perfect Participle Middle/Passive: "having been ---ed" (but try to express as full clause)

γεγραμμενα ὑπο του Παυλου, ταυτα τα βιβλια ἡμας ἐτι διδασκει.

Perfect Infinitive Middle/Passive: "to have been ---ed"

ἠθελησα σεσωσθαι.

Pluperfect Indicative Middle/Passive: "had been ---ed"

ἐσωσμεθα, ἐλελυσθε, δεδιωγμεναι ἦσαν

Examples of Perfect-System Verbs from the NT

1. κάλαμον συντετριμμένον οὐ κατεάξει, καὶ λίνον τυφόμενον οὐ σβέσει. (Matt 12:20)

κάλαμος, -ου, ὁ = reed

συντρίβω, συντρίψω, συνέτριψα, συντέτριφα, συντέτριμμαι, συνετριφθην = bend, stress

κατεάγω, κατεάξω, κατήαξα = break

λίνος, -ου, ὁ = wick

τύφομαι, τύψομαι, ἐτυψάμην = give off smoke, smolder

σβέννυμι, σβέσω, ἔσβεσα = quench, put out

2. ὦ γενεὰ ἄπιστος καὶ διεστραμμενη, ἕως πότε μεθ᾽ ὑμῶν ἔσομαι; (Matt 17:17)

γενεά, -ᾶς, ἡ = generation

ἄπιστος, -ον = faithless

διατρέπω, διατρέψω, διέτρεψα, διέστραφα, διέστραμμαι, διετράφην = pervert, turn inside out

ἕως πότε = how long? Until when?

3. καθὼς γέγραπται ἐν τῳ Ἠσαιᾳ τῳ προφητῃ. ἰδοὺ ἀποστέλλωω τὸν ἄγγελον μου... (Mark 1:2)

καθώς = just as

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα, γέγραφα, γέγραμμαι, ἐγράφην = write

προφητης, -ου, ὁ = prophet

ἰδού = behold

ἀποστέλλω, ἀποστελέω, ἀπεστειλα, ἀπεσταλκα, ἀπέσταλμαι, ἀπεταλθην = send

4. καὶ ἀπελθοῦσα εἰς τὸν οἶκον αὐτῆς, εὗρεν τὸ παιδίον βεβλημένον ἐπὶ τὴν κλίνην καὶ τὸ δαιμόνιον ἐξεληλυθός. (Mark 7:30)

παιδίον, -ου, τό = child

βάλλω, βαλέω, ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην = strike (with disease)

κλίνη, -ης, ἡ = couch

δαιμόνιον, -ου, τό = evil spirit

ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον, ἐλήλυθα = go, come

5. καὶ ἦσαν καθήμενοι Φαρισαῖοι νομοδιδάσκαλοι οἱ ἦσαν ἐληλυθότες ἐκ πάσης κώμης της Γαλιλαίας καὶ Ιουδαίας καὶ Ἰερουσαλήμ. (Luke 5:17)

καθήμενος, -η, -ον = sitting, established

ἔρχομαι, ἐλεύσομαι, ἦλθον, ἐλήλυθα = go, come

νομοδιδάσκαλος, -ου, ὁ = teacher of the law

κώμη, -ης, ἡ = village

6. συκῆν εἶχεν τις πεφυτευμένην ἐν τῳ ἀμπελῶνι αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἦλθεν ζητῶν καρπὸν ἐν αὐτῳ καὶ οὐκ εὗρεν (Luke 13:6)

συκῆ, συκῆς, ἡ = fig tree

φυτεύω, φυτεύσω, ἐφύτευσα, πεφύτευκα, πεφύτευμαι, ἐφυτεύθην = sow, plant

ἀμπελῶν, ἀμπελῶνος, ὁ = vineyard, orchard

καρπός, -οῦ, ὁ = fruit

Vocabulary for Chapter 16

ἀκοη, ἡ = fame, report

ἀσθενεια, ἡ = illness, weakness, disease

διδαχη, ἡ = teaching, instruction

ἑορτη, ἡ = feast, festival

ἐπιστολη, ἡ = letter

θυσια, ἡ = sacrifice

κωμη, ἡ = village, hamlet

μαχαιρα, ἡ = knife, sword

νεφελη, ἡ = cloud, mist

παρουσια, ἡ = presence, coming

περιτομη, ἡ = circumcision, advocates of circumcision

πορνεια, ἡ = sexual immorality

προσευχη, ἡ = prayer

ὑπομονη, ἡ = patience, persistence, abiding

φυλη, ἡ = tribe, nation

χηρα, ἡ = widow

χωρα, ἡ = countryside, esp. surrouding a city

Numbers

τρεις, τρια = three (for declension see previous chapter)

τεσσαρες, τεσσαρα = four

πεντε = five

ἑξ = six

ἑπτα = seven

ὀκτω = eight

ἐννεα = nine

δεκα = ten

ἑνδεκα = eleven

δωδεκα = twelve

ἑκατον = 100

χιλιας, χιλιαδος, ὁ/ἡ = 1000

Ordinal (Ranking) Numbers

πρωτος = first

δευτερος = second

τριτος = third

δεκατος = tenth

οὐαι = woe to + Dat.!

A "Perfect" Story

Οὑτος ὁ λογος ἐν τῳ τετελημενῳ χρονῳ γεγραπται. ὁ Ἰωαννης ἐκ της πολεως ἐξεπεπορευτο και προς

τον ποταμον Ἰορδανην προσηληλυθει. Εὐθυς μεν ἐκει κεκηρυχε, βεβαπτικε δε πολλους ἀνδ ρας τους

μετανενοηκοτας. Και πολλαι γυναικες, ζητουσαι ὑπο του Ἰωαννου βαπτιζεσθαι, εἰς την χωραν παρα τῃ

Ἰορδανῃ εἰσεληλυθασιν.

Family Story: Philip Remembers God's Blessings

ἐσομενος, -η, -ον = about to be, future (Future Participle of εἰμι = I am)

προσευχομενος τῳ θεῳ, ὁ Φιλιππος εἰπεν, «ὁ μεν θεος ἐμε ἐν τῃ κοιλιᾳ (womb) της μητρος

μου πεποιηκεν. ὁ δε θεος ἐμε και τους ὑπο μου πεφιλημενους πεφιληκεν. ὁ θεος, θεραπευκως

ἀπο της ἀσθενειας ἐμε ὀντα τεκνον, τοτε ἐμε ὀντα νεανιαν ἀπο του λεοντος (lion) ἐν τῃ ἐρημῳ

σεσωκεν. νυν, ὠ σωτερ, γυναικα την ἐσομενην μητερα των τεκνων μου ἐμοι ἀγαγε!».

Scripture: The Priestly Prayer or John 17:22-26

κάγω = και ἐγω = and I, δεδωκα = I have given, τετελειωμαι = I have been made complete

22 κἀγὼ τὴν δόξαν, ἣν δέδωκάς μοι, δέδωκα αὐτοῖς, ἵνα ὦσιν ἕν, καθὼς ἡμεῖς ἕν 23 ἐγὼ ἐν

αὐτοῖς, καὶ σὺ ἐν ἐμοί, ἵνα ὦσιν τετελειωμένοι εἰς ἕν, ἵνα γινώσκῃ ὁ κόσμος, ὅτι σύ με

ἀπέστειλας, καὶ ἠγάπησας αὐτούς, καθὼς ἐμὲ ἠγάπησας 24 πάτερ, ὃ δέδωκάς μοι θέλω, ἵνα

ὅπου εἰμὶ ἐγὼ, κἀκεῖνοι ὦσιν μετ᾽ ἐμοῦ, ἵνα θεωρῶσιν τὴν δόξαν τὴν ἐμὴν, ἣν δέδωκάς μοι, ὅτι

ἠγάπησάς με πρὸ καταβολῆς κόσμου 25 πάτερ δίκαιε, καὶ ὁ κόσμος σε οὐκ ἔγνω, ἐγὼ δέ σε

ἔγνων, καὶ οὗτοι ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι σύ με ἀπέστειλας 26 καὶ ἐγνώρισα αὐτοῖς τὸ ὄνομά σου, καὶ

γνωρίσω, ἵνα ἡ ἀγάπη, ἣν ἠγάπησάς με, ἐν αὐτοῖς ᾖ, κἀγὼ ἐν αὐτοῖς.

Assignment 46

Name:_____

The Desert Mothers Syncletica (Συγκλητικη) and Sara (Σαρρἀ) talk about the spiritual life. Translate their dialogue into Greek.

Syncletica: O Sara, what do you do when you are tempted by the devil?

Sara: I do not pray to God not to be tempted, but I endure (φερω) when I am tempted.

Syncletica: How did you bring so many women into this wilderness?

Sara: I did not bring them. I came here when I was being followed by many women. O Syncletica, what

do you say about fasting (νηστεια, ἡ)?

Syncletica: Do not do any fasting for five or more days, although (καιπερ) you want to complete more

days. You will be prevented from dying by your mind/good sense.

Grad Assignment 46

Name:_____

Graduate Students: please translate this mini-dialogue between John Chrysostom and Emperor Theodosios I about power.

Χρυσοστομος---- εἶ μεν μεγας βασιλευς. φιλη δε ὑπο του λαου;

Θεοδωσιος---- ἐμε τα τελη ἀπ' αὐτων λαβειν δει, βουλομενον τηρειν την ἐμην βασιλειαν.

Χρυσοστομος---- ὑπερ τίνος ἡ βασιλεια γινεται μεγαλη;

Θεοδωσιος---- ἐξεστι δε ἐμοι, ὄντι βασιλει, ποιησασθαι ἀρτον τοις πτωχοις.

Χρυσοστομος---- ὑπο τίνος ὁ ἀρτος ποιειται;

Θεοδωσιος---- οὐ ποιειται ὑπο δουλων, ὑπο παιδων, ὑπο ὑπηρετων;

Χρυσοστομος---- ἠλθεν ὁ ἀρτος ἀπο του θεου, εἰ ἀκολουθεις τῷ ἀρτῳ παλιν προς την ἀρχην. προ του

ἀρτου, ἡ γη ἐπιφαινεται τῷ ἡλιῳ, φωτι του θεου.

ἐπι-φαινω = shine on
ἡλιος, -ου, ὁ = sun
πτωχος, -η, -ον = poor
τελος, τελους, το = end, goal; in plural, taxes

Assignment 47

Name:_____

 All Students: Please translate these sentences from Greek into English, or vice-versa. There will be forms of the Perfect Tense, but only in the Indicative for now.

1. παντες οἱ δουλοι ὑπο των πιστων κυριων δια τον Παυλον λελυνται.

2. προσκεκυνηκαμεν ἐν τῃ ἐκκλησιᾳ τῃ οἰκοδομηθεισῃ ὑπο των ἀνθρωπων.

3. καιπερ ἐχοντες ὑπομονην, πεπειρασμεθα τῳ διαβολῳ[4] πολλα ἐτη.

4. σεσωσμαι ἀπο της πορνειας δια της ἀγαπης του θεου.

5. ὁ Ἡρῳδης του Πετρου του ἀποστολου κεκρατηκεν.

6.The wild beasts from the hills have not loved our swords. (gender of "beasts"?)

7.We have done many things for the sake of the gospel.

8.You have not believed in Jesus before this day, have you?

---

[4] With Part 5, Genitive of Agent can become Dative of Agent.

Grad Assignment 47

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate these sentences from Greek into English, or vice-versa.

9. τα ἐθνη τον λογον του θεου μετα της χαρας οὐ δεδεκται. [δεχομαι]

10. αἱ χηραι της ἐκκλησιας ἀρτον ἡμιν πασι πεποιηκασιν.

11. την μεν διδαχην του θεου τοις παισι δεδιδαχαμεν, την δε περιτομην οὐ.

12. ἡ ἀσθενης γυνη τη πιστει και τη προσευχη τεθεραπευται.

13. It has been written that the second coming happens after 1000 years.

14. "Woe to the thousand tribes living in all the lands." said John the Baptist.

15. The demons have been arrested and thrown out by the power of Christ.

16. Who has made great roads for the sake of prayer?

Assignment 48

Name:_____

 All Students: Please translate these sentences between Greek and English.

1. ἀκηκοατε τας φωνας των θηριων κραζοντων ἐξω της κωμης;

2. ὁ οὐν Ἰωαννης μεμαρτυρηκεν τῃ ἀληθειᾳ ἐν τῃ χωρᾳ.

3. οὐδεις ἑωρακε τον πατερα, μη γεγνωρισμενον. [Conditional Participle]

4. αἱ ἀκοαι περι της Μαριας ὑπο των δωδεκα ἀποστολων οὐ πεπιστευνται.

5. μη πρασσετε πορνειαν μετα των της ἐκκλησιας χηρων.

6. προ της πρωτης ἡμερας της ἑορτης πολλας θυσιας ἐπεποιηκειμεν.

7.John has written to the seven churches which were built in the countryside. (which = use Attributive Participle, either Aorist or Perfect, Perfect reduplication is ᾠ-, not οἱοι-)

8.The people of the circumcision have gone away, and Philip has come here.

Grad Assignment 48

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please translate these sentences as well.

9. καιπερ ὑπομονην ἐχων, ὁ Φιλιππος τη ἀσθενειᾳ λελυπηται.

10. ἐννεα φυλαι ἐν ταυτῃ τῃ χωρᾳ περιπεπατηκασιν.

11. τουτο ἐστιν το ῥημα ὃ ἀκηκοαμεν, ὃ πεπιστευκαμεν, ὃ δεδιδαχαμεν.

12. νυν βλεπω παντα τα ὑποτεταγμενα τῳ κυριῳ. [ὑποτασσω]

13. For five days and four nights we have seen the large cloud of death.

14. In the second coming, there will no longer be disease or sexual immorality.

15. After all the tribes have cried "Hosanna", they offer sacrifices during the festival.

16. "Woe to the hundred kingdoms of this world," said John the Baptist.

Chapter 17: Subjunctive Mood

Review: Verb Analysis

How do I recognize a Greek verb form?

Parse the verb, to figure out its Person, Number, Tense, Mood, and Voice, and a lot of the information is at the end of the Verb.

Voice: Is the verb Active?

Mood: Is the verb Indicative? / Is it a fact?

Tense: Is the verb Past or not?

Number: Singular or Plural

Person: Is the Subject the speaker(s), the addressee(s), or the topic?

The problem is that we cannot work algorithmically, but we must work heuristically (εὑρισκω), based on lucky finds.

Example: ἐλυσα -> ἐ|λυ|σ|α

The word begins with ἐ, a PIA, a Past Indicative Augment, so the verb must Indicative and either Imperfect, Aorist, or Pluperfect. We can also recognize the verb λυω = I release, rather than looking up verbs that begin with ἐ like ἐλεεω. Working from the other end, we see an ending with an alpha (α), which points us toward Aorist or Perfect. Since the PIA ruled out the Perfect, considered a Present tense since it is from the point of view of the Present, we are left with Aorist. -α by itself is too short to be Middle, so it must be Active Voice. Under the Aorist Active Indicative endings, -α is the 1st Person Singular, "I". What is the sigma, -σ-, doing? It is another marker for the Aorist, along with the ending and the PIA. So, this verb is the 1st Singular Aorist Indicative Active of λυω = I release. The Aorist in Greek is the shortest Past form in English, so "I released" is the final translation.

Example: ᾠκοδομειτο -> ᾠ|κοδομ|ει|το

The lines do not work well here, but they give us segments to work on. The word ends in -το, 3rd singular of the Secondary Middle/Passive Endings. Is there a PIA at the other end of the word? Yes, but it is disguised by blending with a vowel. ᾠ = ἐ- + οἰ-. The verb has a PIA, so it is Indicative. Its Vocab entry begins with οἰκοδομ-. There are not many verbs with that beginning, and we should find οἰκοδομεω = I build. The verb is ε-contract, so ει = ε + ε. The first epsilon is part of the stem, and the second one is a theme vowel. The theme vowel rules out the Pluperfect, which does not use a theme vowel, and the Aorist, which uses alpha, α, as a theme vowel, and we are left with the Imperfect. So far: 3rd singular, Imperfect Indicative Middle/Passive of οἰκοδομεω = I build. For Middle as opposed to Passive, we will need to look at the rest of the sentence.

ὁ βασιλευς το ἱερον ᾠκοδομειτο. Direct Object το ἱερον, Subject ὁ βασιλευς -> likely to be Middle, "The king was having the temple built."

το ἱερον ὑπο του βασιλεως ᾠκοδομειτο. Genitive of Agent ὑπο του βασιλεως, Subject το ἱερον -> likely to be Passive, "The temple was being built by the king."

Heuristic Questions to ask:

Is the word a verb? Yes: ask one of the questions below.

Does it have a PIA? Yes: Imperfect, Aorist, or Pluperfect Indicative?

Does it show epsilon-Reduplication to the left of the Stem (πεπ-, τεθ-, etc.)? Yes: Perfect or Pluperfect?

Does it have -μεν- just before an ending? Yes: Participle, Middle or Passive?

Does the word end in -σθαι or -ναι? Yes: Infinitive, Active, Middle, or Passive?

Does it have a 'long vowel' (η, ω) in the ending and no PIA? Yes: could be Subjunctive (see below)

Subjunctive

In Greek the Subjunctive Mood is used for several non-factual ideas, including goals or polite commands. Since it has multiple translations, let's learn how to form it first:

Present Subjunctive: take Principal Part 1, drop –ω or -ομαι and add either Active or Middle/Passive Endings.

Subjunctive Personal Endings (complete)				
	Active singular	Active plural	Middle/ Passive singular	Middle/ Passive plural
1	-ω	-ωμεν	-ωμαι	-ωμεθα
2	-ῃς	-ητε	-ῃ	-ησθε
3	-ῃ	-ωσι(ν)	-ηται	-ωνται

Aorist: For all these voices, drop the Past Indicative Augment (ἐ-) because the forms are no longer Indicative.

a) Active: take Principal Part 3, drop PIA, drop –**α**, add Active Endings from the table above

b) Middle/Middle-Only: take Principal Part 3, drop PIA, drop **-α/-αμην/-ομην**,add Middle/Passive Endings from the table above

c) Passive/Passive-Only: take Principal Part 6, drop PIA, drop –**ην**, add **Active** Endings (Principal Part 6 is Passive already!)

If this seems too complicated, here is the shortened version of the above from Duff's textbook, which I used to use:

1.Remove any Past Indicative Augment
2.Replace the Indicative Endings with Subjunctive Endings

What about εἰμι? Just as its Participle forms are the endings 'gone rogue,' use the Subjunctive Active Endings with a smooth breathing for the Subjunctive of εἰμι. Μη ὦμεν πονηροι = "Let us not be evil."

What about epsilon-contract verbs with stems ending in ε? The epsilon will disappear before the 'long' vowels η and ω in the Present Subjunctive. Examples: Indicative ἀρνεομαι -> ἀρνουμαι but Subjunctive

243

ἀρνεωμαι-> ἀρνωμαι. Subjunctive, καλεωμεν -> καλωμεν. Aorist Subjunctives usually have -ησ- in the Active and Middle, such as τηρηση or ἀρνησησθε, and -ηθ- in the Aorist Passive, such as τηρηθη.

Use/Translation: as with Infinitives and Imperatives, in the Subjunctive Mood, Tense Shows Aspect only, not Time. The Subjunctive has six main uses, and we will learn another one in the last chapter.

The Six Main Uses of the Subjunctive

1) Purpose Clauses with **ἵνα, ὡς,** or **ὅπως** (all mean "so that") = "may/might"
2) Jussive/Hortatory Subjunctive = Main Verb, "let/may"
3) Deliberative Subjunctive = "Should...?" (questions ONLY)
4) Prohibitive Subjunctive with **μη** = "Do Not" (2nd Person, Aorist ONLY)
5) Emphatic Negative Future with **οὐ μη / μη οὐ** = "…will DEFINITELY NOT…"
6) with **ἀν** = "ever", General Relative Clauses or the if-clauses of General Conditions; note: **ἀν** can be combined with other words: **εἰ + ἀν = ἐαν, ὁτε + ἀν = ὁταν,** etc.

Explanations and Examples

1) Purpose Clauses always begin with ἵνα, ὡς, or ὅπως and use a Subjunctive Verb. Use "may" to translate the Subjunctive Verb if the Main Verb is in a Primary Tense (Present, Future, or Perfect). Use "might" to translate the Subjunctive Verb if the Main Verb is in a Secondary Tense, a tense that can have a Past Indicative Augment (Imperfect, Aorist, or Pluperfect). Remember to capture the Aspect in translation, Present = Progressive/ongoing or Aorist = Simple/once.

Example A: τον ἀρτον ἐποιησαμεν, ἵνα αὐτον φαγωμεν. = Secondary Main Verb, Simple Aspect in Subjunctive Verb →"We made the bread so that we might eat it."

Example B: τον ἀρτον ποιησομεν, ἵνα αὐτον ἐσθιωμεν. = Primary Main Verb, Progressive Aspect in Subjunctive Verb →"We will make the bread so that we may be eating it."

2) Jussive or Hortatory Subjunctives are the Main Verb in a sentence. Usually they are used with the 1st person plural and translated with the helping verb "let", so "let us ---." Dad-jokers could also call it the Salad Subjunctive because it always has "let us" / "lettuce"! If the verb is 2nd person, translate it with "may" for all Aspects. Remember to capture the Aspect in translation, Present = Progressive/ongoing or Aorist = Simple/once. The negative is μη.

ἐκεινον τον ἀρτον φαγωμεν = "Let us eat that bread." τουτον τον ἀρτον μη ἐσθιωμεν, ἡ οὐδεις ἀρτος μενεῖ. "Let us not keep eating this bread, or no bread will remain."

3) Deliberative Subjunctives are the Main Verb in a question and ask about future action or policy. "Should" is a good way to capture the non-factual nature of this construction, and the verb will often be First Person.

ἀρτον ταις ἀδελφαις ποιωμεν; = "Should we be making bread for the sisters?"

τουτον τον ἀρτον φαγω ἡ οὐ; = "Should I eat this bread, or not?"

4) Prohibitive Subjunctives are technically more polite than Imperatives. They are always negative, always appear after μη ("not" for non-facts), always 2nd Person, and always Aorist Subjunctive.

ὠ μαθηται, τουτον τον ἀρτον μη φαγητε. = "Disciples, please do not eat this bread." ὠ Πετρε, μη τον ἀρτον φαγης. = "Peter, do not eat the bread." Could these examples be Jussive? Sure, but you would translate them with "may."

5) Emphatic Negative Future Subjunctives use both οὐ and μη, two words for "not," to get at the twin ideas of what you do not want to happen and what will not happen, if you can at all prevent it.

ὠ Πετρε, τον ἀρτον οὐ μη φαγης. = "Peter, you will definitely not eat the bread." That is, "Peter, you will definitely not eat the bread unless you pry it out of my cold, dead hand." Do you see how the single word οὐ completely changed the meaning of the sentence from the second example in #4?
The prophets sometimes use this construction for rebuke or consolation: οὐ μη ἐπελθη ἐπ᾽ αὐτους οὐκετι ἐξελαυνων = "An oppressor will definitely no longer come against them [the inhabitants of Jerusalem]" (Zechariah 9:8).

6) with ἀν, General Relative Clauses, General Adverbial Clauses, or General Conditions (Chapter 20). Use General Relative Clauses introduced by ὁς ἀν, ἡ ἀν, or ὃ ἀν when you do not have a specific person or thing in mind or when you are creating a restrictive or defining clause. General Adverbial Clauses are introduced by words like ὁταν (= ὁτε + ἀν) = "whenever"

Example in English: **Whoever follows me** will not kill widows and orphans. The "ever" part in English is captured by ἀν in Greek. Notice that the Verb "follows" looks Present in time, but has a Simple Aspect, so it would be an Aorist Subjunctive in Greek. So, that English Example would be translated into Greek: ὁς ἀν ἐμοι ἀκολουθηση, χηρας και ὀρφανους οὐκ ἀποκτενει. ὁς ἀν τουτον τον ἀρτον ἐσθιη, ἐκεινος ἀνθρωπος ζωην αἰωνιον ἐξει. = "Whoever is eating this bread, that person will have eternal life."

What would a General Adverbial Clause look like? See the **boldfaced** parts in the following example: ὠ μαθηται, **ὁταν τω θεω προσευχησθε**, ἐμε φρονησατε. = "Students, **whenever you are praying to God**, think about me."

Examples from the New Testament

1) Purpose: ἦραν οὖν λίθους ἵνα βάλωσιν ἐπ᾽ αὐτόν. (John 8:59)

2) Jussive/Hortatory Subjunctive: διέλθωμεν εἰς τὸ περάν. (Mark 4:35)

3) Deliberative Subjunctive: τί οὖν ποιήσωμεν; (Luke 3:10)

4) Prohibitive Subjunctive with μή: μὴ εἰσηνέγκης ἡμᾶς εἰς πειρασμόν.(Luke 11:4)

5) Emphatic Negative Future with οὐ μή : οὐ μὴ παρέλθη ἡ γενέα αὕτη (Mark 13:30)

6) with ἀν, General Relative Clause: ὃς ἂν ποιήσῃ τὸ θέλημα τοῦ θεοῦ, οὗτος ἀδελφός μου καὶ ἀδελφὴ καὶ μήτηρ ἐστίν. (Mark 3:35)

Vocabulary for Chapter 17

ἀν = would, could, ever (depends on use)

ἀχρι + Gen. = until

ἱνα + Subjunctive = so that

ὁπως + Subjunctive = so that

ὁταν + Subjunctive = whenever

ἐαν + Subjunctive = if OR same as ἀν

ἀγρος, ὁ = field

ἀνεμος, ὁ = wind

διακονος, ὁ OR διακονη, ἡ = manager, servant, deacon[5]

ἐπιθυμια, ἡ = desire, appetite, lust

ἐχθρος, ὁ = enemy

ἡλιος, ὁ = sun

οἰνος, ὁ = wine

ἀναιρεω = I take away, kill

κατηγορεω = I accuse

ὁμολογεω = I promise, confess

γενεα, ἡ = generation, family

γλωσσα, ἡ = tongue, language

γραφη, ἡ = writing, Scripture

διαθηκη, ἡ = covenant, legal will

διακονια, ἡ = service, ministry, area of responsibility

ἐπαγγελια, ἡ = promise

θυρα, ἡ = door

Ἰουδαια, ἡ = Judea (Roman province)

μαρτυρια, ἡ = testimony, witness

ὀργη, ἡ = anger, wrath

---

[5] The King James Bible translated this word as "deacon" when used for a man, but as "servant" when used for a woman.

σοφια, ἡ = wisdom

σωτηρια, ἡ = salvation, rescue

τιμη, ἡ = honor, value, price

φυλακη, ἡ = prison, guard

χρεια, ἡ = need, requirement

πτωχος, -η, -ον = poor, wretched

Family Story: What to do about Salome?
James and Tryphosa try to figure out Salome's future. Verb hints: γενησομαι → γινομαι, εἰπον → λεγω,

παθουσα → πασχω

ἡ Τρυφωσα τῳ Ἰακωβῳ εἰπεν, «ἡ Σαλωμα γενησεται γυνη οὐ πολλων ἡμερων. Τί περι αὐτης

ποιησωμεν;» ὁ Ἰακωβος τη Τρυφωση ἀπεκριθη, «ἀνδρα αὐτη εὑρωμεν; ἡ γενησεται διακονη, χωρις

ἀνδρος, καθως ἡ ἀδελφη σου Μαρθα;». ἡ Τρυφωσα ἀπεκριθη, «Μη εἰπης ἐμοι περι των διακονων, των

μισουμενων ὑπο πολλων. ἀλλα ἐξεστι τη Σαλωμη γενεσθαι προφητη, καθως τη Ἄννα τη ἐν τῳ ἱερῳ.»

Scripture: Sins and the Sword
Isaiah 1:18-20

καὶ δεῦτε καὶ διελεγχθῶμεν, λέγει κύριος, καὶ ἐὰν ὦσιν αἱ ἁμαρτίαι ὑμῶν ὡς φοινικοῦν, ὡς χιόνα

λευκανῶ, ἐὰν δὲ ὦσιν ὡς κόκκινον, ὡς ἔριον λευκανῶ. καὶ ἐὰν θέλητε καὶ εἰσακούσητέ μου, τὰ ἀγαθὰ

τῆς γῆς φάγεσθε. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ θέλητε μηδὲ εἰσακούσητέ μου, μάχαιρα ὑμᾶς κατέδεται, τὸ γὰρ στόμα

κυρίου ἐλάλησεν ταῦτα.

Assignment 49

Name:_____

All Students: Begin by filling in the correct form of the Subjunctive to translate the underlined words; note the Aspect (Ongoing vs. Once, that is, Progressive vs. Simple)

1. We shall write so that <u>we may be witnessing</u> to the truth. = γραψομεν ἱνα τῃ ἀληθειᾳ

    _____.

2. Whoever <u>is going</u> to Jerusalem finds more people there. = ὁς ἀν εἰς τα Ἱεροσολυμα

    _____, πλειονας ἀνθρωπους ἐκει εὑρισκει.

3. Whomever God <u>loves</u> knows about the resurrection. = ὁν ἀν ὁ θεος _____,

    περι της ἀναστασεως γινωσκει.

4. So that <u>you (pl) might find</u> the tomb, we wrote signs. = ὁπως το μνημειον

    _____, σημεια ἐγραψαμεν.

Translate from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ταυτας τας ἐπιστολας γεγραφαμεν, ὁπως τῳ Παυλῳ περι σου λαλησωμεν.

2. ἐκβαλλω εἰς την θαλασσαν τα δαιμονια, ἁ ἀν ἐν τοις τεκνοις περιπατῃ.

3. λελυκας τα πλοια, ἱνα εἰς ταυτην την πολιν παρα τῃ θαλασσῃ πορευθῃς.

4. We spoke well to the priests, so that they might free all the temple's slaves.

5. It is necessary for a woman, whoever wants to be saved, to follow Christ.

Grad Assignment 49

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Translate from Greek into English, or from English into Greek.

1. ὃς ἂν εἰσελθῃ εἰς οἰκιαν, δωδεκα ἡμερας ἐκει μενει.

2. ἣ ἂν το ποτηριον του κυριου πινῃ, τῃ χαριτι αὐτου σωθησεται. .

3. ὁπως τῳ κυριῳ ὑποταχθωμεν, ὁ νομος ἐστι διδασκαλος ἡμων.

4. Christ suffered for three days so that he might bring us into God's glory.

5. The law denied sexual immorality, but has not prevented it.

6. In the desert, no one knows your name, whatever name God calls you.

7. We went around the sea of Galilee by boat so that we might seek the Christ.

Assignment 50

Name:_____

All Students: Please review the Vocabulary for this chapter, then translate these sentences.

1. τας ἁμαρτιας της ἐπιθυμιας ἐνωπιον του κυριου ὁμολογησωμεν.

2. ἀναιρωμεν τους ἐχθρους οἳ ἀν τον οἰνον ἀπο της συναγωγης λαβωσιν;

3. μη ἀρνησησθε ὁτι πολλοι πτωχοι ἐν τη ὑμων πολει περιπατουσιν.

4. μη κατηγορησῃς τους διακονους δια την ὀργην προς τον Ἡρῳδην.

5. O kings, do not dismiss all the sinners from your prisons.

6. Let us find the field of blood, which is called "Akeldama." [transliterate the name]

7. Should we read the scripture to you (sing.)?

8. If ever God keeps His promises, the enemies will be cast out of Judea.

9. You (pl.) shall definitely not bear false witness [ψευδομαρτυρεω]

Grad Assignment 50

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please do these sentences as well.

1. ὤ γενεαι ἀνθρωπων, μη εἴπητε ὁτι ὁ θεος οὐκ ἐστιν.

2. εὐλογωμεν τον σωτηρα γλωσσαις ἑκατον;

3. ἐαν ὁ θεος ἡμας φιλη, την σωτηριαν δια του υἱου ἡμιν φερει.

4. Within ten days, I will write my covenant with Paul for the sake of the gospel.

5. Outside Judaea, no one keeps the feast of the Passover with true wisdom.

6. The wind brings honor to those, whoever travel in boats.

7. Do not pass by the poor, whichever people have need of bread.

Chapter 18: Other Verb Uses

Athematic Verbs

Athematic is a fancy way of saying "no theme vowels" in tenses other than the Perfect or Pluperfect. The three verbs καθημαι, κειμαι, δυναμαι have no theme vowels in the Present or Imperfect, and all their stems end in vowels. They use Primary Middle endings for the Present, and Secondary Middle endings for the Imperfect.

	Primary Middle Personal Endings		Athematic Verb Example	
Person	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	-μαι	-μεθα	δυναμαι	δυναμεθα
2nd	-σαι	-σθε	δυνασαι	δυνασθε
3rd	-ται	-νται	δυναται	δυνανται

	Secondary Middle Personal Endings		Athematic Verb Example	
Person	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	-μην	-μεθα	ἐκαθημην	ἐκαθημεθα
2nd	-σο	-σθε	ἐκαθησο	ἐκαθησθε
3rd	-το	-ντο	ἐκαθητο	ἐκαθηντο

- The verbs καθημαι = I sit and κειμαι = I lie down are Middle-Only verbs with no Aorists

- Notice the Future Forms: καθησονται, κεισομεθα, δυνησεσθε (δυνα→δυνη)

- The verb δυναμαι = I can, am able is Passive-Only, but its Future, δυνησομαι is Middle-Only, and its Aorist, ἐδυνηθην = I could, is rare

- Non-Indicative forms also lack theme vowels: τοις καθημενοις = Participle "for those who are sitting down", κεισθαι = Infinitive "to be lying down", μη καθησθε = Imperative, "[you all] Don't sit down!, δυνωμεθα (contracted from δυναωμεθα) = Subjunctive "Let us be able"

- Examples: δυναται, κειμεθα, ἐκειτο, ἐκαθηντο, δυνασθαι, κειμεναι

Forms of οἶδα

The verb οἶδα uses Perfect Endings, but has a Present Meaning. It seems to have meant "I have come to know", hence "I know." Its Pluperfect forms, based off the stem ἠδ-, have an Aorist Meaning.

Indicative Active Forms of οἶδα								
	Perf. Sing.		Perf. Pl.		Pluperf.S.		Pluperf. Pl.	
1	οἶδα	I know	οἴδαμεν	we know	ἠδειν	I knew	ἠδειμεν	we knew
2	οἶδας	you (s.) know	οἴδατε	you (pl.) know	ἠδεις	you (s.) knew	ἠδειτε	you (pl.) knew
3	οἶδε(ν)	he/she /it knows /they (s.) know	οἴδασι(ν)	they (pl.) know	ἠδει	he/she /it/they (s.) knew	ἠδεισαν	they (pl.) knew

Infinitive: εἰδεναι = to know

Imperative: ἰσθι (s.)/ ἰστε (pl.) = know!

Participle: εἰδως, εἰδυια, εἰδος = knowing

Subjunctive (rare): εἰδω, εἰδης, etc. = let me know, may you know, etc.

Infinitive Verbs Review

Review of Forms and Examples:

- Present: **προσευχεσθαι** τῳ θεῳ θελω.

- Aorist: **ποιησαι** τον ἀρτον βουλομεθα.

- Perfect: **σεσωσθαι** οὐ ἐδυνασθε, μη σχοντες πιστιν.

The Subject of an Infinitive, if different from the Subject of the Main Verb, is in the Accusative Case **ὑμας** ποιησαι τον ἀρτον βουλομεθα. = "We want **you (pl.)** to make the bread." Both Subjects and Direct Objects of Infinitives are in the Accusative case, and this confused even native Greek speakers.

The Complementary Infinitive **completes** the meaning of a verb, like all the example sentences above in this section.

New Uses of Infinitives

Result Clauses with ὠστε: translate as "with the result that [someone does something]" or "so as [for someone] to [do something]." In Classical Greek, Infinitives were used for Natural or Expected Results and Indicatives showed Actual Results, but Koinē loses this distinction. In Galatians, you will see ὠστε with Indicative Verbs for Results and Infinitives used for Results without ὠστε.

Τον ἀρτον ἐποιησαμεν, ὠστε φαγειν αὐτον. = "We made the bread, so as to eat it."

Τον ἀρτον ἐποιησαμεν, ὠστε ὑμας φαγειν αὐτον. = "We made the bread, with the result that you (pl.) ate it." OR "We made the bread, so as for you (pl.) to eat it."

Τον ἀρτον ἐποιησαμεν, ὡστε αὐτον ἐφαγετε. = "We made the bread, with the result that you (pl.) ate it" (same as above, just with Indicative)

Sometimes Result clauses are "launched" by the adverb οὑτως = "thus, in this way." You can sometimes translate this tag-team construction with fewer words: "so…that, in such a way…that". ὁ Παυλος ἐλαλησεν οὑτως, ὡστε πολλους Ἰουδαιους αὐτῳ πιστευσαι. = "Paul spoke in such a way that many Judeans believed him." (see Acts 14:1 or John 3:16)

New Testament Example: ἀρας τον κραβαττον ἐξηλθεν ἐμπροσθεν παντων ὡστε ἐξιστασθαι παντας και δοξαζειν τον θεον. (Mark 2:12) = "Having lifted up his cot, he went out before all, with the result that all were being astonished and were glorifying God."

Infinitive of Purpose, like English!! Εἰς θηραν παρεστησαν τα τεκνα αὐτων, και Ἐφραιμ του ἐξαγαγειν εἰς ἀποκεντησιν τα τεκνα αὐτου. = "They placed their children into the trap, and Ephraim did so in order to lead its children out for piercing" (Hosea 9:13, yikes!).

Articular Infinitives are Infinitives used as action nouns, often translated as Gerunds ("-ing" nouns) in English. In Greek he article comes near the Infinitive and is always Neuter and Singular. The case of the article changes to show the Infinitive's function.

- Nominative: Action is Subject, *Star Trek/Hamlet* use, το γραψαι ὑμιν ἐστιν ἀγαθον. = Writing to you (pl.) is good. Το εἰναι ἠ το μη εἰναι--ἐκεινο ἠ ἐρωτησις. " To be or not to be—that is the question."

- Accusative: with Prepositions μετα = "after", δια = "because", εἰς = "with a view to, in order to" μετα το γραψαι = "after writing", δια το γραψαι, εἰς το γραψαι

- Genitive: with προ = "before" Τί ἐγενετο προ του γραψαι; = "What happened before writing?"

- Dative: with ἐν = "during, while" Hosea 7:1a ἐν τῳ ἰασασθαι με τον Ἰσραηλ = "while I healed Israel." Could this example mean, "while Israel healed me"? Grammatically, this is possible, but theologically, this is very unlikely, because the με refers to God.

Uses of Infinitives
1) Complementary: needed to complete the meaning of the Verb: γραψαι βιβλιον βουλομαι. = I want to write a book.
2) Result with ὡστε: ἐκεινα ἐπαθον, ὡστε τουτο το βιβλιον περι αὐτων ἐγραψα. = I suffered those things, with the result that I wrote this book about them.
3) Purpose: shows for what purpose the action in the Main Clause was performed, always intentional. εἰς την ἐρημον ἠλθον, γραψαι τουτο το βιβλιον. = I went into the desert to write this book.
4) Articular: Infinitive as "-ing" noun (English Gerund), often with a preposition: μετα το γραψαι βιβλιον, ἀναγινωσκει. = After writing a book, she is reading.

3rd Person Imperatives

These Imperatives are used to order a 3rd person or persons to do something. This is especially useful if the people you are commanding are not present in front of you. Translate these Imperatives with the helping verb "let." It is less polite than Jussive Subjunctive.

	Active Singular	Active Plural	Middle/Pass. Sing.	Middle/Pass. Pl.
3rd Person	-τω	-τωσαν	-σθω	-σθωσαν

Stems and theme vowels will vary depending on Tense and Voice, but remove all Past Indicative Augments since we are no longer in the Indicative. ὁ βασιλευς τους προφητας ῥυεσθω. = "Let the king keep rescuing the prophets!" ἡ Σαλωμη το πλοιον λυσατω. = "Let Salome release the boat!" Ὁ ἀδελφος δεξασθω τον μαθητην. = "Let the brother receive the disciple."

Also, the Aorist Passive uses Active Endings, since Principal Part 6 already looks Passive. οἱ δουλοι λυθητωσαν = "Let the enslaved people be set free!" Remember the Lord's Prayer: ἁγιασθητω το ὀνομα σου, ἐλθετω ἡ βασιλεια σου, γενηθητω το θελημα σου (Matt 6:9-10).

Review of Tense and Aspect

- Present = Now, Simple or Progressive Aspect = I make bread OR I am making bread

- Imperfect = Past, Progressive Aspect = I was making bread, I used to make bread

- Future = Future, Simple or Progressive Aspect = I will make bread, I will be making bread

- Aorist = Past, Simple Aspect = I made bread, did I make bread?

- Perfect = Now, Completed Aspect = I have made bread

- Pluperfect = Past, Completed Aspect = I had made bread

Principal Parts

- κωλυω, κωλυσω, ἐκωλυσα, κεκωλυκα, κεκωλυμαι, ἐκωλυθην = prevent, prohibit

You can generate over 500 forms from the six forms above, and half of them are Participles!

Examples: ταις κωλυομεναις, κωλυσεις, μη κωλυσῃς, κεκωλυκεναι, κεκωλυμεθα, κωλυθητω

Vocabulary for Chapter 18

ἀξιος, -α, -ον = worthy

δεξιος, -α, -ον = right-handed

δυνατος, -η, -ον = able, capable, powerful

ἐλευθερος, -α, -ον = free, not enslaved

ἐσχατος, -η, -ον = last, furthest

ἱκανος, -η, -ον = sufficient, enough

ἰσχυρος, -α, -ον = strong

λευκος, -η, -ον = white, bright

λοιπος, -η, -ον = remaining, future

μεσος, -η, -ον = middle

νεος, -α, -ον = new, young

ὀλιγος, -η, -ον = small, little

πλουσιος, -α, -ον = rich

πνευματικος, -η, -ον = spiritual

φιλος, -η, -ον = friendly, loved, beloved

δεξια, ἡ = right hand, as if modifying χειρ, χειρος, ἡ = hand

μαρτυς, μαρτυρος, ὁ = witness

μισθος, μισθου, ὁ = wage

σταυρος, σταυρου, ὁ = cross

αὐξανω = I grow, increase

δυναμαι = I can, am able

καθιζω = I cause to sit down, I sit down

καθημαι = I sit (down)

κειμαι = I lie, recline

οἰδα = I know (Perfect with Present Meaning)

παρειμι = I am present

ὡστε = with the result that + Infinitive or entire clause

ἀδικεω = I do wrong

ἀδικια, ἡ = injustice, wrongness

ἀδικος, -ον = unjust, unrighteous

καθαριζω = I purify, make clean, declare clean

καθαρος, -α, -ον = clean, pure

ἀκαθαρτος, -η, -ον = unclean, impure

ἀπιστος, -η, -ον = unfaithful, unbelieving

Family Story: Cleaning the House
Vocab: καιω, καυσω, ἐκαυσα = set alight, burn, λυχνος, ὁ = lamp, σκυβαλα, τα = garbage

ὁ Ἰακωβος εἰπεν, «Τα Σαββατα ἐρχεται. ὠ ἀγαπητοι, καθαρισωμεν την οἰκιαν.» ἡ Τρυφωσα εἰπεν, « προ

του καθαρισαι την οἰκιαν, δει με ποιησαι τον ἀρτον. ἐν γαρ τῳ τηρησαι τα Σαββατα, ἡμας φαγειν τι

δει.» ὁ Φιλιππος εἰπεν, « μετα το καθαρισαι, ἐξεστι ἐμοι πορευθηναι εἰς την ἀγοραν μετα των φιλων

μου;» ἡ Σαλωμη εἰπεν, «μετα μεν το καθαρισαι, προ δε των Σαββατων, δυνησομαι ἐνεγκειν τον λυχνον

τον ἐν τοις Ἰεροσολυμοις ποιηθεντα και καυσαι;» ὁ Ἰακωβος εἰπεν, «Ναι, ναι, ναι. ὠ τεκνα, παντα τα

σκυβαλα νυν βαλωμεν.»

Scripture: Denial and Belief
[John 13:38-14:3 MGNT] 38 ἀποκρίνεται Ἰησοῦς, "τὴν ψυχήν σου ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ θήσεις. ἀμὴν ἀμὴν

λέγω σοι οὐ μὴ ἀλέκτωρ φωνήσῃ, ἕως οὗ ἀρνήσῃ με τρίς." 1 μὴ ταρασσέσθω ὑμῶν ἡ καρδία

πιστεύετε εἰς τὸν θεόν καὶ εἰς ἐμὲ πιστεύετε 2 ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ τοῦ πατρός μου μοναὶ πολλαί εἰσιν εἰ

δὲ μή εἶπον ἂν ὑμῖν ὅτι πορεύομαι ἑτοιμάσαι τόπον ὑμῖν. 3 καὶ ἐὰν πορευθῶ καὶ ἑτοιμάσω

τόπον ὑμῖν, πάλιν ἔρχομαι καὶ παραλήμψομαι ὑμᾶς πρὸς ἐμαυτόν, ἵνα ὅπου εἰμὶ ἐγὼ καὶ ὑμεῖς

ἦτε.

Assignment 51

Name:_____

All Students: Generate the right forms of δυναμαι, κειμαι, καθημαι, οἰδα to complete the translation of each sentence.

1. We can make bread for everyone. = παντι ἀρτον ποιησαι _____

2. The boats were lying behind the city. = τα πλοια ὀπισω της πολεως _____

3. While sitting in front of the temple, we discussed the law. = _____ προ του ἱερον, τον νομον διελογισαμεθα.

4. They did not know salvation, as we know now. = οὐ την σωτηριαν _____,

   καθως νυν _____.

Translate the following sentences that use infinitives, after labeling the use: Complementary, Result, Purpose, Articular. Example:

_____Articular_____ μετα το φαγειν, τῳ θεῳ εὐλογουμεν. After eating, we give thanks to God.

_____5. τα θηρια ὡδε ἠλθε φαγειν τα προβατα.

_____6. ἡμας ἐλαβετε, ὡστε ἡμας μη ἀπερχεσθαι.

_____7. τίς παντας τας ἐπιστολας ἀναγνωναι δυναται;

_____8. προ του φαγειν, εἰπωμεν τας προσευχας ἡμων.

Grad Assignment 51

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please do these sentences as well.

1. οὐκ ἐδυναμεθα πορευθηναι προς τα Ἱεροσολυμα τοις ποσιν.

2. οἱ Φαρισαιοι ᾐδεισαν ὁτι ἠμεθα πτωχοι και ἀσθενεις.

3. οὐ μη πραξητε πορνειας, ἱνα ὑπο των ἁμαρτιων μη ἀποθανητε.

4. φαγοντα, τα καλα προβατα ἐπι του ἀγρου κειται.

5. Because I saw you taking our wine, you must be an evil soldier of Herod.

6. While the disciples were sitting down, Jesus brought them loaves and fishes.

7. We were so* poor that we prayed to God for (the sake of) bread from the heavens. (*= οὐτως)

Assignment 52

Name:_____

All Students: Please translate these sentences between Greek and English; for all Greek verbs, please indicate the aspect with your translation or a symbol (Progressive: "-ing", (ongoing) or →; Simple: (once) or ●; Perfect: "have" or (completed) or →|)

1. οὗτοι οἱ σταυροι ἕνεκα των πονηρων ποιηθητωσαν.

2. ὃ ἀπ᾽ ἀρχης ἀκηκοατε, ἐν ὑμιν ἀχρι του τελους μενετω.

3. ἐν τη πιστει αὐξανωμεν ἱνα ὑπο του θεου καθαρισθωμεν.

4. ὦ ὑπηρεται, τους ἐσχατους μισθους λαβετε, προ του ἀπερχεσθαι.

5. The disciples were saying to Jesus, "We're not worthy! We're not worthy!"

6. We know that Jesus sits at God's right hand.

7. After dying, Jesus was present with the faithful apostles.

8. It is necessary to suffer wrongdoing but not to do wrong.

Grad Assignment 52

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please do these sentences as well.

1. μονοι οὗτοι οἱ παιδες εἰσιν ἀξιοι του λυθηναι.

2. μετα το τους φιλους τῳ θεῳ προσευξασθαι, ἐρχομεθα προς την ἑορτην.

3. προφηται τινες τῳ λαῳ συν ὀργη ἐλελαληκεισαν.

4. ἠλθε τα αὐξανοντα προβατα συν τῳ κυριῳ προς την οἰκιαν.

5. In traveling, therefore, we see many bright temples in the free cities.

6. As many witnesses saw Jesus on the cross so as to be amazed at his resurrection.

7. In the presence of the unbelieving middle sister, the others still believed.

8. Spiritual people, do not call unclean whatever God declares clean.

Chapter 19: Extra Verbs, Athematic and Contract Verbs
Mi-Verbs

Mi-verbs are all athematic (lacking theme vowels) in at least the Present Tense and highly irregular in much of their conjugation. The important thing is being able to guess what mi-verb it is and then to guess what person, number, and tense it is. When doing Assignment 53, feel free to look up the forms according to the following table:

Table of mi-verbs:

mi-verb (look for letters in parentheses)	meaning	cross-reference to book
εἰμι	I am	Some non-Indicative forms, like Subjunctive and Participles, are "endings gone rogue"
διδωμι (δ)	I give	
τιθημι (θ)	I place, put	
ἱστημι (στ)	I stand, make stand	
ἱημι (') like τιθημι	hurl, send	only in compounds in NT like ἀφ-ιημι "I send away, I forgive"
δεικνυμι (δεικ-) & other –νυμι verbs	I show, point out	
φημι (φ) like ἱστημι	I say	

Other things to know about mi-verbs:
The Present Indicative Active of mi-verbs features long stems in singular, short stems in plural and unusual personal endings. In Jesus' day, omega (ω) and omicron (o) are pronounced exactly the same, but in Classical Greek, ω took twice as long to say as o.

Endings for Present Indicative Active of all mi-verbs

	Sing.	Pl.
1st	-μι	-μεν
2nd	-ς	-τε
3rd	-σι(ν)	-ασι(ν)

Example Stems: **διδω** in singular, **διδο** in plural; **ἱστη** in singular, **ἱστα** in plural

	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	διδωμι	διδομεν	ἱστημι	ἱσταμεν
2nd	διδως	διδοτε	ἱστης	ἱστατε
3rd	διδωσι(ν)	διδοασι(ν)	ἱστησι(ν)	ἱστασι(ν) (αα→α)

Examples: διδως, ἱσταμεν, διδοασιν, ἱστησιν, "I give," "you (pl.) give," "we stand," "she stands"

Example Stems: **τιθη** in singular, **τιθε** in plural; **δεικνῡ** in singular, **δεικνυ** in plural

	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	τιθημι	τιθεμεν	δεικνῡμι	δεικνυμεν
2nd	τιθης	τιθετε	δεικνῡς	δεικνυτε
3rd	τιθησι(ν)	τιθεασι(ν)	δεικνῦσι(ν)	δεικνυασι(ν)

Examples: τιθης, δεικνυτε, δεικνῦσιν, τιθεμεν, "we place," "they (pl.) point out," "they (pl.) place"

Weird things happen with vowel contraction in the Imperfect. The vowels still alternate between long in the singular and short in the plural, but often in unpredictable ways.

Mi-Verbs in the Imperfect

	Sing. ω -> ου	Pl.	Sing. long α = η	Pl.
1st	ἐδιδουν	ἐδιδομεν	ἱστην	ἱσταμεν
2nd	ἐδιδους	ἐδιδοτε	ἱστης	ἱστατε
3rd	ἐδιδου	ἐδιδοσαν	ἱστη	ἱστασαν
	Sing. long ε = η / ει	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	ἐτιθην	ἐτιθεμεν	ἐδεικνῡν	ἐδεικνυμεν
2nd	ἐτιθεις	ἐτιθετε	ἐδεικνῡς	ἐδεικνυτε
3rd	ἐτιθει	ἐτιθεσαν	ἐδεικνῡ	ἐδεικνυσαν

Examples: ἐτιθεσαν, ἱστη, ἐδεικνυσαν, ἐδιδους, "I was giving," "you (s.) were standing," "she was placing," "you (pl.) were standing."

The Present and Imperfect tenses of all moods of mi-verbs often shows **iota reduplication**.
This means that you take the first letter of the stem and put it plus an iota
at the front of the original stem. For example:
δω -> διδω, δο -> διδο
θη -> θιθη -> τιθη (can't have two aspirated syllables in a row)

initial **σ** sometimes becomes a rough breathing, as in **σεξ -> ἑξ** [compare English "six"]
στη -> σιστη -> ἱστη

So, forms without iota-reduplication are NOT Present or Imperfect.

Present Middle Passive Indicative forms are the short-vowel stem plus the Primary Middle/Passive Endings: διδομαι, ἱσταμαι, τιθεμαι, δεικνυμαι.

Participles of μι-verbs

Present Active Participles feature contraction in the Nominative, then short-vowel athematic forms in the rest of the declension. This means that forms of διδωμι will look like Present Active Participles, forms of ἱστημι will look like Aorist Active Participles, and forms of τιθημι will look like Aorist Passive

Participles. For –νυμι verbs, the stem ends in –νυ, with Participle Markers added on without any theme vowels.

Μι-Verb	διδωμι	ἱστημι	τιθημι	δεικνυμι
Reference Declension	Present Active Participle	Aorist Active Participle or πας	Aorist Passive Participle	(none)
Nom. Sing.: Masc., Fem., Neut.	διδους, διδουσα, διδουν	ἱστας, ἱστασα, ἱσταν	τιθεις, τιθεισα, τιθεν	δεικνυς, δεικνυσα, δεικνυν
Acc. Sing. : Masc., Fem., Neut.	διδοντα, διδουσαν, διδουν	ἱσταντα, ἱστασαν, ἱσταν	τιθεντα, τιθεισαν, τιθεν	δεικνυντα, δεικνυσαν, δεικνυν
Gen. Sing. : Masc., Fem., Neut.	διδοντος, διδουσης, διδοντος	ἱσταντος, ἱστασης, ἱσταντος	τιθεντος, τιθεισης, τιθεντος	δεικνυντος, δεικνυσης, δεικνυντος
Dat. Sing. : Masc., Fem., Neut.	διδοντι, διδουσῃ, διδοντι	ἱσταντι, ἱστασῃ, ἱσταντι	τιθεντι, τιθεισῃ, τιθεντι	δεικνυντι, δεικνυσῃ, δεικνυντι
Nom. Pl. : Masc., Fem., Neut.	διδοντες, διδουσαι, διδοντα	ἱσταντες, ἱστασαι, ἱσταντα	τιθεντες, τιθεισαι, τιθεντα	δεικνυντες, δεικνυσαι, δεικνυντα
Acc. Pl. : : Masc., Fem., Neut.	διδοντας, διδουσας, διδοντα	ἱσταντας, ἱστασας, ἱσταντα	τιθεντας, τιθεισας, τιθεντα	δεικνυντας, δεικνυσας, δεικνυντα
Gen. Pl. : Masc., Fem., Neut.	διδοντων, διδουσων, διδοντων	ἱσταντων, ἱστασων, ἱσταντων	τιθεντων, τιθεισων, τιθεντων	δεικνυντων, δεικνυσων, δεικνυντων
Dat. Pl. : Masc., Fem., Neut.	διδουσι(ν), διδουσαις, διδουσι(ν)	ἱστασι(ν), ἱστασαις, ἱστασι(ν)	τιθεισι(ν), τιθεισαις, τιθεισι(ν)	δεικνυσι(ν), δεικνυσαις, δεικνυσι(ν)

If the Dat. Pl. Masc./Neut. looks like the 3rd Pl. Present Indicative, that is not an accident. Historically, they seem to have both evolved from forms ending in –ντσι(ν), but Greek does not allow three consonants in a row, so the consonants were simplified to σι(ν), and the preceding vowels became longer.

Present Midde/Passive Participles use the short stem, plus -μεν-, plus the endings like καλος: διδομενος, ἱσταμενος, τιθεμενος, δεικνυμενος

Infinitives of mi-verbs are easy and athematic: take the short-vowel stem, and add –ναι in the Active and –σθαι in the Middle-Passive.

Present Infinitives of mi-verbs

Verb	διδωμι	ἱστημι	τιθημι	δεικνυμι
Pres. Active Infinitive	διδοναι	ἱσταναι	τιθεναι	δεικνυναι
Pres. Middle/Passive Infinitive	διδοσθαι	ἱστασθαι	τιθεσθαι	δεικνυσθαι

Present Active Imperatives are likewise simple and athematic: take a long-vowel or diphthong stem for the 2nd sing., then use the short-vowel stem for the rest of the conjugation.

Present Active Imperatives of mi-verbs

Verb	διδωμι	ἱστημι	τιθημι	δεικνυμι
2nd Sing. Imperative	διδου	ἱστη	τιθει	δεικνῡ
3rd Sing. Imperative	διδοτω	ἱστατω	τιθετω	δεικνυτω
2nd Pl. Imperative	διδοτε	ἱστατε	τιθετε	δεικνυτε
3rd Pl. Imperative	διδοτωσαν	ἱστατωσαν	τιθετωσαν	δεικνυτωσαν

Here is another example of a –νυμι verb, ῥηγνυμι = "I break," with no iota-reduplication.

	Indicative	Infinitive	Imperative
Present Active	ῥηγνυμι	ῥηγνυναι	ῥηγνῡ (2 s.)
Imperfect Active	ἐρρηγνυν		

Participle	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom. Sing.	ῥηγνυς	ῥηγνυσα	ῥηγνυν
Acc. Sing.	ῥηγνυντα	ῥηγνυσαν	ῥηγνυν, etc.

So, forms without **–νυ-** are NOT Present or Imperfect.

Future of Mi-Verbs: Active and Middle have Regular Forms based on Principal Part 2, usually with the long-vowel stem but no iota-reduplication or -**νυ**-. Passive has regular forms based on Principal Part 6.

δωσομεν, θησομεθα, ἐσταθης, δειξετε.

Mi-verbs in the Aorist

The Aorists of **-νυμι** verbs are regular First Aorists: ἐδειξα, ἐρρηξα**.**

In the Aorist Indicative Active, some verbs feature the long stem without iota reduplication, plus kappa in the singular, and the short stem without iota reduplication in the plural with the following endings:

Mi-Verbs Aorist Personal Endings   **Example: τιθημι**

	Sing. Endings	Pl. Endings	Sing. Example	Pl. Example
1st	-α	-μεν	ἐθηκα	ἐθεμεν
2nd	-ας	-τε	ἐθηκας	ἐθετε
3rd	-ε(ν)	-σαν	ἐθηκε(ν)	ἐθεσαν
	Example: διδωμι		**Example: δεικνυμι (for comparison)**	
1st	ἐδωκα	ἐδομεν	ἐδειξα	ἐδειξαμεν
2nd	ἐδωκας	ἐδοτε	ἐδειξας	ἐδειξατε
3rd	ἐδωκε(ν)	ἐδοσαν	ἐδειξε(ν)	ἐδειξαν

The Aorist Indicative Middle of Mi-Verbs uses only the short-vowel stem without iota-reduplication: ἐθεμην, ἐδομην, etc.

ἱστημι has a First Aorist and a Root Aorist, with a difference in meaning. A Root Aorist means that endings beginning with a consonant are added onto a stem ending with a vowel, without a theme vowel to show tense.

First Aorist   **Root Aorist**
"I stood (something) up"   **"I stood (myself) up"**

	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	ἐστησα	ἐστησαμεν	ἐστην	ἐστημεν
2nd	ἐστησας	ἐστησατε	ἐστης	ἐστητε
3rd	ἐστησε(ν)	ἐστησαν	ἐστη	ἐστησαν

Aorist Infinitives of Mi-Verbs

Active: use a long-vowel stem, minus iota-reduplication, plus –ναι

Middle: use the short-vowel stem, minus iota-reduplication, plus -σθαι

	Aorist Infinitive	Present Infinitive	Aorist Infinitive	Present Infinitive
Active	δουναι	διδοναι	θειναι	τιθεναι
Middle	δοσθαι	διδοσθαι	θεσθαι	τιθεσθαι
Active	στηναι	ἱσταναι	δειξαι (1st Aorist)	δεικνυναι
Middle	στησασθαι (from 1st Aorist ἐστησα)	ἱστασθαι	δειξασθαι (1st Aorist)	δεικνυσθαι

τα πλοια ἐπι της γης θελομεν θειναι.

στηναι ἐν τω ἱερω οὐκ ἐξεστιν.

ἡμας δουναι ἀρτον τη ἀλλη ἐκκλησια δει.

Aorist Imperatives of Mi-Verbs

The 2nd sing. Active Imperatives feature an unusual ending, a final sigma or –ς or, less commonly, –θι. The other irregularities can be explained by dropping the iota-reduplication.

Remember τον ἀρτον ἡμων τον ἐπιουσιον **δος** ἡμιν σημερον (Lord's Prayer). δος is 2nd Sing. Aorist Imperative Active of διδωμι.

	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
Act. 2nd	δος	δοτε	θες	θετε
Act. 3rd	δοτω	δοτωσαν	θετω	θετωσαν
Mid. 2nd	δου	δοσθε	θει	θεσθε
Mid. 3rd	δοσθω	δοσθωσαν	θεσθω	θεσθωσαν
Act. 2nd	στηθι (Root Aorist)	στητε	δειξον (1st Aorist)	δειξατε
Act. 3rd	στητω	στητωσαν	δειξατω	δειξατωσαν
Mid. 2nd	στησαι (from 1st Aorist ἐστησα)	στησθε	δειξαι	δειξασθε
Mid. 3rd	στησασθω	στησασθωσαν	δειξασθω	δειξασθωσαν

Aorist Active and Middle Participles of Mi-Verbs: Remove the iota-reduplication from the Present. For the -νυμι verbs, use First Aorist Participles.

Example: Aorist Active Participles of διδωμι

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. Sing.	δους	δουσα	δουν
Acc. Sing.	δοντα	δουσαν	δουν
Gen. Sing.	δοντος	δουσης	δοντος
Dat. Sing.	δοντι	δουση	δοντι
Nom. Pl.	δοντες	δουσαι	δοντα
Acc. Pl.	δοντας	δουσας	δοντα
Gen. Pl.	δοντων	δουσων	δοντων
Dat. Pl.	δουσι(ν)	δουσαις	δουσι(ν)

Aorist Middle Participles of Mi-Verbs use the short-vowel stem, plus –μεν-, plus the endings of καλος: δομενος, δομενη, δομενον.

Active Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative and Participles of Mi-Verbs are regular, have epsilon-reduplication and based on the long-vowel stem plus κ, plus regular endings: δεδωκα, τεθηκαμεν, δεδωκυιων, ἐστηκως, εἱστηκειμεν

Middle/Passive Perfect and Pluperfect Indicative and Participles of Mi-Verbs are regular, have epsilon-reduplication, and are based on the short-vowel stem: δεδομεθα, τεθενται, δεδομενοι, τεθεμεναις, εἱσταντο

Aorist Passive Indicative, Imperative, and Participles of Mi-Verbs are regular and based on the short stem in Principal Part 6, which has a θ before the ending: ἐδοθης, δοθητε, ἐτεθης, ἐτεθητε, σταθεντες, etc.

Meanings of ἱστημι

- Active: "I cause to stand"; Middle: "I stand"; Passive: "I am caused to stand, I am in position"

- Examples of Present Forms: ἱστης, ἱστασθε, ἱσταναι, ἱσταντα

- Examples of Imperfect Forms ἱστη, ἱσταντο

- Examples of Future Forms: στησεις, στησεται, σταθησομεθα

- Examples of Aorist Forms ἐστησαμεν, ἐστημεν, στηναι, ἐσταμεθα, ἐσταθημεν

- Examples of Perfect Forms ἐστηκασι, ἐστανται

- Examples of Pluperfect Forms: εἱστηκειν, ἐσταντο

Mi-verbs: the others, with example forms

εἰμι = I am (we already know this verb) ἠμεθα, ἐσεσθε

ἀφ-ιημι = I forgive, ἀφιησιν, ἀφιασιν, ἀφιεμεθα, ἀφιεναι, ἀφηκα, ἀφες

δεικνυμι = I point out, δεικνυς, ἐδεικνυς, δεικνυσας

ῥηγνυμι = I break, ῥηγνυσιν, ἐρρηγνυ, ῥηγνυντες

ῥωννυμι = I am strong, ἐρρωσο, ῥωσθεισας

σμηγνυμι = I wipe, wipe off, σμηγνυμεν, ἐσμηγνυμεθα, ἐσμηξαμεθα

The last verb is rare, but the compound ἀπο-σμηνυμι appears in John 13. This verb is also the ancestor of the mild swear word "smeg" used in the science-fiction series *Red Dwarf*: "Smeg off, Rimmer!"

Mi-Verbs in Ezekiel

1. "καὶ δώσω ὑμῖν καρδίαν καινὴν καὶ πνεῦμα καινὸν δώσω ἐν ὑμῖν καὶ ἀφελῶ τὴν καρδίαν τὴν λιθίνην ἐκ τῆς σαρκὸς ὑμῶν καὶ δώσω ὑμῖν καρδίαν σαρκίνην" (Ezekiel 36:26 LXX) καρδία = heart, καινός = new, ἀφαιρέω, ἀφελέω = I remove, λιθίνος = made of stone, σαρκίνος = made of flesh

2. "καὶ δώσω τὸ πνεῦμά μου εἰς ὑμᾶς καὶ ζήσεσθε καὶ θήσομαι ὑμᾶς ἐπὶ τὴν γῆν ὑμῶν καὶ γνώσεσθε ὅτι ἐγὼ κύριος λελάληκα καὶ ποιήσω." λέγει κύριος (Ezekiel 37:14 LXX) ζάω, ζήσομαι = I live, γινώσκω, γνώσομαι = I know

3. "καὶ διαθήσομαι αὐτοῖς διαθήκην εἰρήνης διαθήκη αἰωνία ἔσται μετ᾿ αὐτῶν καὶ θήσω τὰ ἅγιά μου ἐν μέσῳ αὐτῶν εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα" (Ezekiel 37:26 LXX) δια-τίθεμαι = I make a covenant with (Middle) + Dative, διαθήκη = covenant, testament, αἰών, αἰῶνος, ὁ = an eternity

4. καὶ εἰσήγαγέν με ἐκεῖ καὶ ἰδοὺ, ἀνήρ! καὶ ἡ ὅρασις αὐτοῦ ἦν ὡσεὶ ὅρασις χαλκοῦ στίλβοντος καὶ ἐν τῇ χειρὶ αὐτοῦ ἦν σπαρτίον οἰκοδόμων καὶ κάλαμος μέτρου καὶ αὐτὸς εἰστήκει ἐπὶ τῆς πύλης (Ezekiel 40:3 LXX) εἰσ-άγω = I lead into, ὅρασις = appearance, ὡσεὶ = just as, χαλκός = bronze, στίλβω = I glitter, σπαρτίον = cord, οἰκόδομος = builder, κάλαμος = rod, μέτρον = measure, πύλη = gate

Alpha-contract verbs

Alpha-contract verbs behave like epsilon-contract verbs in the Present and Imperfect Tenses, but with different contraction rules based on having a Present Stem ending in alpha.

Rules for Alpha-Contract Verbs

1. α + ε/η ("e" sound) = α

2. α + ο/ω/ου ("o" sound) = ω

3. α + diphthong with ι = apply Rule 1 or 2, then iota goes subscript

- Contraction applies to Present and Imperfect

- Example verb: τιμαω = "I honor" (whom does someone named Τιμοθεος honor?)

- Present Active Infinitive: τιμα+ε+εν → τιμα + εν → τιμαν (Rule 1 twice!)

- Principal Parts: τιμαω, τιμησω, ἐτιμησα, τετιμηκα, τετιμημαι, ἐτιμηθην; most alpha-contract verbs have similar Principal Parts, α → η beyond the first Principal Part.

- Examples: τιμωσιν, τιμᾳς, τιμωντες, ἐτιμα, τιμωμενοι, τιμησομεν, ἐτιμησαμεν, τετιμημεθα, ἐτιμηθητε, τιμηθεισαις

Example: Present Indicative Active of νικαω = I win, I conquer; where do you apply which rule?

	Sing.	Pl.
1	νικαω → νικω	νικαομεν → νικωμεν
2	νικαεις → νικᾳς	νικαετε → νικατε
3	νικαει → νικᾳ	νικαουσιν → νικωσιν

Omicron-contract verbs

Omicron-contract verbs behave like epsilon-contract verbs in the Present and Imperfect Tenses, but with different contraction rules based on having a Present Stem ending in omicron.

Rules for Omicron-Contract Verbs (compare to alpha-contract verbs, above)

1. ο + ε/ο/ου* (short vowels) = ου

2. ο + η/ω ('long' vowels) = ω

3. ο + diphthong with ι = οι

*= This diphthong was originally -οντ-, but simplified to -ου- to avoid -οντσιν

- Contraction applies to Present and Imperfect

- Example verb: πληροω = I fill, I fulfill

- Principal Parts: πληροω, πληρωσω, ἐπληρωσα, πεπληρωκα, πεπληρωμαι, ἐπληρωθην; most omicron-contract verbs have similar Principal Parts.

- Present Active Infinitive: πληρο+ε+εν → πληρου + εν → πληρουν (Rule 1 twice!)

- Examples: πληροις, ἐπληρους, πληρουμενα, ἐπληρωσεν, πεπληρωκασιν

Example: Present Indicative Active, σταυροω = I crucify

	Sing.	Pl.
1	σταυροω→ σταυρω	σταυροομεν → σταυρουμεν
2	σταυροεις → σταυροις	σταυροετε → σταρουτε
3	σταυροει → σταυροι	σταυροουσιν → σταυρουσιν

Vocabulary for Chapter 19

Μι-Verbs

διδωμι = I give

ἀποδιδωμι = I give away, give back

παραδιδωμι = I hand over, entrust

ἱστημι = I cause to stand, (in Middle) stand

ἀνιστημι = I raise up

παριστημι = I set beside

τιθημι = I put, place

ἐπιτιθημι = I put, place upon

προστιθημι = I put, add

ἀφιημι = I forgive

συνιημι = I understand

ἀπολλυμι = I destroy, (in Middle) I perish

δεικνυμι = I point out, show

πιμπλημι = I fill, fulfill

φημι = I say

Alpha-contract verbs

ἀγαπαω = I love

γενναω = I bear, beget (depends on whether the subject is male or female)

διψαω = I thirst

ἐρωταω = I ask someone (Acc.) for something (Acc.)

ἐπερωταω = I ask someone (Acc.) for something (Acc.)

ζαω = I live (but most of its contractions result in η rather than α, ὁ κυριος ζη = the Lord lives)

ἰαομαι = I heal

κοπιαω = I labor, struggle

νικαω = I win, conquer

ὁραω = I see (now we know the Present and Imperfect, 2nd Aorist is εἰδον)

πειναω = I hunger

πλαναω = I deceive, lead astray

τιμαω = I value, honor

ἐπιτιμαω = I rebuke

ὁραω = I see (Present of 2nd Aorist εἰδον)

Omicron-contract verbs

δικαιοω = I justify

πληροω = I fulfill, fill, complete (same as πιμπλημι above)

σταυροω = I crucify

τελειοω = I accomplish, complete

φανεροω = I reveal, make known

Family Story: Celebrating Easter

σημερον = today (seen also in the Lord's Prayer!), ὀπταω = I roast, καλως = well

ὁ Ἰακωβος εἰπεν, «σημερον ἐστιν ἡ ἑορτη της ἀναστασεως.» ἡ Τρυφωσα εἰπεν, «ὁ Χριστος ἐν τῳ

σταυρῳ ἀπεθανεν, παθων την θλιψιν και τον θανατον. ὁ Φιλιππος εἰπεν,«ὁ Ἰησους Χριστος ἀπο των

νεκρων ἀνεστη, νικησας τον θανατον.» ἡ Σαλωμη εἰπεν, «ὁ Χριστος παλιν ἐλευσεται, φερων την

σωτηριαν και την ζωην.» ὁ Ἰακωβος εἰπεν, «το ἀρνιον καλως ὠπτηκα. νυν αὐτο φαγωμεν.»

Scripture: The Shema
Deuteronomy 6:4-6:9

4. καὶ ταῦτα τὰ δικαιώματα καὶ τὰ κρίματα ὅσα ἐνετείλατο κύριος τοῖς υἱοῖς Ἰσραηλ ἐν τῇ ἐρήμῳ ἐξελθόντων αὐτῶν ἐκ γῆς Αἰγυπτου, Ἄκουε, Ἰσραηλ, κύριος ὁ θεος ἡμῶν κύριος εἷς ἐστιν. δικαίωμα, -ώματος, τό = ordinance, righteous commandment, ἐντέλλομαι = I command (Middle-Only), εἷς = one (note breathing and accent, NOT "into")

5. καὶ ἀγαπήσεις κύριον τὸν θεόν σου ἐξ ὅλης τῆς καρδίας σου καὶ ἐξ ὅλης τῆς ψυχῆς σου καὶ ἐξ ὅλης τῆς δυνάμεώς σου. καρδια, ἡ = heart (Eng. cardiac)

6. καὶ ἔσται τὰ ῥήματα ταῦτα ὅσα ἐγὼ ἐντέλλομαί σοι σήμερον ἐν τῇ καρδίᾳ σου καὶ ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ σου. ῥῆμα, ῥήματος, τό, = word, saying, ἐντέλλομαι = I command (Middle-Only), σήμερον = today

7. καὶ προβιβάσεις αὐτὰ τοὺς υἱους σου καὶ λαλήσεις ἐν αὐτοῖς καθήμενος ἐν οἴκῳ καὶ πορευόμενος ἐν ὁδῷ καὶ κοιταζόμενος καὶ διανιστάμενος. προβιβάζω = I teach, step forward, κοιτάζομαι = lie down (Middle), δι-αν-ίσταμαι = rise up (Middle of δι-αν-ίστημι)

8. καὶ ἀφάψεις αὐτὰ εἰς σημεῖον ἐπὶ τῆς χειρός σου καὶ ἔσται ἀσάλευτον πρὸ ὀφθαλμῶν σου. ἀφαπτω = bind, fasten, ἀσάλευτος, -ον = unshaken, unmoveable

9. καὶ γραψετε αὐτὰ ἐπὶ τὰς φλιὰς τῶν οἰκιῶν ὑμῶν καὶ τῶν πυλῶν ὑμῶν. φλιά, ἡ = doorpost, πυλή, ἡ = gate, city-gate.

Assignment 53

Name:_____

All Students: Generate the right forms of μι-verbs from chapter 19 to complete the translation of each sentence.

1. We are giving bread to the widows. = ταις χηραις ἀρτον _____

2. I stood in front of the tombs. = προ των μνημειων _____

3. You (pl.) used to put stones into the walls. = _____ λιθους εἰς τα τειχη.

4. Who has given us true salvation and will put our souls into heaven? = τίς ἡμιν την σωτηριαν την

   ἀληθη _____, και εἰς τον οὐρανον τας ἡμων ψυχας _____;

Translate the following sentences from Greek into English

5. τίς, σημεια ποιων, τους λογους των προφητων πιμπλησιν;

6. ἀφεντες τας ἁμαρτιας, οἱ μαθηται ὑμιν το ἁγιον πνευμα ἐπεθεσαν.

7. γενηθητω το θελημα σου, και ἡμιν δος τον ἀρτον της ἡμερας.

8. οἱ βασιλεις δουλους και στρατιωτας τοις ἱερευσιν ἐδιδοσαν.

9. μετα το τον Ἰησουν ἐκ των νεκρων ἀναστηναι, εἰδομεν αὐτον ὡδε.

Grad Assignment 53

Graduate Students: Please do these sentences as well.

1. καιπερ τους ἀσθενεις ἱστας, ὁ Φιλιππος αὐτους σωσαι οὐκ ἐδυνατο. .

2. ὁταν ἐν τη ὁδῳ κηρυσσοντες στωμεν, οὐδεις ἡμας βλεψει.

3. νυν οἰδαμεν ὁτι οἱ Ἑλληνες πολλους οἰκους παρα τη θαλασσῃ ἐθεσαν.

4. Who forgives all our sins if we do not ever repent?

5. While you (s.) place sheep on the mountain, you understand God.

6. The disciples pointed out the demons, who were cast out into animals.

7. "Woe to Herod and to the other three rulers," says John. (use φημι)

Assignment 54

Name:_____

All Students: Please generate the following forms of contract verbs. Hint #2 & #5 do not show contraction.

1.You (sing.) were thirsting = _____

2.You (pl.) will be justified = _____

3.Let him/her/it not be leading astray = _μη_____

4.We are revealing = _____

5.I have been honored = _____

All Students: please translate the following sentences between English and Greek.

6. ὁ Ἰησους παντας τους ἀσθενεις, οἳ ἀν προς αὐτον ἐλθωσιν, ἰαται.

7. ἐαν εὐλογηθηναι θελησητε, την δικαιοσυνην διψατε και πεινατε.

8.Jesus was crucified on the cross and rose from the dead for the sake of our sins.

9.We were not honoring the sisters although (**καιπερ + Participle**) they had been honored by God.

Grad Assignment 54

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please do these sentences as well.

1. μη πλανατωσαν τα τεκνα οἱ διδασκαλοι οἱ τιμωντες την πονηριαν.

2. ὁ ἀριστος εἰπε, « Φανερου ἐμοι την σην ἀναστασιν.»

3. ἀγαπα τους ἐχθρους καθως σεαυτον, ἱνα δοξαν ἐν τῳ οὐρανῳ νικᾳς.

4. οἱ γραμματεις, οὑς γραψαι βιβλια δει, τα ἑαυτων ἐργα τελειουσιν.

5. Who says, "We are justified by works, not by faith" with many words?

6. After we stood up the tombs that had fallen down, we came back here.

7. Death will complete our life on earth, but does not truly destroy our soul.

Chapter 20: Final pieces

Conditions

Conditions are sentences that involve "if" in Greek, εἰ (no accent) or ἐαν (with Subjunctive)

The part with "if"/εἰ/ἐαν is called the **Protasis** "stretching out," and the other part is called the **Apodosis** "giving back/away".

We have already seen Fulfilled/Definite/Simple Conditions:

If we made bread (←Protasis), we ate it (←Apodosis).

Εἰ ἀρτον ἐποιησαμεν, αὐτον ἐφαγομεν.

The Protasis is always negated with μη, even if the verb is Indicative.

And we have already seen Conditional Participles, where the Protasis is replaced with a Participle, and it is therefore negated with μη.

Μη ἀρτον ποιησαντες, αὐτον οὐκ ἐφαγομεν.

Fulfilled/Simple Conditions are actually rare; far more common are other kinds, all marked by the particle ἀν in some way.

- Indefinite Present/Present General: Protasis: ἐαν + Subjunctive, Apodosis: Present Indicative. Example: ἐαν ἀρτον ποιησωμεν, αὐτον ἐσθιομεν. = "If we make bread, we eat it." To show how it differs from a Simple Condition, we can overtranslate as, "If (ever) we make bread, we (always) eat it" The stuff in parentheses () shows how the sentence is true in general, not in a specific instance.

  - Remember Indefinite Relative Clauses introduced by ὀς ἀν = whoever? You can think of ἀν as meaning "ever," even if you do not always translate it explicitly.

- Indefinite Future/Future More Vivid: Protasis: ἐαν + Subjunctive, Apodosis: Future Indicative. Example: ἐαν ἀρτον ποιησωμεν, αὐτον φαγομεθα (←Middle-Only Future: ugh!) = "If we make bread, we will eat it." Here the ἐαν and Subjunctive do not mean something in general, but something that is not a fact because it has not yet happened. The label "Future More Vivid" means that the sentence is not a sure thing, but has greater than a 50% probability of happening. Here is a hopeful example: ἐαν τω εὐαγγελιω πιστευωμεν, σωθησομεθα. = "If we keep believing in the gospel, we will be saved."

- Present Contrary to Fact/Contrafactual: Protasis: εἰ+ Imperfect Indicative, Apodosis: Imperfect Indicative + ἀν. Example: εἰ μη ἀρτον ἐποιουμεν, οὐκ ἀν αὐτον ἠσθιομεν. = "If we were not making bread, we would not eat it." OR "If we were not to make bread, we would not eat it." Here, the Imperfect Indicative is used because the action is not happening or is not being done in the Present. The Imperfect can be understood as "incomplete." The ἀν with the Apodosis (rather than the Protasis) indicates that the sentence is Contrafactual or hypothetical, not Simple, so translate ἀν with the Imperfect as "would."

- Past Contrary to Fact/Contrafactual: Protasis: εἰ + Aorist Indicative, Apodosis: Aorist Indicative + ἀν. Example: εἰ μη ἀρτον ἐποιησαμεν, οὐκ ἀν αὐτον ἐφαγομεν. = "If we had not made bread, we would not have eaten it." The Aorist can not only be for Simple Aspect in past time, but for an undetermined or unlimited Aspect. Since the action did not happen, we do not know what Aspect it would have been. The Protasis will sound in English like a Pluperfect, and you can even leave out the "if" if you move the helping verb to the front: "Had we not made bread…" The ἀν with the Apodosis (rather than the Protasis) again indicates that the sentence is Contrafactual or hypothetical, not Simple, so translate ἀν with the Aorist as "would have."

- In practice, the two types are often mixed, as in John 11:21, ὠ κυριε, εἰ ἠς ὡδε, οὐκ ἀν ἀπεθανεν ὁ ἀδελφος μου. = "Lord, if you had been here, my brother (Lazarus) would not have died." ἠς is technically Indicative, but the verb εἰμι has no Aorist with which it could make a Past Contrafactual Protasis.

Condition Types	Protasis ("if"-clause)	Apodosis ("then"-clause)
Present General	ἐαν + Subjunctive If it rains	Present Indicative we are getting wet
Future More Vivid	ἐαν + Subjunctive If it rains	Future Indicative we will get wet
Present Contrary to Fact	εἰ + Imperfect Indicative If it were raining/were to rain	Imperfect Indicative + ἀν we would get wet
Past Contrary to Fact	εἰ + Aorist Indicative If it had rained/Had it rained	Aorist Indicative + ἀν we would have gotten wet
Future Less Vivid (see Optative section later in chapter)	εἰ + Optative If it should rain	Optative + ἀν we would get wet
Future Most Vivid	εἰ + Future Indicative If it will rain tomorrow	Future Indicative we will get wet
Present Simple	εἰ + Present Indicative If it is raining today	Present Indicative we are getting wet
Past Simple	εἰ + Past Indicative If it rained yesterday	Past Indicative we got wet

Genitives Absolute

Remember how Participles often give "background" information? This construction is even more about "setting the stage" and is grammatically discontinuous or "absolute" with the Main Clause. The Subject is Genitive, and the verb is a Participle modifying the Subject. See the Participle Uses Guide in Chapter 14 to see this construction next to the other Participle Uses. If you need to see where a Genitive Absolute stops, put a comma where the sentence shifts to a new subject.

Examples from Mark

Και **γενομενου σαββατου**, ἠρξατο διδασκειν ἐν τη συναγωγη (Mark 6:2) = "And **after the Sabbath had happened**, he (Jesus) began to be teaching in the synagogue."

ἐμβαινοντος αὐτου εἰς το πλοιον, παρεκαλει αὐτον ὁ δαιμονισθεις (Mark 5:18) = "When he (Jesus) was stepping into the boat, the man who had been afflicted with a demon was calling him."

Periphrastic Verbs

These are annoying two-part verbs, but they follow the Analytical Tendency of English to split Time and Aspect into two different words, a form of "be" plus a Participle.

English: She was (←Past) preaching (←Progressive/Ongoing)

Greek Periphrastic: ἦν (← "was") κηρυσσουσα (←"she…preaching")

When verbs of different tenses, especially Participle and Indicative forms of εἰμι, are added together in Periphrastic Verbs, we often see that Future forms of εἰμι move the verb toward the Future, Imperfect forms of εἰμι move the verb farther into the Past, and Present forms of εἰμι tend to get their tense from the Participle. The Aorist Participle is not used.

Periphrastic Tense	Tense of εἰμι	Tense of Participle	Example Form	Translation of Example Form
Present	Present	Present	εἰμι γραφουσα	"I am writing"
Imperfect	Imperfect	Present	ἤμην γραφουσα	"I was writing"
Future	Future	Present	ἐσομαι γραφουσα	"I will be writing"
Perfect	Present	Perfect	εἰμι γεγραφυια	"I have written"
Pluperfect	Imperfect	Perfect	ἤμην γεγραφυια	"I had written"
Future Perfect	Future	Perfect	ἐσομαι γεγραφυια	"I will have written"

Greek does not really have the Future Perfect except in Periphrastic forms:

Examples: ἐσται (← "will be") κεκηρυχυια (← "she…having been preaching") = "she will have been preaching." ἐσονται γεγραφοτες. = "they will have been writing"

Or you can use them to get around unpronounceable forms. Example αἱ ἐπιστολαι *γεγραπνται→ αἱ ἐπιστολαι γεγραμμεναι εἰσιν. = "the letters are having been written" = "the letters have been written."

* = hypothetical form, does not actually exist in the language because Greek does not allow three consonants in a row unless one of them is a liquid.

Comparison of Adjectives

We can change adjectives to forms that compare two nouns or exalt one noun above all the others. English changes adjectives in two ways, Regular and Irregular.

Comparison of Adjectives in English

Degree of Adjective	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Regular Comparison	tall	taller	tallest
Irregular Comparison	little	lesser	least

Note the markers: -er -> Comparative, -est/-st -> Superlative. If -er and -est sound awkward, use the adverbs "more" or "rather" for Comparative and "most" or "very" for Superlative. Example: These children are the most beloved of all. OR These children are very beloved.

Here is how it works in Greek:

Comparison of Adjectives in Greek

Degree of Adjective	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Regular Comparison	πονηρος, -α, -ον	πονηροτερος, -α, -ον	πονηροτατος, -η, -ον
Irregular Comparison	μεγας, μεγαλη, μεγα	μειζων, μειζον	μεγιστος, -η, -ον

Note that these adjectives all have full declensions. Μεγας has some irregularites, but its basic stem is μεγαλ-, μειζων follows the third declension, and μεγιστος and other forms follow the first and second declensions depending on gender.

Note the markers for Regular Comparison: -τερος -> Comparative, -τατος -> Superlative, and these markers get added onto the stem of the adjective after a theme vowel, usually -ο- or -ω-.

πονηρος → πονηρ- → πονηρ- + -ο- + τερος → πονηροτερος

For Irregular Comparison: (changed stem) + -ων -> Comparative, -ιστος -> Superlative

Examples: ἥμην πονηρος, ἀλλα ἡ Ἰεζαβελ ἠν πονηροτερα, και ὁ Ἡρωδης ἐστι πονηροτατος. Ταις μεν πονηραις ἀδελφαις ἐλαλησαμεν, ταις δε πονηροτεραις ἀδελφαις λαλουμεν, ἀλλα ταις πονηροταταις ἀδελφαις λαλησομεν.

Εἱς την μεν μεγαλην συναγωγην ἐν τη Ναζαρεθ ἠλθομεν, νυν δε εἱς την μειζονα συναγωγην ἐν τη Βηθσαιδα ἐρχομεθα, ἀλλα πορευθησομεθα προς την μεγιστην συναγωγην τειην οὐσαν ἐν τοις Ἱεροσολυμοις. Τον μεγαν βασιλεα εἱδομεν, τους δε μειζονα βασιλεα ὁρωμεν, ἀλλα τον μεγιστον βασιλεα θεησομεθα.

Comparison of Adverbs

Adverbs work similarly:

Comparison of Adverb in English

Degree of Adjective	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Regular Comparison	quickly	more quickly	most quickly
Irregular Comparison	well	better	best

Here is how it works in Greek, but remember that Adverbs do not change to match Gender, Number, and Case. The Comparative Adverb is the Neut. Acc. Sing. of the corresponding Adjective or resembles it. The Superlative Adverb is the Neut. Acc. Pl. of the corresponding Adjective or resembles it. Note that "-ly" is the Regular Adverb marker for the Positive Degree in English, but in Greek, the marker is -ως.

Comparison of Adverbs in Greek

Degree of Adjective	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Regular Comparison	ἀληθως	ἀληθοτερον	ἀληθοτατα
	"truly"	"more truly"	"most truly"
Irregular Comparison	μεγαλως	μαλλον	μαλιστα
	"greatly, big-time"	"more greatly, more, rather"	"most greatly, very, especially"

Examples: εἶπον μεν ἀληθως, ὁ δε ἀποστολος ἀληθοτερον εἶπεν, ἀλλα ὁ Ἰησους ἀληθοτατα εἶπεν. ἠργασαμεθα μεν μεγαλως, μαλλον δε ἐργαζεσθε, ἀλλ᾽ ἡ Δορκας μαλιστα ἐργασεται.

Optative Mood

The Optative is used for non-facts, but is even 'fuzzier' than the Subjunctive. The name is derived from Latin *opto* = I wish, and its most common use in the New Testament is for wishes, as we will see below. It is also used for potential events, what could happen, for Future Conditionals less than 50% probable, and for reporting speech from the perspective of the past.

The marker of this mood is iota plus a vowel to make a diphthong (αι, ει, οι) between the Stem and the Personal Endings. Present or Future or Second Aorist Optatives use οι between Stem and Optative Personal Endings. First Aorist Optatives use αι between Stem and Optative Personal Endings; Aorist Passive Optatives use ει between the Stem and the η-based Aorist Passive endings, which are like the Root Aorist endings of βαινω. Athematic verbs do what they please: for example, see the verb "be" below.

Optative Theme Vowels:

Tense of Optative/Athematic Verb	Theme Vowels
Present, Future, Second Aorist Active/Middle, Perfect, διδωμι, ἐγνων	-οι-
First Aorist Active/Middle, δυναμαι, ἱστημι, ἐβην	-αι-
Aorist Passive, εἰμι, τιθημι, ἱημι	-ει-

The Optative Tense also has special Personal Endings, but we have seen almost all of them before, except the 3rd Plural Active Ending in -εν, where the nu is NOT moveable.

Optative Personal Endings	Optative Active		Optative Middle/Passive (Secondary)		Aorist Passive Optative	
	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	-μι	-μεν	-μην	-μεθα	-ην	-ημεν
2nd	-ς	-τε	-σο	-σθε	-ης	-ητε
3rd	--	-εν	-το	-ντο	-η	-ησαν

Examples of Optative Forms	Optative Active: Present Optative Active of γραφω		Optative Middle/Passive (Secondary): Aorist Optative Middle of δεχομαι		Aorist Passive Optative: Aorist Optative Passive of λυω, Part 6 ἐλυθην	
	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	γραφοιμι	γραφοιμεν	δεξαιμην	δεξαιμεθα	λυθειην	λυθειημεν
2nd	γραφοις	γραφοιτε	δεξαισο	δεξαισθε	λυθειης	λυθειητε
3rd	γραφοι	γραφοιεν	δεξαιτο	δεξαιντο	λυθειη	λυθειησαν

Examples of Optative Forms	Optative Active: Present Optative Active of τιθημι		Optative Middle/Passive (Secondary): Present Optative Middle of δυναμαι (Athematic)		Present Optative Active of εἰμι	
	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	τιθειμι	τιθειμεν	δυναιμην	δυναιμεθα	εἰην	εἰημεν
2nd	τιθεις	τιθειτε	δυναισο	δυναισθε	εἰης	εἰητε
3rd	τιθει	τιθειεν	δυναιτο	δυναιντο	εἰη	εἰησαν

Examples of Optative Forms	Optative Active: Aorist Optative Active of διδωμι		Optative Middle/Passive (Secondary): 2nd Aorist Optative Middle of γινομαι		Future Passive Optative: Aorist Optative Passive of τιμαω, Part 6 ἐτιμηθην	
	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
1st	δοιμι	δοιμεν	γενοιμην	γενοιμεθα	τιμηθησοιμην	τιμηθησοιμεθα
2nd	δοις	δοιτε	γενοισο	γενοισθε	τιμηθησοισο	τιμηθησοισθε
3rd	δοι	δοιεν	γενοιτο	γενοιντο	τιμηθησοιτο	τιμηθησοιντο

This verbal mood appears only seventeen times in the entire New Testament.

The Optative is most often used to express wishes of the speaker, when it is called the Optative of Wish. In the New Testament, twelve of the seventeen uses are γενοιτο, the 3rd singular Aorist Indicative Middle of γινομαι = I become, happen. γενοιτο = I wish that it would happen! μη γενοιτο = I wish that it would not happen! OR (less formal) No way! OR Heaven forbid!

The Potential Optative expresses Possibilities and is marked with ἀν, where ἀν means "could." Note that the tense does not express Time, only Aspect. Potential Optative with Aorist: σε ἐκει ἀν δεξαιμην = "I could welcome you there" (once). Potential Optative with Present: περι της δικαιοσυνης οὐκ ἀν λεγοιμεν. = "We could not be talking about righteousness" (continually).

Future Less Vivid Conditions are very rare in the New Testament. They use ἀν meaning "would" in the Apodosis of the condition. These conditions are also called «should-would» conditions because of how you translate them. The Optative shows that they have less than 50% probability of coming true, in contrast to Future More Vivid Conditions, which have a greater than 50% probability. εἰ ἀρτον ποιησαιμεν, ἀν φαγοιτε. = "If we should make bread, you (pl.) would eat it."

Optatives in Indirect Speech

The Optative can also be used in Indirect Statements (chapter 10) or Indirect Questions with Secondary Main Verbs.

Direct Statement: Την ἀληθειαν γνωσεσθε = You (pl.) will know the truth. (Future Indicative)

Indirect Statement: ἐλεγεν ὁτι την ἀληθειαν γνωσοισθε. = He was saying that you (pl.) would know the truth. (Future Optative)

English uses the Conditional "would know" to express the Future from the point of the view of the Past. Greek captures this kind of fuzziness with the Optative Mood.

An Indirect Question is like an Indirect Statement, but starts with a question word rather than ὁτι. Just as an Indirect Statement reports what someone said, an Indirect Question reports what someone asked.

Direct Question: Τί εἶ; = Who are you?

Indirect Question: ἐρωτω τίς εἶ = I ask who you are.

For Secondary Main Verbs (Imperfect, Aorist, Pluperfect), the Optative can replace the Indicative of the original Direct Question:

ἠρωτησα τίς εἰης = I asked who you were (Optative).

Vocabulary for Chapter 20

ἀληθως = truly, indeed (same as ἀμην)

ἐλαχιστος, -η, -ον = smallest, least

εὐ = well

κρεισσων, κρεισσον = better

μαλιστα = especially, most of all

μαλλον = rather, more

μικρον = a little, a short time

μικρος, -α, -ον = small, short

χειρων, χειρον = worse

ζῳον, το = animal

θυσιαστηριον, το = altar, place for sacrifice

ποιμην, ποιμενος, ὁ = shepherd

θεαομαι = I see, view

καυχαομαι = I boast, brag

μιμνησκομαι = I remember, recall + Gen. (Passive-Only), Part 2 μνησθησομαι, Part 6 ἐμνησθην

νιπτω = I wash

Palindrome over a Byzantine baptismal font:

νιψον ἀνομημα, μη μονον ὀψιν.

ἀνομημον, το = sin, lawless act

μονον = only, just

ὀψις, ὀψεως, ἡ = face

If you do not know what a palindrome is, it is a saying that is the same if you read it backwards or forwards. For example, in English, "Go hang a salami, I'm a lasagna hog" has a set of letters up to the comma that appear in reverse order after the comma. For this palindrome and other English palindromes, see Weird Al Yankovic's song "Bob," a parody of Bob Dylan's "Subterranean Homesick Blues," but all the lyrics are palindromes.

Family Story, Concluded

παντες τῳ Ἰησου τας ὁλας ζωας ἠκολουθησαν. ἡ Τρυφωσα γυναικα τῳ Φιλιππῳ εὑρεν, Νυμφην

ὀνοματι, την γεννησασαν αὐτῳ τρια τεκνα. ὁ Ἰακωβος τον Φιλιππον και τον Ἰωαννην τον της Ἰωαννης

υἱον οἰκοδομησαι οἰκιας ἐδιδαξεν, και γενομενος γερων (old man), αὐτοις το οἰκοδομησαι ἐδωκεν. ἡ

Σαλωμη ἐγενετο προφητης, ἀκουουσα του θεου και κηρυσσουσα τον Ἰησουν πασιν.

Scripture: Philip meets the Ethiopian Eunuch

(Acts 8:30-35); see vocab below

[30] προσδραμὼν δὲ ὁ Φίλιππος ἤκουσεν αὐτοῦ ἀναγινώσκοντος Ἠσαΐαν τὸν προφήτην καὶ εἶπεν· Ἆρά γε

γινώσκεις ἃ ἀναγινώσκεις; [31] ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· Πῶς γὰρ ἂν δυναίμην, ἐὰν μή τις ὁδηγήσει με; παρεκάλεσέν τε

τὸν Φίλιππον ἀναβάντα καθίσαι σὺν αὐτῷ. [32] ἡ δὲ περιοχὴ τῆς γραφῆς ἣν ἀνεγίνωσκεν ἦν αὕτη· Ὡς

πρόβατον ἐπὶ σφαγὴν ἤχθη, καὶ ὡς ἀμνὸς ἐναντίον τοῦ κείραντος αὐτὸν ἄφωνος, οὕτως οὐκ ἀνοίγει τὸ

στόμα αὐτοῦ. [33] ἐν τῇ ταπεινώσει ἡ κρίσις αὐτοῦ ἤρθη· τὴν γενεὰν αὐτοῦ τίς διηγήσεται; ὅτι αἴρεται

ἀπὸ τῆς γῆς ἡ ζωὴ αὐτοῦ. [34] ἀποκριθεὶς δὲ ὁ εὐνοῦχος τῷ Φιλίππῳ εἶπεν· Δέομαί σου, περὶ τίνος ὁ

προφήτης λέγει τοῦτο; περὶ ἑαυτοῦ ἢ περὶ ἑτέρου τινός; [35] ἀνοίξας δὲ ὁ Φίλιππος τὸ στόμα αὐτοῦ καὶ

ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τῆς γραφῆς ταύτης εὐηγγελίσατο αὐτῷ τὸν Ἰησοῦν.

ἄγω, ἄξω, ἤγαγον, ἦγκα, ἦγμαι, ἤχθην = I lead, bring
ἀμνος, ὁ = lamb
ἀφωνος, -ον = innocent
γενεα, ἡ = generation, journey
διηγεομαι = I narrate, describe
εὐνουχος, ὁ = eunuch
Ἠσαια, ὁ = Isaiah
καθιζω = I sit

κειρω, κερεω, ἐκειρα = I butcher
κρισις, ἡ = judgment, sentence
ὁδηγεω = I guide
περιοχη, ἡ = passage (of Bible)
προσ-τρεχω, προσ-δραμεομαι, προσ-εδραμον = I run up
σφαγη, ἡ = slaughter
ταπεινωσις, -εως, ἡ = lowliness, humility

Assignment 55

Name:_____

All Students: Please learn Condition types cold before starting this Assignment.

1. ὦ κυριε, εἰ ὧδε παρης, ὁ φιλος ἀδελφος μου οὐκ ἀν ἀπεθανεν.

2. ἐαν τους ἀλλους ἀγαπωμεν, τηρουμεν την καινην ἐντολην.

3. ἐαν την οἰκιαν οἰκοδομησητε, ὑμας λογιζεσθαι τους ὑπηρετας δει.

4. εἰ τους ἀσθενεις ἐν τοις Σαββατοις ἐθεραπευομεν, οἱ Φαρισιοι ἡμας κατηγορουν ἀν.

5. ἐαν ἀρτον τοις θηριοις δῳς, ταυτα σοι προς τον οἰκον ἀκολουθησει.

6. If we (ever) find the tomb, let us not pour out wine and bread, as the faithless do.

7. If Philip had known that he was not in Israel, he would have spoken in/with the Greek language.

Grad Assignment 55

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please do these sentences as well.

1. μη ὀργην ἐχοντες, ἀγαπησαι τους ἐχθρους δυνασθε.

2. εἰ πασαι αἱ φυλαι προς την πολιν ἠλθον, ἀλληλας ἐμισησαν ἀν.

3. τίς δυναται εὑρειν το ποτηριον ἀφ’ οὗ ὁ Τιμοθεος ἐπινεν;

4. If ever God stands us up after we fall, who can be against us?

5. If you love the enslaved just as brothers and sisters, you will set them free.

6. If you (pl.) place rocks of sin in front of your brothers, you (pl.) are not forgiven.

7. If Abraham had not believed, his faith would not have become righteous.

Assignment 56

Name:_____

All Students: Please learn vocabulary for ch. 20, Genitive Absolutes, and Periphrastics.

1. της βασιλειας νικηθεισης, ὁ λαος τον θεον ἐπεκαλεσεν.

2. ἡ θυγατηρ του Ἰακωβου τῳ ἀδελφῳ του Πετρου γεγαμημενη ἦν.

3. των ποιμενων ἐλθοντων, τα καλα ζῳα ἐν τη ἑορτη ἐφαγομεν.

4. ἀρτον ὑπο των διακονων δοθεισαι, αἱ χηραι ἦσαν λεγοντες, Ἀμην.

5. των ἀσθενων σῳζομενων, θεωμεθα την δυναμιν του κυριου.

6. After the night came, we went out to the temple with many fires (torches).

7. The rulers of this world had been boasting about their weak powers.

Grad Assignment 56

Graduate Students: Please do these sentences as well.

1. των ζῴων ἐσθιοντων, οἶνον οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὧδε πιονται.

2. ἐκεκαυχητο ὁ βασιλευς ὁ Ἡρῳδης περι των δεκα γυναικων.

3. τίς θεαται τα δαιμονια, ἃ ἂν ἐν τοις μνημειοις ζῃ;

4. οὐ, περιπατων ἐν τῃ Ἰσραηλ, τον οἶκον του Δαυιδ ἀγαπᾳς;

5. Let us learn during the day so that we may perform the festivals at night.

6. Sons, remember me (Gen.) at the altar of the Lord, if you love me. [St. Monnica!]

7. Daughters, understand that many people are slaves to sin and to death.

Assignment 57

Name:_____

All Students: Please learn Irregular Comparisons and the Optative.

1. ὁ Ἡρῳδης ἠν βασιλευς χειρων ἠ ὁ ἀλλος ἀρχων.

2. μη γενοιτο, ὁτι καυχωμαι περι της ἐμης δυναμεως.

3. ἠρωτας με πως το εὐαγγελιον μαθοιμι.

4. οὐδενος λαλουντος, ἠ ἐρημος κρεισσων ἠ ἡ πολις.

5. μη αὐτη ἡ πορνεια ἐν τη μικρα ἐκκλησια γενοιτο.

6. Lead me, brightest light, through the darkness, if all other lights die.

7. To learn the Greek language is to prepare the mind to read better.

Grad Assignment 57

Name:_____

Graduate Students: Please do these sentences as well.

1. ὢν δικαιοτατος, ὁ Ἀβρααμ ἦν ὁ πατηρ του Ἰσραηλ.

2. ὦ ἀδελφε, ἐννεα ἀρτους τῳ λαῳ της ἐκκλησιας πεποιηκας;

3. το σοφωτατον ζῳον ἐστιν ὃ ἂν ἀνθρωπος οὐπω ἰδῃ.

4. οἱ ἀρχοντες ἡμας ἐπηρωτων, τί ἐν τῳ ἱερῳ γενοιτο.

5. After seven days, we have learned nothing about this law.

6. The Holy Spirit makes us blessed, with the result that we offer sacrifices of praise at the altar.

7. Lord, remember me, whenever you come into your kingdom.

This is the end of the textbook. μακαριοι οἱ τελουντες, "Blessed are those who finish!"

Appendix A: Note to Instructors

This open-source textbook can be used in different academic calendars. Here is what I suggest with a quarter system, each 10 weeks long. A chapter a week is a noble goal, but in practice, holidays, special events, and exams make this pace unsustainable.

Fall	Chapters 1-8
Winter	Chapters 9-16
Spring	Chapters 17-20 + Gupta & Sandford, [Intermediate Biblical Greek Reader: Galatians and Related Texts - Open Textbook Library (umn.edu)](#)
Summer/Fall	Another Greek book of the Bible, such as Gospel of John, Septuagint Hosea, etc.

On a Semester System, with 13-15 week semesters.

Fall	Chapters 1-10
Spring	Chapters 11-20
Summer/Fall	Gupta & Sandford, [Intermediate Biblical Greek Reader: Galatians and Related Texts - Open Textbook Library (umn.edu)](#) or another Greek book of the Bible

Appendix B: The Fifteen Tenses of English and Their Latin and Greek Equivalents

Present Simple: I love chocolate. = Latin Present = Greek Present

Present Progessive: I am running to the store. = Latin Present = Greek Present

Present Emphatic: Do I love chocolate? I do love chocolate. = Latin Present = Greek Present

Present Perfect: I have always loved chocolate. = Latin Perfect = Greek Perfect

Present Perfect Progressive: I have been running to the store. = Latin Perfect, probably = Greek Perfect

Past Simple/Preterite: I loved chocolate. = Latin Perfect = Greek Aorist

Past Progressive: I was running to the store. = Latin Imperfect = Greek Imperfect

Past Emphatic: Did I love chocolate? I did love chocolate. = Latin Perfect = Greek Aorist

Past Perfect: I had loved chocolate. = Latin Pluperfect = Greek Pluperfect

Past Perfect Progressive: I had been running to the store. = Latin Pluperfect, probably = Greek Pluperfect

Future Simple: I shall run to the store, but they will run with me. = Latin Future = Greek Future

Future Progressive: I shall be running to the store. = Latin Future = Greek Future

Future Emphatic: I will run to the store, and they shall run with me. = Latin Future = Greek Future

Future Perfect: I shall have run to the store. = Latin Future Perfect = Greek Periphrastic Future Perfect

Future Perfect Progressive: I shall have been running to the store. = Latin Future Perfect, probably = Greek Periphrastic Future Perfect

Or, if you like cats: Language Log » Cat chat (upenn.edu).

What happens when the verb is in the Passive Voice?

The Fifteen Tenses of English and their Latin and Greek equivalents, but Passive!

Present Simple: Bread is eaten by me. = Latin Present = Greek Present

Present Progessive: Bread is being eaten by me. = Latin Present = Greek Present

Present Emphatic: Is bread eaten by me? = Latin Present = Greek Present

Present Perfect: Bread has been eaten by me. = Latin Perfect = Greek Perfect

Present Perfect Progressive: Bread has been being eaten by me. = Latin Perfect, probably = Greek Perfect

Past Simple/Preterite: Bread was eaten by me. = Latin Perfect = Greek Aorist

Past Progressive: Bread was being eaten by me. = Latin Imperfect = Greek Imperfect

Past Emphatic: Was bread eaten by me? = Latin Perfect = Greek Aorist

Past Perfect: Bread had been eaten by me. = Latin Pluperfect = Greek Pluperfect

Past Perfect Progressive: Bread had been being eaten by me. = Latin Pluperfect, probably = Greek Pluperfect

Future Simple: Bread will be eaten by me. = Latin Future = Greek Future

Future Progressive: Bread will be being eaten by me. = Latin Future = Greek Future

Future Emphatic: Bread shall be eaten by me. = Latin Future = Greek Future

Future Perfect: Bread will have been eaten by me. = Latin Future Perfect = Greek Periphrastic Future Perfect

Future Perfect Progressive: Bread will have been being eaten by me. = Latin Future Perfect, probably = Greek Periphrastic Future Perfect

Appendix C: Second and Root Aorists

Present Prin. Part 1	2nd Aorist Indicative Principal Part 3	2nd Aorist Participle minus PIA	Meaning
ἀγω	ἠγαγον	ἀγαγων, -ουσα, -ον	I lead
ἁμαρτανω	ἡμαρτον	ἁμαρτων, -ουσα, -ον	I sin
ἀποθνῃσκω	ἀπεθανον	ἀποθανων, -ουσα, -ον	I die
βαινω	ἐβην	βας, βασα, βαν	I walk
βαλλω	ἐβαλον	βαλων, -ουσα, -ον	I throw
γινομαι	ἐγενομην	γενομενος, -η, -ον	I become
γινωσκω	ἐγνων	γνους, γνουσα, γνουν	I know
ἐρχομαι	ἠλθον	ἐλθων, -ουσα, -ον	I come, go
ἐσθιω	ἐφαγον	φαγων, -ουσα, -ον	I eat
εὑρισκω	εὑρον/ηὑρον	εὑρων, -ουσα, -ον	I find
ἐχω	ἐσχον	σχων, -ουσα, -ον	I have
καταλειπω	κατελιπον	καταλιπων, -ουσα, -ον	I leave behind
λαμβανω	ἐλαβον	λαβων, -ουσα, -ον	I take
λεγω	εἰπον	εἰπων, -ουσα, -ον	I say
μανθανω	ἐμαθον	μαθων, -ουσα, -ον	I learn
ὁραω	εἰδον	ἰδων, -ουσα, -ον	I see
πασχω	ἐπαθον	παθων, -ουσα, -ον	I suffer, experience
πινω	ἐπιον	πιων, -ουσα, -ον	I drink
πιπτω	ἐπεσον	πεσων, -ουσα, -ον	I fall
φερω	ἠνεγκον	ἐνεγκων, -ουσα, -ον	I carry
φευγω	ἐφυγον	φευγων, -ουσα, -ον	I flee, escape

Appendix D: Principal Parts of Verbs

Part 1	Part 2	Part 3	Part 4	Part 5	Part 6	Meaning
λυω	λυσω	ἐλυσα	λελυκα	λελυμαι	ἐλυθην	(Example)
I free	I will free	I freed	I have freed	I have been freed	I was freed	(Example)
Irregular	Verbs	With	Some	Twist	Or	Another
ἀγγελλω	ἀγγελεω	ἠγγειλα	ἠγγελκα	ἠγγελμαι	ἠγγελην	I report, announce
ἀγω	ἀξω	ἠγαγον	ἠγκα	ἠγμαι	ἠχθην	I lead, bring
αἱρω	ἀρεω	ἠρα	ἠρκα	ἠρμαι	ἠρθην	I take away, lift up
ἀκουω	ἀκουσομαι	ἠκουσα	ἀκηκοα	ἀκηκομαι	ἠκουσθην	I hear
ἀμαρτανω	ἀμαρτησω	ἠμαρτον	ἠματρηκα	ἠμαρτημαι	ἠμαρτηθην	I sin
ἀνοιγω	ἀνοιξω	ἠνοιξα/ἀνῳξα	ἀνεῳγα	ἀνεῳγμαι	ἠνοιχθην	I open
ἀποθνησκω	ἀποθανεομαι	ἀπεθανον	ἀποτεθνηκα			I die
βαινω	βησομαι	ἐβην	βεβηκα	βεβημαι	ἐβηθην	I walk, go
βαλλω	βαλεω	ἐβαλον	βεβληκα	βεβλημαι	ἐβληθην	I throw
γινομαι	γενησομαι	ἐγενομην	γεγονα	γεγενημαι	ἐγενηθην	I become, happen
γινωσκω	γνωσομαι	ἐγνων	ἐγνωκα	ἐγνωσμαι	ἐγνωσθην	I know
γραφω	γραψω	ἐγραψα	γεγραφα	γεγραμμαι	ἐγραφην	I write
δεχομαι	δεξομαι	ἐδεξαμην		δεδεγμαι	ἐδεχηθην	I receive
ἐγειρω	ἐγερεω	ἠγειρα	ἐγηγερκα	ἐγηγερμαι	ἠγερθην	I wake up
ἐρχομαι	ἐλευσομαι	ἠλθον	ἐληλυθα			I go, come
ἐσθιω	φαγομαι /φαγεομαι	ἐφαγον				I eat
εὑρισκω	εὑρησομαι	εὑρον	εὑρηκα	εὑρημαι	εὑρηθην	I find
ἐχω	ἐξω	ἐσχον	ἐσχηκα			I have
θελω Imperf. ἠθελον	θελησω	ἠθελησα				I wish, want
καλεω	καλεσω	ἐκαλεσα	κεκληκα	κεκλημαι	ἐκληθην	I call
κραζω	κραξω	ἐκραξα	κεκραγα	κεκραγμαι	ἐκραχθην	I cry out
κρινω	κρινεω	ἐκρινα	κεκρινα	κεκριμαι	ἐκριθην	I judge
λαμβανω	λημψομαι	ἐλαβον	εἰληφα	εἰλημμαι	ἐλημφθην	I take
λεγω	ἐρεω	εἰπον	εἰρηκα	εἰρημαι	ἐρρηθην /ἐρρεθην	I speak
λειπω	λειψω	ἐλιπον				I leave
μανθανω	μαθησομαι	ἐμαθον	μεμαθηκα			I learn
μιμνησκω	μνησομαι				ἐμνησθην	I recall, remember
ὁραω	ὀψομαι	εἰδον	ἐωρακα /ἐορακα	ἐωραμαι	ὠφθην	I see

πασχω	πεισομαι	ἐπαθον	πεπονθα			I suffer
πειθω	πεισω	ἐπεισα	πεποιθα	πεπεισμαι	ἐπεισθην	I persuade
πινω	πιομαι	ἐπιον	πεπωκα	πεπωμαι	ἐποθην	I drink
πιπτω	πεσεομαι	ἐπεσον	πεπτωκα			I fall
σπειρω	σπερεω	ἐσπειρα	ἐσπαρκα	ἐσπαρμαι	ἐσπαρην	I sow
στελλω	στελεω	ἐστειλα	ἐσταλκα	ἐσταλμαι	ἐσταλην	I send, dispatch
σωζω/σῴζω	σωσω	ἐσωσα	σεσωκα	σεσωσμαι	ἐσωθην	I save
φερω	οἰσω	ἠνεγκον	ἐνηνοχα	ἐνηνεγμαι	ἠνεχθην	I bring
φευγω	φευξομαι	ἐφυγον	πεφευγα			I flee

Principal Parts of Verbs, continued

Part 1	Part 2	Part 3	Part 4	Part 5	Part 6	Meaning
Regular/Vowel-Stem Verbs						
λυω	λυσω	ἐλυσα	λελυκα	λελυμαι	ἐλυθην	I release, set free, untie
Epsilon-contract Verbs						
φιλεω	φιλησω	ἐφιλησα	πεφιληκα	πεφιλημαι	ἐφιληθην	I love, like
Alpha-contract Verbs						
τιμαω	τιμησω	ἐτιμησα	τετιμηκα	τετιμημαι	ἐτιμηθην	I honor
Omicron-contract Verbs						
πληροω	πληρωσω	ἐπληρωσα	πεπληρωκα	πεπληρωμαι	ἐπληρωθην	I fulfill
Double-sigma Verbs						
κηρυσσω	κηρυξω	ἐκηρυξα	κεκηρυχα	κεκηρυγμαι	ἐκηρυχθην	I proclaim
-ιζω Verbs						
νομιζω	νομιεω	ἐνομισα	νενομικα	νενομισμαι	ἐνομισθην	I think, decide
-αζω Verbs						
ἁγιαζω	ἁγιασω	ἡγιασα	ἡγιακα	ἡγιασμαι	ἡγιασθην	I hallow, make holy
Exception: κραζω	κραξω	ἐκραξα	κεκραχα			I cry, cry out

Mi-Verbs

Part 1	Part 2	Part 3	Part 4	Part 5	Part 6	Meaning
διδωμι	δωσω	ἐδωκα	δεδωκα	δεδομαι	ἐδοθην	I give
ἱστημι	στησω	ἐστησα/ ἐστην	ἐστηκα	ἐσταμαι	ἐσταθην	I cause to stand, stand
τιθημι	θησω	ἐθηκα	τεθηκα	τεθειμαι	ἐτεθην	I place
ἀφιημι	ἀφησω	ἀφηκα	ἀφεικα	ἀφειμαι	ἀφεθην	I forgive, send away
ἀπολλυμι	ἀπολεσω	ἀπωλεσα				I ruin (see next entry)
ἀπολλυμαι	ἀπολεομαι	ἀπωλομην	ἀπολωλα			(Mid.) I perish
All the -νυμι Verbs look like this						
δεικνυμι	δειξω	ἐδειξα	δεδειχα	δεδειγμαι	ἐδειχθην	I point out, show

Appendix E: all the forms of "be"

Present Indicative Active	Sing.	Sing. translation	Pl.	Pl. translation
1st	εἰμι	I am	ἐσμεν	we are
2nd	εἶ	you (sing.) are	ἐστε	you (pl.) are
3rd	ἐστι(ν)	he/she/it is, they (sing.) are	εἰσι(ν)	they (pl.) are

Imperfect Indicative Active	Sing.	Sing. translation	Pl.	Pl. translation
1st	ἠμην	I was	ἠμεθα/ἠμεν	we were
2nd	ἠσθα/ἠς	you (sing.) were	ἠτε	you (pl.) were
3rd	ἠν	he/she/it/they (sing.) were	ἠσαν	they (pl.) were

Future Indicative Active	Sing.	Sing. translation	Pl.	Pl. translation
1st	ἐσομαι	I will be	ἐσομεθα	we will be
2nd	ἐσῃ	you (sing.) will be	ἐσεσθε	you (pl.) will be
3rd	ἐσται	he/she/it/they (sing.) will be	ἐσονται	they (pl.) will be

Aorist Indicative Active: use γινομαι or ὑπαρχω.

Present Participle	Masc. Sing.	Fem. Sing.	Neut. Sing.	Masc. Pl.	Fem. Pl.	Neut. Pl.
Nom.	ὠν	οὐσα	ὀν	ὀντες	οὐσαι	ὀντα
Acc.	ὀντα	οὐσαν	ὀν	ὀντας	οὐσας	ὀντα
Gen.	ὀντος	οὐσης	ὀντος	ὀντων	οὐσων	ὀντων
Dat.	ὀντι	οὐσῃ	ὀντι	οὐσι(ν)	οὐσαις	οὐσι(ν)

translate all the above forms as "being"

Present Imperative, "be!"	Sing.	Pl.
2nd	ἰσθι	ἰστε
3rd	ἐστω	ἐστωσαν

Present Infinitive, "to be": εἶναι

Present Subjunctive	Sing.	Sing. translation	Pl.	Pl. translation
1st	ὦ	I may be	ὦμεν	we may be
2nd	ᾖς	you (sing.) may be	ἦτε	you (pl.) may be
3rd	ᾖ	he/she/it/they (sing.) may be	ὦσι(ν)	they (pl.) may be

Present Optative	Sing.	Sing. translation	Pl.	Pl. translation
1st	εἴην	I might be	εἴημεν	we might be
2nd	εἴης	you (sing.) might be	εἴητε	you (pl.) might be
3rd	εἴη	he/she/it/they (sing.) might be	εἴησαν	they (pl.) might be

Appendix F: Vocabulary English-Greek (whole course)

100 = ἑκατον

1000 = χιλιας, χιλιαδος, ὁ/ἡ

abide = μενω

abiding = ὑπομονη, ἡ

able = δυνατος, -η, -ον

about (topic) = περι + Gen.

Abraham = Ἀβρααμ, ὁ

accomplish = τελειοω

according to = κατα + Acc.

account = λογος, ὁ

accuse = κατηγορεω

act = πρασσω

add to = προστιθημι

after = ἐπει

after = μετα + Acc.

after = ὀπισω + Gen.

after all = ἀρα

again = παλιν

against = κατα + Gen.

age = αἰων, αἰωνος, ὁ

all = ἁπας, ἁπασα, ἁπαν; πας, πασα, παν

alone = μονος, -η, -ον

already (with Past) = ἠδη

also = και

although = καιπερ

altar = θυσιαστηριον, το

always = παντοτε

ancestor = πατηρ, πατρος, ἡ

and = και, τε, δε

and I = κἀγω

and if = εἰτε

and not = μηδε, μητε

and not = οὐδε

anger = ὀργη, ἡ

animal = ζῳον, το

announce = ἀπαγγελλω

Anointed = Χριστος, ὁ

apostle = ἀποστολος, ὁ

appear = φαινομαι

appetite = ἐπιθυμια, ἡ

apply = προστιθημι

approach = προσ-ερχομαι

approach = ἐγγιζω + Dat.

appropriately = καλως

argue = διαλογιζομαι

around (place) = περι + Acc.

arrest = κρατεω + Gen.

arrive = παραγινομαι

as, like = ὡς

ascend = ἀναβαινω

ask = αἰτεω, ἐπερωταω, ἐρωταω

assemble = συναγω

assembly = ἐκκλησια, ἡ

at least = γε

at once = εὐθυς

at some time = ποτε

at the side of = παρα + Dat.

away from = ἀπο + Gen.

baptize = βαπτιζω

Barnabas = Βαρναβας, ὁ

be = εἰμι

be a slave to = δουλευω + Dat.

be able = δυναμαι

be about to = μελλω + Infinitive

be afraid = φοβεομαι

be amazed = θαυμαζω

be born = γινομαι

be obligated to = ὀφειλω

be on guard against = φυλασσομαι

be present = ἡκω

be present = παρειμι

be sick = ἀσθενεω

be strong = ἰσχυω

be weak = ἀσθενεω

bear (child) = γενναω

bear = φερω

bear witness = μαρτυρεω

beautiful = καλος, -η, -ον

beautifully = καλως

because = γαρ, διοτι, ἐπει, ὁτι

because of = δια + Acc.

become = γινομαι

before (space) = ἐνωπιον + Gen.

before (time) = προ + Gen.

before = προσθεν + Gen.

beget = γενναω

begin = ἀρχομαι + Gen.

beginning = ἀρχη, ἡ

behind = ὀπισω + Gen.

behold = ἰδου

believe = πιστευω + Dat. or εἰς + Acc.

beloved (family) = φιλος, -η, -ον

beloved = ἀγαπητος, -η, -ον

better = κρεισσων, κρεισσον

big = μεγας, μεγαλη, μεγα

bind = δεω

black = μελας, μελανη, μελαν

blaspheme = βλασφημεω

blessed = μακαριος, -α, -ον

blind = τυφλος, -η, -ον

blood = αἱμα, αἱματος, το

boast = καυχαομαι

boat = πλοιον, το

body = σωμα, σωματος, το

book = βιβλιον, το

both…and = μεν…δε, τε…και, και…και

brag = καυχαομαι

bread = ἀρτος, ὁ

bright = λευκος, -η, -ον

bring = ἀγω

bring to = προσφερω

bring up = ἀναγω

brother = ἀδελφος, ὁ

build = οἰκοδομεω

but = ἀλλα (stronger than δε), δε

buy = ἀγοραζω

by (person) = ὑπο + Gen.

by (thing or place) = ἐν + Dat.

Caesar = Καισαρ, Καισαρος, ὁ

calculate = λογιζομαι

call = καλεω, φωνεω

call out = φωνεω

call upon = ἐπικαλεω

can = δυναμαι

cancel = κατ-αργεω

capability = ἐξουσια, ἡ

capable = δυνατος, -η, -ον

carry = φερω

cast out (often demons) = ἐκ-βαλλω

cause to fall = σκανδαλιζω

change my mind = μετανοεω

chase = διωκω

chief priest = ἀρχιερευς, ἀρχιερεως, ὁ

child = παιδιον, το; παις, παιδος, ὁ; τεκνον, το

Christ = Χριστος, ὁ

church (as organization) = ἐκκλησια, ἡ

circumcision = περιτομη, ἡ

city = πολις, πολεως, ἡ

clean = καθαρος, -α, -ον

cloak = ἱματιον, το

cloud = νεφελη, ἡ

come = ἐρχομαι

come away = ἀπερχομαι

come near = ἐγγιζω + Dat.

come through = διερχομαι

comfort (verb) = παρακαλεω

coming (often the 2nd) = παρουσια, ἡ

command = κελευω

commandment = ἐντολη, ἡ

complete = τελεω, τελειοω

concerning = περι + Gen.

confess = ὁμολογεω

conquer = νικαω

conscience = συνειδησις, συνειδησεως, ἡ

consequently = οὐν

consider = διαλογιζομαι, λογιζομαι, φρονεω

construct = οἰκοδομεω

could = ἀν + Optative

countryside = χωρα, ἡ

covenant = διαθηκη, ἡ

cross (noun) = σταυρος, σταυρου, ὁ

crowd = ὀχλος, ὁ

crucify = σταυροω

cry out = κραζω

cup = ποτηριον, το

custom = νομος, ὁ

darkness = σκοτος, σκοτους, το

daughter = θυγατηρ, θυγατρος, ἡ

David = Δαυιδ, ὁ

day = ἡμερα, ἡ

deacon = διακονη, ἡ; διακονος, ὁ

dead = νεκρος, -α, -ον

deaf = κωφος, -η, -ον

death = θανατος, ὁ

deceive = πλαναω

deliver (a person) = ῥυομαι

demon = δαιμονιον, το

deny = ἀρνεομαι

depart = ὑπ-αγω

descend = καταβαινω

desire = ἐπιθυμια, ἡ

destroy = ἀπολλυμι

devil = διαβολος, ὁ

die = ἀποθνησκω

discern = κρινω

disciple = μαθητης, ὁ

discuss = διαλογιζομαι

disease = ἀσθενεια, ἡ

divorce = ἀπολυω

do = ποιεω, πρασσω

do wrong = ἀδικεω

do wrong = ἀμαρτανω

door = θυρα, ἡ

dress = ἐνδυω

drink (verb) = πινω

dwell in = κατοικεω

each = ἑκαστος, -η, -ον

eagle = ἀετος, ὁ

ear = οὑς, ὡτος, το

earth = γη, ἡ

eat = ἐσθιω

Egypt = Αἰγυπτος, ἡ

eight = ὀκτω

elder = πρεσβυτερος, ὁ

eleven = ἐνδεκα

Elijah = Ἠλιας, ὁ

embrace = ἀσπαζομαι

encourage = παρακαλεω

encouragement = παρακλησις, παρακλησεως, ἡ

end (noun) = τελος, τελους, το

enemy = ἐχθρος, ὁ

enough = ἱκανος, -η, -ον

enslaved child = παιδιον, το; παις, παιδος, ὁ

enslaved person = δουλος, ὁ

enter = εἰσερχομαι

entire = ὁλος, -η, -ον

entrust = παραδιδωμι

err = ἁμαρτανω

especially = μαλιστα

eternity = αἰων, αἰωνος, ὁ

even = και

ever = ἀν + Subjunctive

every = ἁπας, ἁπασα, ἁπαν, πας, πασα, παν

evil = κακος, -η, -ον

exceed = περισσευω

except = πλην

exist = ὑπαρχω

exit = ἐξερχομαι

expect = ἐλπιζω

expectation = ἐλπις, ἐλπιδος, ἡ

experience (verb) = πασχω

eye = ὀφθαλμος, ὁ

face = προσωπον, το

faith = πιστις, πιστεως, ἡ

faithful = πιστος, -η, -ον

fall = πιπτω

fame = ἀκοη, ἡ

family = γενεα, ἡ

father = πατηρ, πατρος, ἡ

fear (noun) = φοβος, ὁ

fear (verb) = φοβεομαι

feast = ἑορτη, ἡ

feel pain = λυπεω

festival = ἑορτη, ἡ

field = ἀγρος, ὁ

fill = πιμπλημι, πληροω

find = εὑρισκω

finish = τελεω

fire = πυρ, πυρος, το

first = πρωτος, -η, -ον

five = πεντε

flee = φευγω

flesh = σαρξ, σαρκος, ἡ

follow = ἀκολουθεω + Dative

foot = πους, ποδος, ὁ

for (starting a clause) = γαρ

for the sake of = ἑνεκα + Gen.

forgive = ἀφιημι

four = τεσσαρες, τεσσαρα

free = ἐλευθερος, -α, -ον

freedom of speech = παρρησια, ἡ

fresh = καινος, -η, -ον; ἐπιουσιος, -α, -ον

friendly = φιλος, -η, -ον

from = ἀπο + Gen., ἐκ/ἐξ + Gen., προς + Gen.

from the side of = παρα + Gen.

from there = ἐκειθεν

from where? = ποθεν

fruit = καρπος, ὁ

fulfill = πιμπλημι, πληροω

furthest = ἐσχατος, -η, -ον

future = λοιπος, -η, -ον; ἐσομενος, -η, -ον

Galilee = Γαλιλαια, ἡ

gather = συναγω

generation = γενεα, ἡ

give = διδωμι

give away = ἀποδιδωμι

give back = ἀποδιδωμι

give freely = χαριζομαι

give thanks to = εὐχαριστεω + Dative

give up = ἀπολυω

gloom = σκοτος, σκοτους, το

glorify = δοξαζω

glory = δοξα, ἡ

go = ἐρχομαι

go = πορευομαι

go along = παρερχομαι

go away = ἀπερχομαι

go down = καταβαινω

go out = ἐκπορευομαι

go through = διερχομαι

go up = ἀναβαινω

go with = συνερχομαι

goal = τελος, τελους, το

God = θεος, ὁ

good = ἀγαθος, -η, -ον

good news = εὐαγγελιον, το

gospel = εὐαγγελιον, το

grace = χαρις, χαριτος, ἡ

grasp = κρατεω + Gen.

gratify = χαριζομαι

greater = μειζων, μειζον

Greek (the) = Ἑλλην, Ἑλληνος, ὁ

Greek (adjective) = Ἑλληνικος, -η, -ον

greet = χαιρω

grieve = κλαιω

grieve = λυπεω

grow = αὐξανω

guard (noun) = φυλακη, ἡ

guard (verb) = φυλασσω

guest = ξενος, ὁ

hallow = ἁγιαζω

hamlet = κωμη, ἡ

hand = χειρ, χειρος (χερ-), ἡ

hand over = παραδιδωμι

handsome = καλος, -η, -ον

happen = γινομαι

happy = μακαριος, -α, -ον

hate = μισεω

have = ἐχω

have come = ἡκω

have mercy = ἐλεεω (note double epsilon)

he, she, it, they = αὐτος, αὐτη, αὐτο

head = κεφαλη, ἡ

heal = θεραπευω, ἱαομαι, σωζω

hear = ἀκουω

heart = καρδια, ἡ

heaven = οὐρανος, ὁ

here = ὡδε

Herod = Ἡρῳδης, ὁ

hesitate = μελλω + Infinitive

hill = ὀρος, ὀρους, το

hinder = κωλυω

hold = ἐχω

holy = ἁγιος, -α, -ον

honor (noun) = τιμη, ἡ

honor (verb) = τιμαω

hope (noun) = ἐλπις, ἐλπιδος, ἡ

hope (verb) = ἐλπιζω

host = ξενος

hour, season = ὡρα, ἡ

house = οἰκια, ἡ, οἰκος, ὁ

household = οἰκος, ὁ

how = πως (first word in clause)

how great = ποσος, -η, -ον

however = πλην

human being (as opposed to animal) = ἀνθρωπος, ὁ

hunger = πειναω

husband = ἀνηρ, ἀνδρος, ὁ

I = ἐγω

identity = προσωπον, το

if = ἐαν + Subjunctive, εἰ + Indicative or Optative

ill = ἀσθενης, -ες

illness = ἀσθενεια, ἡ

image = γραφη, ἡ; εἰκων, εἰκωνος, ἡ

immediately = εὐθυς

impure = ἀκαθαρτος, -η, -ον

in (region) = ἐπι + Gen.

in = ἐν + Dat.

in front of = ἐμπροσθεν + Gen., ἐνωπιον + Gen., προσθεν + Gen.

in future = ὀπισω

in that place = ἐκει

in the time of = ἐπι + Gen.

in this manner = οὑτως

increase = αὐξανω

indeed = ἀληθως, ἀμην

indeed = γε

inform = γνωριζω

inhabit = κατοικεω

injustice = ἀδικια, ἡ

instruct = διδασκω

instruction = διδαχη, ἡ

intelligence = νους, ὁ

into = εἰς + Acc.

Isaac = Ἰσαακ, ὁ

Israel = Ἰσραηλ, ὁ/ἡ

Jacob = Ἰακωβ, ὁ

James = Ἰακωβος, ὁ

Jesus = Ἰησους, ὁ

Jewish = Ἰουδαιος, -α, -ον

John = Ἰωαννης, ὁ

Joseph = Ἰωσηφ, ὁ

joy = χαρα, ἡ

Judaean = Ἰουδαιος, -α, -ον

Judas = Ἰουδας, ὁ

Judea (Roman province) = Ἰουδαια, ἡ

judge = κρινω

judgment = κριμα, κριματος, το; κρισις, κρισεως, ἡ

just = δικαιος, -α, -ον

just as = καθως, ὡσπερ

just now = ἀρτι

justice = δικαιοσυνη, ἡ

justify = δικαιοω

keep = τηρεω

kill = ἀναιρεω, ἀποκτεινω

king = βασιλευς, βασιλεως, ὁ

kingdom = βασιλεια, ἡ

knife = μαχαιρα, ἡ

know (usually person or idea) = γινωσκω

know = οἰδα

knowledge = γνωσις, γνωσεως, ἡ

labor (verb) = κοπιαω

lake = θαλασσα, ἡ

lamb = ἀρνιον, το

land = γη, ἡ

language = γλωσσα, ἡ

larger = μειζων, μειζον

last = ἐσχατος, -η, -ον

law = νομος, ὁ

lead = ἀγω

lead = ἡγεομαι + Dat.

lead astray = πλαναω

leader = ἀρχων, ἀρχοντος, ὁ

learn = μανθανω

least = ἐλαχιστος, -η, -ον

leave = ὑπ-αγω

leave behind = καταλειπω

let go = ἀπολυω, λυω

letter = ἐπιστολη, ἡ

lie (down) = κειμαι

life = ζωη, ἡ

lift up = αἰρω

light = φως, φωτος, το

like (adjective) = ὁμοιος, -α, -ον + Dat.

like (verb) = φιλεω

likewise = ὁμοιως

limb = μελος, μελους, το

little = ὀλιγος, -η, -ον

live = ζαω, περιπατεω

loathe = μισεω

long time = αἰων, αἰωνος, ὁ

look away = ἀποβλεπω

look up = ἀναβλεπω

lord = κυριος, ὁ

love (noun) = ἀγαπη, ἡ

love (verb) = ἀγαπαω

love (verb, family) = φιλεω

loved = φιλος, -η, -ον

lust = ἐπιθυμια, ἡ

make = ποιεω

make clean = καθαριζω

make holy = ἁγιαζω

make known = γνωριζω

make known = φανεροω

make ready = ἑτοιμαζω

make stumble = σκανδαλιζω

male descendant = υἱος, ὁ

man = ἀνηρ, ἀνδρος, ὁ

manage = διακονεω + Dat.

manager = διακονη, ἡ; διακονος, ὁ

many = pl. of πολυς, πολλη, πολυ

marketplace = ἀγορα, ἡ

marry = γαμεω

marvel (at) = θαυμαζω

Mary/Miriam = Μαρια/Μαριαμ, ἡ

master = κυριος, ὁ

meal = τραπεζα, ἡ

member = μελος, μελους, το

mercy = ἐλεος, ἐλεους, το

message = λογος, ὁ

messenger = ἀγγελος, ὁ

Messiah = Χριστος, ὁ

middle = μεσος, -η, -ον

mind = νους, ὁ

ministry = διακονια, ἡ

miracle = δυναμις, δυναμεως, ἡ

mistake = ἁμαρτια, ἡ

mob = ὀχλος, ὁ

monkey = πιθηκος, ὁ

monument = μνημειον, το

more = πλειων, πλειον

Moses = Μωυσης, ὁ

mother = μητηρ, μητρος, ἡ

mountain = ὀρος, ὀρους, το

mouth = στομα, στοματος, το

much = πολυς, πολλη, πολυ

multitude = πληθος, πληθους, το

my = ἐμος, -η, -ον

myself = ἐμαυτος, -η, -ον

mystery = μυστηριον, το

name (noun) = ὀνομα, ὀνοματος, το

name (verb) = ἐπικαλεω

narrative = παραβολη, ἡ

nation = ἐθνος, ἐθνους, το; λαος, ὁ; φυλη, ἡ

near = ἐγγυς + Gen.

nearby = ἐγγυς + Gen.

necessary, it is necessary = δει + Accusative + Infinitive

need = χρεια, ἡ

neither = οὐτε

neither...nor = οὐτε...οὐτε

never = μηποτε (with non-Indicative Verbs), οὐποτε (with Indicative verbs)

new = καινος, -η, -ον; νεος, -α, -ον

next to = προς + Dat.

night = νυξ, νυκτος, ἡ

nine = ἐννεα

no = μηδεις, μηδεμια, μηδεν; οὐδεις, οὐδεμια, οὐδεν

no longer = μηκετι, οὐκετι

no one = μηδεις, μηδεμια, μηδεν; οὐδεις, οὐδεμια, οὐδεν

no way = οὐχι

noble = ἀγαθος, -η, -ον

nor = μηδε, μητε, οὐδε, οὐτε

not (for facts) = οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ

not (modifies non-Indicative verbs) = μη

not yet = μηπω, οὐπω

nothing = μηδεις, μηδεμια, μηδεν; οὐδεις, οὐδεμια, οὐδεν

now = ἠδη, νυν

nullify = κατ-αργεω

object = σκευος, σκευους, το

observe = θεωρεω

of such a kind = οἱος, -α, -ον

of such a kind = τοιουτος, τοιαυτη, τοιουτο

of such size = ὁσος, -η, -ον

of what kind? = ποιος, -α, -ον

offer = προσφερω

on = ἐν + Dat.

on = ἐπι + Dat.

on behalf of = ὑπερ + Gen.

on the basis of = ἐπι + Dat.

on the one hand = μεν

on the other side of = περαν + Gen.

once = ποτε

one = εἱς, μια, ἑν

one another = ἀλληλος, -η, -ον

one's own = ἰδιος, -α, -ον

only = μονον

open = ἀνοιγω

opening = στομα, στοματος, το

opportunity = καιρος, ὁ

oppression = θλιψις, θλιψεως, ἡ

or = ἠ

order = παραγγελλω + Dative

order (verb) = κελευω

order (noun) = κοσμος, ὁ

other = ἀλλος, ἀλλη, ἀλλο; ἑτερος, -α, -ον

out of = ἐκ/ἐξ + Gen.

outer garment = ἱματιον, το

outside of = ἐξω + Gen.

over = ὑπερ + Acc.

overflow (verb) = περισσευω

owe = ὀφειλω

parable = παραβολη, ἡ

part = μελος, μελους, το; μερος, μερους, το

pass by = παρερχομαι

Passover = πασχα, το (indeclinable noun)

patience = ὑπομονη, ἡ

Paul = Παυλος, ὁ

pay attention to = προσεχω + Dative

peace = εἰρηνη, ἡ

people (a) = λαος, ὁ

perish = ἀπολλυμαι

permitted, it is permitted = ἐξεστι + Dative + Infinitive

persecute = διωκω

persecution = θλιψις, θλιψεως, ἡ

persistence = ὑπομονη, ἡ

person = ἀνθρωπος, ὁ

persuade = πειθω

Peter = Πετρος, ὁ

Pharisee (Jewish sect) = Φαρισαιος, ὁ

Philip = Φιλιππος, ὁ

pig = χοιρος, ὁ

Pilate = Πιλατος, ὁ

place (verb) = τιθημι

place upon = ἐπιτιθημι

point out = δεικνυμι

ponder = φρονεω

poor = πτωχος, -η, -ον

portion = μερος, μερους, το

pour out = ἐκχεω

power = δυναμις, δυναμεως, ἡ; ἐξουσια, ἡ

powerful = δυνατος, -η, -ον

praise (verb) = εὐλογεω

pray to = προσευχομαι+ Dat.

prayer = προσευχη, ἡ

prepare = ἑτοιμαζω

presence = παρουσια, ἡ

preserve = τηρεω

prevail = ἰσχυω

prevent = κωλυω

price = τιμη, ἡ

priest = ἱερευς, ἱερεως, ὁ

prison = φυλακη, ἡ

private = ἰδιος, -α, -ον

proclaim = κηρυσσω

proclaim the good news = εὐαγγελιζομαι

promise (verb) = ὁμολογεω

promise (noun) = ἐπαγγελια, ἡ

property = σκευος, σκευους, το (in pl.)

prophesy = προφητευω

prophet = προφητης, ὁ

pure = καθαρος, -α, -ον

purify = καθαριζω

purpose = τελος, τελους, το

pursue = διωκω

put = τιθημι

put on = προστιθημι

put upon = ἐπιτιθημι

quantity = πληθος, πληθους, το

rabbi = ῥαββι, ὁ

raise = αἰρω, ἐγειρω

raise up = ἀνιστημι

rather = μαλλον

read = ἀναγινωσκω

really = ἀμην

reason = λογιζομαι

Rebekah = Ῥεβεκκα, ἡ

rebuke = ἐπιτιμαω

recall = μιμνῃσκομαι

receive = λαμβανω, παραλαμβανω

recline = κειμαι

recognize = ἐπιγινωσκω

recruit = παραλαμβανω

refuse = ἀρνεομαι

regain sight = ἀναβλεπω

rejoice = χαιρω

release = λυω

remain = μενω

remaining = λοιπος, -η, -ον

remember = μιμνῃσκομαι

repent = μετανοεω

reply = ἀποκρινομαι + Dat.

report (verb) = ἀπαγγελλω

report = ἀκοη, ἡ

requirement = χρεια, ἡ

rescue (noun) = σωτηρια, ἡ

rescue (verb) = ῥυομαι

rescuer = σωτηρ, σωτηρος, ὁ

responsibility = διακονια, ἡ

result = καρπος, ὁ

resurrection = ἀναστασις, ἀναστασεως, ἡ

return = ὑποστρεφω

reveal = ἀποκαλυπτω, φανεροω

rich = πλουσιος, -α, -ον

right hand = δεξια, ἡ

righteous = δικαιος, -α, -ον

righteousness = δικαιοσυνη, ἡ

right-handed = δεξιος, -α, -ον

rising again = ἀναστασις, ἀναστασεως, ἡ

road = ὁδος, ἡ

ruler = ἀρχων, ἀρχοντος, ὁ

Sabbath = σαββατον, το

sacrifice = θυσια, ἡ

Salome (Feminine of "Solomon") = Σαλωμη, ἡ

salvation = σωτηρια, ἡ

same = ὁ αὐτος

sanctuary = ναος, ὁ

Sarah = Σαρρα, ἡ

Satan = Σατανας, ὁ

save = σωζω

savior = σωτηρ, σωτηρος, ὁ

say = φημι

saying = ῥημα, ῥηματος, το

scatter = σπειρω, διασπειρω

scribe = γραμματευς, γραμματεως, ὁ

Scripture = γραφη, ἡ

scroll = βιβλιον, το

sea = θαλασσα, ἡ

second = δευτερος

secret = μυστηριον, το

see = βλεπω, θεαομαι, ὁραω

see again = ἀναβλεπω

seed = σπερμα, σπερματος, το

self (not Nom.) = ἑαυτος, -η, -ον

self = αὐτος, αὐτη, αὐτο

send = πεμπω

send away = ἀποστελλω

servant = διακονη, ἡ; διακονος, ὁ; ὑπερετης, ὁ

serve = διακονεω + Dat., δουλευω + Dat.

service = διακονια, ἡ

set beside = παριστημι

seven = ἑπτα

sexual immorality = πορνεια, ἡ

share = μερος, μερους, το

sheep = προβατον, το

shepherd = ποιμην, ποιμενος, ὁ

shine = φαινω

short = μικρος, -α, -ον

short time = μικρον

show = δεικνυμι

show up = παραγινομαι

shrine = ναος, ὁ

sick = ἀσθενης, -ες

sign, signal, miracle = σημειον, το

similar = ὁμοιος, -α, -ον + Dat.

Simon = Σιμων, Σιμωνος, ὁ

sin (noun) = ἁμαρτια, ἡ

sin (verb) = ἁμαρτανω

since= ἐπει

single = εἱς, μια, ἑν

sinner = ἁμαρτωλος, ὁ

sister = ἀδελφη, ἡ

sit (down) = καθημαι

sit down, cause to sit down = καθιζω

six = ἑξ

sky = οὐρανος, ὁ

slanderer = διαβολος, ὁ

slave = δουλος, ὁ

sleep = καθευδω

small = μικρος, -α, -ον; ὀλιγος, -η, -ον

smallest = ἐλαχιστος, -η, -ον

snake = θηριον, το

so = οὑτως

so great = ὁσος, -η, -ον

so that = ὀπως + Subjunctive

so that = ἱνα + Subjunctive

soak = βαπτιζω

soil = γη, ἡ

soldier = στρατιωτης, ὁ

somehow = πως (not first word in clause)

someone = τις, τι (no accent)

something = τις, τι (no accent)

somewhere = που (not first word in clause)

son = υἱος, ὁ

soon (with Future) = ἡδη

soul, life-breath = ψυχη, ἡ

sound = φωνη, ἡ

sow (noun) = σπειρω

speak = λαλεω, λεγω

spirit = δαιμονιον, το; πνευμα, πνευματος, το

spiritual = πνευματικος, -η, -ον

splendor = δοξα, ἡ

stand by = παραγινομαι

stand, cause to stand = ἱστημι

star = ἀστηρ, ἀστερος, ὁ

statue = εἰκων, εἰκωνος, ἡ

stay = μενω

still = ἐτι

stone = λιθος, ὁ

story = λογος, ὁ

strong = ἰσχυρος, -α, -ον

struggle = κοπιαω

student = μαθητης, ὁ

subject (verb) = ὑποτασσω

such = οἱος, -α, -ον

such = τοιουτος, τοιαυτη, τοιουτο

suffer = πασχω

suffering = θλιψις, θλιψεως, ἡ

sufficient = ἱκανος, -η, -ον

summon = προσκαλεομαι

sun = ἡλιος, ὁ

swear = ὀμνυω

sword = μαχαιρα, ἡ

synagogue = συναγωγη, ἡ

table = τραπεζα, ἡ

take = λαμβανω, παραλαμβανω

take an oath = ὀμνυω

take away = ἀναιρεω

take up (a load) = βασταζω

talk = λαλεω, λεγω

task = ἐργον, το

teach = διδασκω

teacher = διδασκαλος, ὁ

teacher = ῥαββι, ὁ

teaching = διδαχη, ἡ

temple = ἱερον, το; ναος, ὁ

tempt = πειραζω

ten = δεκα

tenth = δεκατος

test = πειραζω

testify = μαρτυρεω

testimony = μαρτυρια, ἡ

than = ἡ

that (= which) = ὁς, ἥ, ὅ

that (introducing idea or someone else's words) = ὁτι

that = ἐκεινος, ἐκεινη, ἐκεινο

the former = ἐκεινος, ἐκεινη, ἐκεινο

the latter = οὑτος, αὑτη, τουτο

then = ἀρα, τοτε

there = ἐκει

therefore = διο, οὑν

think good = δοκεω

think over = φρονεω

third = τριτος

thirst = διψαω

this = οὑτος, αὑτη, τουτο

three = τρεις, τρια

throne = θρονος, ὁ

through = δια + Gen.

throw = βαλλω

thus = οὑτως

tie = δεω

time = καιρος, ὁ; χρονος, ὁ

to the side of = παρα + Acc.

to, toward = προς + Acc.

today = σημερον

together with = συν + Dat.

tomb = μνημειον, το

tongue = γλωσσα, ἡ

touch = ἁπτομαι + Gen.

travel = πορευομαι

tree = δενδρον, το

tribe = γενος, γενους, το

tribe = φυλη, ἡ

true = ἀληθης, -ες; ἀληθινος, -η, -ον

truly = ἀληθως, ἀμην

truth = ἀληθεια, ἡ

try = πειραζω

Tryphosa = Τρυφωσα, ἡ

turn back = ἐπιστρεφω, ὑποστρεφω

twelve = δωδεκα

unbelieving = ἀπιστος, -η, -ον

unclean = ἀκαθαρτος, -η, -ον

under = ὑπο + Acc.

understand = συνιημι

unfaithful = ἀπιστος, -η, -ον

unjust = ἀδικος, -ον

unrighteous = ἀδικος, -ον

until = ἀχρι + Gen.; ἑως + Gen.

unveil = ἀποκαλυπτω

up = ἀνα + Acc., ἀν(α) as prefix

upon = ἐπι + Acc.

value (noun) = τιμη, ἡ

value (verb) = τιμαω

vessel = σκευος, σκευους, το

view = θεαομαι

village = κωμη, ἡ

vineyard = ἀμπελων, ἀμπελωνος, ὁ

vision = ὀφθαλμος, ὁ

voice = φωνη, ἡ

wage = μισθος, μισθου, ὁ

wake up = ἐγειρω

walk = περιπατεω

want = βουλομαι, θελω

wash = νιπτω

watch = βλεπω, θεωρεω

water = ὑδωρ, ὑδατος, το

way = ὁδος, ἡ

we = ἡμεις

weakness = ἀσθενεια, ἡ

welcome = δεχομαι

well = εὐ

what? = τίς, τί (note accents)

when = ὁτε

whenever = ὁταν + Subjunctive

where = ὁπου

where = οὑ (note breathing!)

where? = που (first word in the clause)

whether = εἰ

whether…or = εἰτε…εἰτε

which (not in questions) = ὁς, ἥ, ὅ

which? = τίς, τί (note accents)

white = λευκος, -η, -ον

who (not in questions) = ὁς, ἥ, ὅ

who? = τίς, τί (note accents)

whoever = ὁστις, ὁς ἀν

whole = ὁλος, -η, -ον; πας, πασα, παν

wicked = πονηρος, -α, -ον

widow = χηρα, ἡ

wife = γυνη, γυναικος, ἡ

wild animal = θηριον, το

wilderness = ἐρημος, ἡ

will (legal) = διαθηκη, ἡ

will = θελημα, θεληματος, το

win = νικαω

wind = ἀνεμος, ὁ

wine = οἰνος, ὁ

wisdom = σοφια, ἡ

wish = βουλομαι, θελω

with (person) = μετα + Gen.; συν + Dat.

with (thing) = ἐν + Dat

with the result that = ὡστε

without = χωρις + Gen.

witness (person) = μαρτυς, μαρτυρος, ὁ

woe to = οὐαι + Dat.!

woman = γυνη, γυναικος, ἡ

wonder (at) = θαυμαζω

word = λογος, ὁ; ῥημα, ῥηματος, το

work (noun) = ἐργον, το

work (verb) = ἐργαζομαι

world = κοσμος, ὁ

worse = χειρων, χειρον

worship (verb) = προσκυνεω + Dative

worthy = ἀξιος, -α, -ον

would = ἀν + Optative

wrath = ὀργη, ἡ

wretched = πτωχος, -η, -ον

write = γραφω

writing = γραφη, ἡ

wrongness = ἀδικια, ἡ

year = ἐτος, ἐτους, το

yes = ναι

yet = ἐτι, πλην

you (pl.) = ὑμεις

you (sing.) = συ

young = νεος, -α, -ον

your (sing.) = σος, -η, -ον

yourself = σεαυτος, -η, -ον

Appendix G: Vocabulary Greek-English (whole course)

Ἀβρααμ, ὁ = Abraham

ἀγαθος, -η, -ον = good, noble

ἀγαπαω = I love

ἀγαπη, ἡ = love

ἀγαπητος, -η, -ον = beloved

ἀγγελος, ὁ = messenger

ἁγιαζω = I make holy, hallow

ἁγιος, -α, -ον = holy

ἀγορα, ἡ = marketplace

ἀγοραζω = I buy

ἀγρος, ὁ = field

ἀγω = I lead, bring (2nd Aorist)

ἀδελφη, ἡ = sister

ἀδελφος, ὁ = brother

ἀδικεω = I do wrong

ἀδικια, ἡ = injustice, wrongness

ἀδικος, -ον = unjust, unrighteous

ἀετος, ὁ = eagle

Αἰγυπτος, ἡ = Egypt

αἱμα, αἱματος, το = blood

αἱρω = I lift up, raise

αἰτεω = I ask

αἰων, αἰωνος, ὁ = age, long time, eternity

ἀκαθαρτος, -η, -ον = unclean, impure

ἀκοη, ἡ = fame, report

ἀκολουθεω = I follow + Dative

ἀκουω = I hear

ἀληθεια, ἡ = truth

ἀληθης, -ες = true

ἀληθινος, -η, -ον = true

ἀληθως = truly, indeed (same as ἀμην)

ἀλλα = but (stronger than δε)

ἀλληλος, -η, -ον = one another

ἀλλος, ἀλλη, ἀλλο = other

ἀμαρτανω = I sin, err, do wrong (2nd Aorist)

ἀμαρτια, ἡ = sin, mistake

ἀμαρτωλος, ὁ = sinner

ἀμην = truly, really, indeed

ἀμπελων, ἀμπελωνος, ὁ = vineyard

ἀν = would, could, ever (depends on use)

ἀνα + Acc. = up; (as prefix) up, again

ἀναβαινω = I go up, ascend

ἀναβλέπω = I see again, I regain my eyesight; (rarely) I look up

ἀναγινωσκω = I read (Root Aorist)

ἀναγω = I bring up

ἀναιρεω = I take away, kill

ἀναστασις, ἀναστασεως, ἡ = resurrection, rising again

ἀνεμος, ὁ = wind

ἀνηρ, ἀνδρος, ὁ = man, husband

ἀνθρωπος, ὁ = person, human being (as opposed to animal)

ἀνιστημι = I raise up

ἀνοιγω = I open, open up

ἀξιος, -α, -ον = worthy

ἀπαγγελλω = report, announce

ἀπας, ἀπασα, ἀπαν = every, all (strengthened form of above word)

ἀπερχομαι = I come, go away (2nd Aorist)

ἀπιστος, -η, -ον = unfaithful, unbelieving

ἀπο + Gen. = from, away from

ἀποβλεπω = I look away

ἀποδιδωμι = I give away, give back

ἀποθνῃσκω = I die (2ⁿᵈ Aorist)

ἀποκαλυπτω = I unveil, reveal

ἀποκρινομαι = I reply + Dative

ἀποκτεινω = I kill

ἀπολλυμι = I destroy, (in Middle) I perish

ἀπολυω = I divorce, I let go

ἀποστελλω = I send

ἀποστολος = apostle

ἀποστολος, ὁ = apostle, one sent

ἁπτομαι = I touch + Gen.

ἀρα = so, then, after all; (introduces a question)

ἀρνεομαι = I deny, refuse

ἀρνιον, το = lamb

ἀρτι = now, just now

ἀρτος, ὁ = bread

ἀρχη, ἡ = beginning

ἀρχιερευς, ἀρχιερεως, ὁ = chief priest

ἀρχομαι = I begin + Gen.

ἀρχων, ἀρχοντος, ὁ = leader, ruler

ἀσθενεια, ἡ = illness, weakness, disease

ἀσθενεω = I am sick, am weak

ἀσθενης, -ες = ill, sick

ἀσπαζομαι = I embrace

ἀστηρ, ἀστερος, ὁ = star

αὐξανω = I grow, increase

αὐτος, αὐτη, αὐτο = he, she, it, they; -self; the same

ἀφιημι = I forgive

ἀχρι + Gen. = until

βαινω = I walk (Root Aorist)

βαλλω = I throw (2nd Aorist)

βαπτιζω = I baptize, I soak

Βαρναβας, ὁ = Barnabas

βασιλεια, ἡ = kingdom

βασιλευς, βασιλεως, ὁ = king

βασταζω = I take up (a load)

βιβλιον, το = book, scroll

βλασφημεω = I blaspheme

βλεπω = I see, watch

βουλομαι = I wish

Γαλιλαια, ἡ = Galilee

γαμεω (again) = I marry

γαμεω = I marry

γαρ = for, because

γε = indeed, at least

γενεα, ἡ = generation, family

γενναω = I bear, beget (depends on whether the subject is male or female)

γενος, γενους, το = people, tribe

γη, ἡ = earth, land, soil

γινομαι = I am born, become, happen (2nd Aorist)

γινωσκω = I know (usually person or idea) (Root Aorist)

γλωσσα, ἡ = tongue, language

γνωριζω = I inform, make known

γνωσις, γνωσεως, ἡ = knowledge

γραμματευς, γραμματεως, ὁ = scribe, clerk

γραφη, ἡ = writing, Scripture

γραφω = I write

γυνη, γυναικος, ἡ = woman, wife

δαιμονιον, το = demon, spirit

Δαυιδ, ὁ = David

δε = and, but

δει = it is necessary + Accusative + Infinitive; Future is δεησει, Imperfect is ἐδει

δεικνυμι = I point out, show

δεκα = ten

δεκατος = tenth

δενδρον, το = tree

δεξια, ἡ = right hand

δεξιος, -α, -ον = right-handed

δευτερος = second

δεχομαι = I welcome

δεω = I tie, bind

δια + Acc. = because of; + Gen. = through

διαβολος, ὁ = devil, slanderer

διαθηκη, ἡ = covenant, legal will

διακονεω = I manage, I serve + Dat.

διακονη, ἡ = manager, servant, deacon[6]

διακονια, ἡ = service, ministry, area of responsibility

διακονος, ὁ = manager, servant, deacon

διαλογιζομαι = I consider, argue, discuss

διδασκαλος, ὁ = teacher

διδασκω = I teach, instruct

διδαχη, ἡ = teaching, instruction

διδωμι = I give

---

[6] The King James Bible translated this word as "deacon" when used for a man, but as "servant" when used for a woman.

διερχομαι = I come, go through (2ⁿᵈ Aorist)

δικαιος, -α, -ον = righteous, just

δικαιοσυνη, ἡ = righteousness, justice

δικαιοω = I justify

διο = therefore

διοτι = because

διψαω = I thirst

διωκω = I pursue, chase, persecute

δοκεω = I think good

δοξα, ἡ = glory, splendor

δοξαζω = I glorify

δουλευω = I am a slave, I serve + Dat.

δουλος, ὁ = enslaved person, slave

δυναμαι = I can, am able

δυναμις, δυναμεως, ἡ = power, miracle

δυνατος, -η, -ον = able, capable, powerful

δωδεκα = twelve

ἐαν + Subjunctive = if OR same as ἀν

ἐαυτος, -η, -ον = himself, herself, themself, itself, ourselves, yourselves

ἐγγιζω = I approach, come near + Dat.

ἐγγυς + Gen. = near, nearby

ἐγειρω = I raise, wake up

ἐγω, ἡμεις = I, we

ἐθνος, ἐθνους, το = nation

εἰ = if (no accent!), whether

εἰκων, εἰκωνος, ἡ = image, statue

εἰμι = I am

εἰρηνη, ἡ = peace

εἰς + Acc. = into

εἰς, μια, ἐν = one, a single

εἰσερχομαι = I enter (2nd Aorist)

εἰτε = and if

εἰτε…εἰτε = whether…or

ἐκ/ἐξ + Gen. = from, out of

ἐκαστος, -η, -ον = each

ἑκατον = 100

ἐκ-βαλλω = I cast out (often demons) (2nd Aorist)

ἐκει = there, in that place

ἐκειθεν = from there

ἐκεινος, ἐκεινη, ἐκεινο = that, the former

ἐκκλησια, ἡ = assembly, church (as organization)

ἐκπορευομαι = I go out

ἐκχεω = I pour out

ἐλαχιστος, -η, -ον = smallest, least

ἐλεεω = I have mercy (note double epsilon)

ἐλεος, ἐλεους, το = mercy (originally had a digamma, ἐλε⊏ος)

ἐλευθερος, -α, -ον = free, not enslaved

Ἑλλην, Ἑλληνος, ὁ = (the) Greek

Ἑλληνικος, -η, -ον = Greek (adjective)

ἐλπιζω = I hope, expect

ἐλπις, ἐλπιδος, ἡ = hope, expectation

ἐμαυτος, -η, -ον = myself

ἐμος, -η, -ον = my

ἐμπροσθεν + Gen. = in front of

ἐν + Dat. = in, on, by, with

ἐνδεκα = eleven

ἐνδυω = I dress (with clothing)

ἐνεκα + Gen. = for the sake of

ἐννεα = nine

ἐντολη, ἡ = commandment

ἐνωπιον + Gen = in front of, before (space)

ἑξ = six

ἐξερχομαι = I exit (2nd Aorist)

ἐξεστι = it is permitted + Dative + Infinitive (ἐξ + ἐστι, 3rd sing. of εἰμι); Fut. ἐξεσται, Imperf. ἐξην

ἐξουσια, ἡ = power, capability

ἐξω + Gen. = outside of

ἑορτη, ἡ = feast, festival

ἐπαγγελια, ἡ = promise

ἐπει = since, because, after

ἐπερωταω = I ask someone (Acc.) for something (Acc.)

ἐπι + Acc. = upon; + Gen. = on, in (region), in the time of; + Dat. = in, on, on the basis of

ἐπιγινωσκω = I recognize (Root Aorist)

ἐπιθυμια, ἡ = desire, lust, appetite

ἐπικαλεω = I call upon, I name

ἐπιστολη, ἡ = letter

ἐπιστρεφω = I turn (back)

ἐπιτιθημι = I put, place upon

ἐπιτιμαω = I rebuke

ἑπτα = seven

ἐργαζομαι = I work

ἐργον, το = work, task

ἐρημος, ἡ = wilderness

ἐρχομαι = I come, go (2nd Aorist)

ἐρωταω = I ask someone (Acc.) for something (Acc.)

ἐσθιω = I eat (2nd Aorist)

ἐσχατος, -η, -ον = last, furthest

ἑτερος, -α, -ον = other, the other

ἔτι = yet, still

ἑτοιμαζω = I make ready, prepare

ἔτος, ἔτους, το = year

εὐ = well

εὐαγγελιζομαι = I proclaim the good news

εὐαγγελιον, το = good news, gospel

εὐθυς = immediately, at once

εὐλογεω = I praise

εὑρισκω = I find (2nd Aorist)

εὐχαριστεω = I give thanks to + Dative

ἐχθρος, ὁ = enemy

ἔχω = I have, hold (2nd Aorist)

ἑως + Gen. = until

ζαω = I live (but most of its contractions result in η rather than α, ὁ κυριος ζη = the Lord lives)

ζητεω = I seek

ζωη, ἡ = life

ζῳον, το = animal

ἤ = or, than (note smooth breathing)

ἡγεομαι = I lead + Dat.

ἤδη = already (with Past), now (with Present), soon (with Future)

ἥκω = I have come, I am present

Ἠλιας, ὁ = Elijah

ἥλιος, ὁ = sun

ἡμερα, ἡ = day

Ἡρῳδης, ὁ = Herod

θαλασσα, ἡ = sea, lake

θανατος, ὁ = death

θαυμαζω = I marvel, am amazed, wonder (at)

θεαομαι = I see, view

θελημα, θεληματος, το = will

θελω = I want (Imperf. ἠθελον, Fut. θελησω, Aor. ἠθελησα)

θεος, ὁ = God, god

θεραπευω = I heal

θεωρεω = I watch, observe

θηριον, το = wild animal

θλιψις, θλιψεως, ἡ = suffering, oppression, persecution

θρονος, ὁ = throne

θυγατηρ, θυγατρος, ἡ = daughter

θυρα, ἡ = door

θυσια, ἡ = sacrifice

θυσιαστηριον, το = altar, place for sacrifice

Ἰακωβ/ Ἰακωβος, ὁ = Jacob in Hebrew Scriptures, James in New Testament

Ἰακωβος, ὁ = James

ἰαομαι = I heal

ἰδιος, -α, -ον = private, one's own

ἰδου = behold, look! (derived from the 2nd Aorist of ὁραω, εἰδον)

ἰερευς, ἰερεως, ὁ = priest

ἰερον, το = temple

Ἰησους, ὁ = Jesus

ἰκανος, -η, -ον = sufficient, enough

ἰματιον, το = cloak, outer garment

ἰνα + Subjunctive = so that

Ἰουδαια, ἡ = Judea (Roman province)

Ἰουδαιος, -α, -ον = Jewish, Judaean

Ἰουδας, ὁ = Judas

Ἰσαακ, ὁ = Isaac

Ἰσραηλ, ὁ/ἡ = Israel (Masc. for λαος, Fem. for γη)

ἰστημι = I cause to stand, (in Middle) stand

ἰσχυρος, -α, -ον = strong

ἰσχυω = I am strong, I prevail

Ἰωαννης, ὁ = John

Ἰωσηφ, ὁ = Joseph

κἀγω = and I

καθαριζω = I purify, make clean, declare clean

καθαρος, -α, -ον = clean, pure

καθευδω = I sleep

καθημαι = I sit (down)

καθιζω = I cause to sit down, I sit down

καθως = just as

και = and, also, even

καινος, -η, -ον = new, fresh

καιπερ = although + Participle

καιρος, ὁ = time, opportunity

Καισαρ, Καισαρος, ὁ = Caesar

κακος, -η, -ον = evil

καλεω = I call

καλος, -η, -ον = beautiful, handsome

καλως = appropriately, well

καρδια, ἡ = heart

καρπος, ὁ = fruit, result

κατα + Acc. = according to; + Gen. = against

καταβαινω = I go down, descend (Root Aorist)

καταλειπω = I leave behind (2nd Aorist)

κατ-αργεω = I cancel, nullify

κατηγορεω = I accuse

κατοικεω = I dwell in, I inhabit

καυχαομαι = I boast, brag

κειμαι = I lie, recline

κελευω = I order, command

κεφαλη, ἡ = head

κηρυσσω = I proclaim

κλαιω = I grieve, pain

κοπιαω = I labor, struggle

κοσμος, ὁ = world, order

κραζω = I cry, I cry out (Future κραξω, Aorist ἐκραξα)

κρατεω = I grasp, arrest + Gen.

κρεισσων, κρεισσον = better

κριμα, κριματος, το = judgement

κρινω = I judge, discern

κρισις, κρισεως, ἡ = judgment

κυριος, ὁ = lord, master

κωλυω = I prevent, hinder

κωμη, ἡ = village, hamlet

κωφος, -η, -ον = deaf

λαλεω = I speak, talk

λαμβανω = I take, receive (2nd Aorist)

λαος, ὁ = people, nation

λεγω = I speak, talk (2nd Aorist)

λευκος, -η, -ον = white, bright

λιθος, ὁ = stone

λογιζομαι = I reason, calculate, consider

λογος, ὁ = word, account, story, order, message

λοιπος, -η, -ον = remaining, future

λυπεω = I grieve, feel pain

λυω = I release, let go

μαθητης, ὁ = student, apprentice

μακαριος, -α, -ον = blessed, happy

μαλιστα = especially

μαλλον = rather

μανθανω = I learn (2nd Aorist)

Μαρια/Μαριαμ, ἡ = Mary/Miriam

μαρτυρεω = I bear witness, testify

μαρτυρια, ἡ = testimony, witness

μαρτυς, μαρτυρος, ὁ = witness

μαχαιρα, ἡ = knife, sword

μεγας, μεγαλη, μεγα = big

μειζων, μειζον = larger, greater

μελλω = I am about to + Infinitive, I hesitate

μελος, μελους, το = limb, member, part

μεν = on the one hand, both

μενω = I stay, remain, abide

μερος, μερους, το = part, share, portion

μεσος, -η, -ον = middle

μετα + Acc. = after; + Gen. = with (person)

μετανοεω = I repent, change my mind

μη = not (modifies non-Indicative verbs)

μηδε = and not, nor

μηδεις, μηδεμια, μηδεν = no one, nothing, no

μηκετι = no longer

μηποτε = never (with non-Indicative verbs)

μητε = and not, nor

μητηρ, μητρος, ἡ = mother

μικρον = a little, a short time

μικρος, -α, -ον = small, short

μιμνησκομαι = I remember, recall

μισεω = I hate, loathe

μισθος, μισθου, ὁ = wage

μνημειον, το = tomb, monument

μονος, -η, -ον = alone, only

μυστηριον, το = mystery, secret

Μωυσης, ὁ = Moses, prophet in Hebrew Scriptures (Μωυσης, Μωυσην, Μωυσεως, Μωυσει/Μωυσῃ)

ναι = yes

ναος, ὁ = temple, sanctuary, shrine

νεκρος, -α, -ον = dead

νεος, -α, -ον = new, young

νεφελη, ἡ = cloud, mist

νικαω = I win, conquer

νιπτω = I wash

νομος, ὁ = law, custom

νους, ὁ = mind, intelligence (νους, νουν, νοος, νοι)

νυν = now

νυξ, νυκτος, ἡ = night

ξενος, ὁ = guest, host

ὁδος, ἡ = road

οιδα = I know (Perfect with Present Meaning)

οἰκια, ἡ = house

οἰκοδομεω = I build, construct

οἰκος, ὁ = household, house

οἰνος, ὁ = wine

οἰος, -α, -ον = such, of such a kind

ὁκτω = eight

ὁλιγος, -η, -ον = small, little

ὁλος, -η, -ον = whole, entire

ὁμνυω = I swear, take an oath

ὁμοιος, -α, -ον = similar, like + Dat.

ὁμοιως = likewise

ὁμολογεω = I promise, confess

ὀνομα, ὀνοματος, το = name

ὀπισω + Gen. = behind, after; Adverb: in future (we can't see the future, so it is behind us)

ὁπου = where

ὁπως + Subjunctive = so that

ὁραω = I see (now we know the Present and Imperfect, 2nd Aorist is εἰδον)

ὀργη, ἡ = anger, wrath

ὀρος, ὀρους, το = mountain, hill

ὁς, ἥ, ὅ = who, which, that (not in questions)

ὁσος, -η, -ον = so great, so many, of such size

ὁστις = who, whoever

ὁταν + Subjunctive = whenever

ὁτε = when

ὁτι = because, that (introducing idea or someone else's words)

ὁτι = because, that, (opening quote mark)

οὑ = where (note breathing!)

οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ = not (for facts)[7]

οὐαι = woe to + Dat.!

οὐδε = and not

οὐδεις, οὐδεμια, οὐδεν = no one, nothing, no

οὐκετι = no longer

οὐν = consequently, therefore

ουποτε = never (with Indicative verbs)

οὐπω = not yet

οὐρανος, ὁ = heaven, sky

---

[7] οὐ before consonants, οὐκ before smooth breathing, οὐχ before rough breathing.

οὐς, ὠτος, το = ear

οὐτε = neither

οὐτε…οὐτε = neither…nor

οὑτος, αὐτη, τουτο = this, the latter

οὑτως = thus, in this manner

οὐχι = no, not, no way

ὀφειλω = I owe, am obligated to

ὀφθαλμος, ὁ = eye, vision

ὀχλος, ὁ = crowd, mob

παιδιον, το = child, enslaved child

παις, παιδος, ὁ = child, enslaved child

παλιν = again, anew

παντοτε = always, all the time

παρα + Acc. = to the side of; + Gen. = from the side of; + Dat. = at the side of

παραβολη, ἡ = parable, narrative

παραγγελλω = order + Dative

παραγινομαι = I arrive, stand by, show up (2nd Aorist)

παραδιδωμι = I hand over, entrust

παρακαλεω = I encourage, comfort

παρακλησις, παρακλησεως, ἡ = encouragement

παραλαμβανω = I take, receive, recruit (2nd Aorist)

παρειμι = I am present

παρερχομαι = I pass by, go along

παριστημι = I set beside

παρουσια, ἡ = presence, coming

παρρησια, ἡ = freedom of speech

πας, πασα, παν = every, all, whole (not as in "I feel whole again", but as in "the whole time")

πασχα, το (indeclinable noun) = Passover

πασχω = I suffer, experience (2nd Aorist)

πατηρ, πατρος, ἡ = father, ancestor

Παυλος, ὁ = Paul

πειθω = I persuade

πειναω = I hunger

πειραζω = I tempt, test, try

πεμπω = I send

πεντε = five

περαν + Gen. = on the other side of

περι + Acc. = around (place); + Gen. = about (topic), concerning

περιπατεω = I walk, live

περισσευω = I exceed, overflow

περιτομη, ἡ = circumcision, advocates of circumcision

Πετρος, ὁ = Peter

πιθηκος, ὁ = monkey

Πιλατος, ὁ = Pilate

πιμπλημι = I fill, fulfill

πινω = I drink (2nd Aorist)

πιπτω = I fall (2nd Aorist)

πιστευω = I believe + Dat. or with the Preposition εἰς followed by an Accusative

πιστις, πιστεως, ἡ = faith

πιστος, -η, -ον = faithful

πλαναω = I deceive, lead astray

πλειων, πλειον = more

πληθος, πληθους, το = multitude, large amount, quantity

πλην = however, yet, except

πληροω = I fulfill, fill, complete (same as πιμπλημι above)

πλοιον, το = boat, skiff

πλουσιος, -α, -ον = rich

πνευμα, πνευματος, το = spirit, wind

πνευματικος, -η, -ov = spiritual

ποθεν; = from where? how?

ποιεω = I make, do

ποιμην, ποιμενος, ὁ = shepherd

ποιος, -α, -ov = of what kind?

πολις, πολεως, ἡ = city

πολυς, πολλη, πολυ = much, many

πονηρος, -α, -ov = wicked

πορευομαι = I go, travel

πορνεια, ἡ = sexual immorality

ποσος, -η, -ov = how great?

ποτε = once, at some time

ποτηριον, το = cup

που = Where? (always at the beginning of the question)

πους, ποδος, ὁ = foot

πρασσω = I do, act

πρεσβυτερος, ὁ = old person, elder

προ + Gen. = before (time)

προβατον, το = sheep (lit. 'front-walker')

προς + Acc. = to, toward; + Gen. = from; + Dat. = next to

προσ-ερχομαι = I approach

προσευχη, ἡ = prayer

προσευχομαι = I pray to + Dat.

προσεχω = I pay attention to + Dative (2nd Aorist)

προσθεν + Gen. = in front of, before; Adverb: in the past (but we can see the past, so it is in front of us)

προσκαλεομαι = I summon

προσκυνεω = I worship + Dative

προστιθημι = I put, add

προσφερω = I bring to, offer (2nd Aorist)

προσωπον, το = face, identity

προφητευω = I prophesy

προφητης, ὁ = prophet

πρωτος = first

πτωχος, -η, -ον = poor, wretched

πυρ, πυρος, το = fire

πως = How? (always at the beginning of the question)

ῥαββι, ὁ = rabbi, teacher

Ῥεβεκκα, ἡ = Rebekah

ῥημα, ῥηματος, το = word, saying

ῥυομαι = I rescue, deliver (Imperf. ἐρρυομην, note double rho after PIA

σαββατον, το = Sabbath (often plural because it wraps from one day to another)

Σαλωμη, ἡ = Salome (Feminine of "Solomon")

σαρξ, σαρκος, ἡ = flesh

Σαρρα, ἡ = Sarah

Σατανας, ὁ = Satan

σεαυτος, -η, -ον = yourself

σημειον, το = sign, signal, miracle

σημερον = today

Σιμων, Σιμωνος, ὁ = Simon, "Snubby"

σκανδαλιζω = I cause to fall, make stumble

σκευος, σκευους, το = object, vessel, (in pl.) property

σκοτος, σκοτους, το = darkness, gloom

σος, -η, -ον = your

σοφια, ἡ = wisdom

σπειρω = I sow, scatter

σπερμα, σπερματος, το = seed

σταυρος, σταυρου, ὁ = cross

σταυροω = I crucify

στομα, στοματος, το = mouth, opening

στρατιωτης, ὁ = soldier

συ, ὑμεις = you (sing.), you (pl.)

συν + Dat. = with (person), together with

συναγω = I gather, assemble

συναγωγη, ἡ = synagogue

συνειδησις, συνειδησεως, ἡ = conscience

συνερχομαι = I go with (2nd Aorist)

συνιημι = I understand

σωζω = I save, preserve

σωμα, σωματος, το = body

σωτηρ, σωτηρος, ὁ = savior, rescuer

σωτηρια, ἡ = salvation, rescue

τε = and

τε...και = both...and

τεκνον, το = child

τελειοω = I accomplish, complete

τελεω = I complete, finish

τελος, τελους, το = end, goal, purpose

τεσσαρες, τεσσαρα = four

τηρεω = I keep, preserve

τιθημι = I put, place

τιμαω = I value, honor

τιμη, ἡ = honor, value, price

τις, τι = (no accent) someone, something

τίς, τί = (note accents) who? what? which?

τοιουτος, τοιαυτη, τοιουτο = such, of such a kind

τοτε = then

τραπεζα, ἡ = table, meal

τρεις, τρια = three (for declension see previous chapter)

τριτος = third

Τρυφωσα, ἡ = Tryphosa

τυφλος, -η, -ον = blind

ὑδωρ, ὑδατος, το = water

υἱος, ὁ = son, male descendant

ὑπ-αγω = I depart, leave

ὑπαρχω = I exist

ὑπερ + Acc. = over; + Gen. = on behalf of

ὑπερετης, ὁ = servant

ὑπο + Acc. = under; + Gen = by (person)

ὑπομονη, ἡ = patience, persistence, abiding

ὑποστρεφω = I turn back, return

ὑποτασσω = I subject someone (Acc.) to something (Dat.)

φαινω = I shine, (in Middle) appear

φανεροω = I reveal, make known

Φαρισαιος, ὁ = Pharisee (Jewish sect)

φερω = I carry, bear (English "ferry") (2nd Aorist)

φευγω = I flee (2nd Aorist)

φημι = I say

φιλεω = I like, love

Φιλιππος, ὁ = Philip

Φιλιππος, ὁ = Philip

φιλος, -η, -ον = friendly, loved, beloved

φοβεομαι = I fear, am afraid

φοβος, ὁ = fear

φρονεω = I ponder, consider, think over

φυλακη, ἡ = prison, guard

φυλασσω = I guard, (in Middle) am on guard against + Acc.

φυλη, ἡ = tribe, nation

φωνεω = I call, call out

φωνη, ἡ = voice, sound

φως, φωτος, το = light

χαιρω = I rejoice, greet

χαρα, ἡ = joy

χαριζομαι = I give freely, gratify

χαρις, χαριτος, ἡ = grace

χειρ, χειρος (χερ-), ἡ = hand

χειρων, χειρον = worse

χηρα, ἡ = widow

χιλιας, χιλιαδος, ὁ/ἡ = 1000

χοιρος, ὁ = pig

χρεια, ἡ = need, requirement

Χριστος, ὁ = Christ, Messiah, Annointed

χρονος, ὁ = time

χωρα, ἡ = countryside, esp. surrouding a city

χωρις + Gen. = without

ψυχη, ἡ = soul, life-breath

ὡδε = here

ὡρα, ἡ = hour, season

ὡς = as, like

ὡσπερ = just as

ὡστε = with the result that + Infinitive or entire clause

Appendix H: All the Verb Forms

Rather than show you all the endings disconnected from an actual verb, here are all the forms of λυω, the most regular verb in Greek, arranged by the order in which we learn the tenses and moods, but not the voices.

Indicatives:

	Present Indicative Active		**Present Indicative Middle/Passive**	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	λυω	λυομεν	λυομαι	λυομεθα
2	λυεις	λυετε	λυῃ	λυεσθε
3	λυει	λυουσι(ν)	λυεται	λυονται

	Imperfect Indicative Active		**Imperfect Indicative Middle/Passive**	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	ἐλυον	ἐλυομεν	ἐλυομην	ἐλυομεθα
2	ἐλυες	ἐλυετε	ἐλυου	ἐλυεσθε
3	ἐλυε(ν)	ἐλυον	ἐλυετο	ἐλυοντο

	Future Indicative Active		**Future Indicative Middle**		**Future Indicative Passive**	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	λυσω	λυσομεν	λυσομαι	λυσομεθα	λυθησομαι	λυθησομεθα
2	λυσεις	λυσετε	λυσῃ	λυσεσθε	λυθησῃ	λυθησεσθε
3	λυσει	λυσουσι(ν)	λυσεται	λυσονται	λυθησεται	λυθησονται

	Aorist Indicative Active		**Aorist Indicative Middle**		**Aorist Indicative Passive**	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	ἐλυσα	ἐλυσαμεν	ἐλυσαμην	ἐλυσαμεθα	ἐλυθην	ἐλυθημεν
2	ἐλυσας	ἐλυσατε	ἐλυσω	ἐλυσασθε	ἐλυθης	ἐλυθητε
3	ἐλυσε(ν)	ἐλυσαν	ἐλυσατο	ἐλυσαντο	ἐλυθη	ἐλυθησαν

	Perfect Indicative Active		**Perfect Indicative Middle/Passive**	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	λελυκα	λελυκαμεν	λελυμαι	λελυμεθα
2	λελυκας	λελυκατε	λελυσαι	λελυσθε
3	λελυκε(ν)	λελυκασι(ν)	λελυται	λελυνται

	Pluperfect Indicative Active (augment is optional)		**Pluperfect Indicative Middle/Passive (augment is optional)**	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	ἐλελυκειν	ἐλελυκειμεν	ἐλελυμην	ἐλελυμεθα
2	ἐλελυκεις	ἐλελυκειτε	ἐλελυσο	ἐλελυσθε
3	ἐλελυκει	ἐλελυκεισαν	ἐλελυτο	ἐλελυντο

Imperatives

Present Imperative	Active		Middle/Passive	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
2nd Person	λυε	λυετε	λυου	λυεσθε

Aorist Imperative	Active		Middle		Passive	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
2nd Person	λυσον	λυσατε	λυσαι	λυσασθε	λυθητι	λυθητε

Infinitives

Infinitives	Active	Middle	Passive
Present	λυειν	λυεσθαι	λυεσθαι (same as Mid.)
Aorist	λυσαι	λυσασθαι	λυθηναι

Participles

Present Active Participle	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	λυων	λυουσα	λυον	λυοντες	λυουσαι	λυοντα
Acc.	λυοντα	λυουσαν	λυον	λυοντας	λυουσας	λυοντα
Gen.	λυοντος	λυουσης	λυοντος	λυοντων	λυουσων	λυοντων
Dat.	λυοντι	λυουση	λυοντι	λυουσι(ν)	λυουσαις	λυουσι(ν)

Present Middle/Passive Participle	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	λυομενος	λυομενη	λυομενον	λυομενοι	λυομεναι	λυομενα
Acc.	λυομενον	λυομενην	λυομενον	λυομενους	λυομενας	λυομενα
Gen.	λυομενου	λυομενης	λυομενου	λυομενων	λυομενων	λυομενων
Dat.	λυομενω	λυομενη	λυομενω	λυομενοις	λυομεναις	λυομενοις

Aorist Active Participle Singular | Plural

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	λυσας	λυσασα	λυσαν	λυσαντες	λυσασαι	λυσαντα
Acc.	λυσαντα	λυσασαν	λυσαν	λυσαντας	λυσασας	λυσαντα
Gen.	λυσαντος	λυσασης	λυσαντος	λυσαντων	λυσασων	λυσαντων
Dat.	λυσαντι	λυσαση	λυσαντι	λυσασι(ν)	λυσασαις	λυσασι(ν)

Aorist Middle Participle Singular | Plural

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	λυσαμενος	λυσαμενη	λυσαμενον	λυσαμενοι	λυσαμεναι	λυσαμενα
Acc.	λυσαμενον	λυσαμενην	λυσαμενον	λυσαμενους	λυσαμενας	λυσαμενα
Gen.	λυσαμενου	λυσαμενης	λυσαμενου	λυσαμενων	λυσαμενων	λυσαμενων
Dat.	λυσαμενω	λυσαμενη	λυσαμενω	λυσαμενοις	λυσαμεναις	λυσαμενοις

Aorist Passive Participle Singular | Plural

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	λυθεις	λυθεισα	λυθεν	λυθεντες	λυθεισαι	λυθεντα
Acc.	λυθεντα	λυθεισαν	λυθεν	λυθεντας	λυθεισας	λυθεντα
Gen.	λυθεντος	λυθεισης	λυθεντος	λυθεντων	λυθεισων	λυθεντων
Dat.	λυθεντι	λυθειση	λυθεντι	λυθεισι(ν)	λυθεισαις	λυθεισι(ν)

Perfect Active Participle Singular | Plural

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	λελυκως	λελυκυια	λελυκος	λελυκοτες	λελυκυιαι	λελυκοτα
Acc.	λελυκοτα	λελυκυιαν	λελυκος	λελυκοτας	λελυκυιας	λελυκοτα
Gen.	λελυκοτος	λελυκυιας	λελυκοτος	λελυκοτων	λελυκυιων	λελυκοτων
Dat.	λελυκοτι	λελυκυια	λελυκοτι	λελυκοσι(ν)	λελυκυιαις	λελυκοσι(ν)

Perfect Middle/Passive Participle Singular | Plural

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	λελυμενος	λελυμενη	λελυμενον	λελυμενοι	λελυμεναι	λελυμενα
Acc.	λελυμενον	λελυμενην	λελυμενον	λελυμενους	λελυμενας	λελυμενα
Gen.	λελυμενου	λελυμενης	λελυμενου	λελυμενων	λελυμενων	λελυμενων
Dat.	λελυμενω	λελυμενη	λελυμενω	λελυμενοις	λελυμεναις	λελυμενοις

Participles continue on next page

Future Active Participle	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	λυσων	λυσουσα	λυσον	λυσοντες	λυσουσαι	λυσοντα
Acc.	λυσοντα	λυσουσαν	λυσον	λυσοντας	λυσουσας	λυσοντα
Gen.	λυσοντος	λυσουσης	λυσοντος	λυσοντων	λυσουσων	λυσοντων
Dat.	λυσοντι	λυσουση	λυσοντι	λυσουσι(ν)	λυσουσαις	λυσουσι(ν)

Future Middle Participle	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	λυσομενος	λυσομενη	λυσομενον	λυσομενοι	λυσομεναι	λυσομενα
Acc.	λυσομενον	λυσομενην	λυσομενον	λυσομενους	λυσομενας	λυσομενα
Gen.	λυσομενου	λυσομενης	λυσομενου	λυσομενων	λυσομενων	λυσομενων
Dat.	λυσομενω	λυσομενη	λυσομενω	λυσομενοις	λυσομεναις	λυσομενοις

Future Passive Participle

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	λυθησομενος	λυθησομενη	λυθησομενον	λυθησομενοι	λυθησομεναι	λυθησομενα
Acc.	λυθησομενον	λυθησομενην	λυθησομενον	λυθησομενους	λυθησομενας	λυθησομενα
Gen.	λυθησομενου	λυθησομενης	λυθησομενου	λυθησομενων	λυθησομενων	λυθησομενων
Dat.	λυθησομενω	λυθησομενη	λυθησομενω	λυθησομενοις	λυθησομεναις	λυθησομενοις

Subjunctives

	Present Subjunctive Active		Present Subjunctive Middle/Passive	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	λυω	λυομεν	λυομαι	λυομεθα
2	λυεις	λυετε	λυη	λυεσθε
3	λυει	λυουσι(ν)	λυεται	λυονται

	Aorist Subjunctive Active		Aorist Subjunctive Middle		Aorist Subjunctive Passive	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	ἐλυσα	ἐλυσαμεν	ἐλυσαμην	ἐλυσαμεθα	ἐλυθην	ἐλυθημεν
2	ἐλυσας	ἐλυσατε	ἐλυσω	ἐλυσασθε	ἐλυθης	ἐλυθητε
3	ἐλυσε(ν)	ἐλυσαν	ἐλυσατο	ἐλυσαντο	ἐλυθη	ἐλυθησαν

Optatives

Present Optative Active / Present Optative Middle/Passive

	Present Optative Active		**Present Optative Middle/Passive**	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	λυοιμι	λυοιμεν	λυοιμην	λυοιμεθα
2	λυοις	λυοιτε	λυοιο	λυοισθε
3	λυοι	λυοιεν	λυοιτο	λυοιντο

Aorist Optative Active / Aorist Optative Middle / Aorist Optative Passive

	Aorist Optative Active		**Aorist Optative Middle**		**Aorist Optative Passive**	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	λυσαιμι	λυσαιμεν	λυσαιμην	λυσαιμεθα	λυθειην	λυθειημεν
2	λυσαις	λυσαιτε	λυσαιο	λυσαισθε	λυθειης	λυθειητε
3	λυσαι	λυσαιεν	λυσαιτο	λυσαιντο	λυθειη	λυθειησαν

Future Optative Active / Future Optative Middle / Future Optative Passive

	Future Optative Active		**Future Optative Middle**		**Future Optative Passive**	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
1	λυσοιμι	λυσοιμεν	λυσοιμην	λυσοιμεθα	λυθησοιμην	λυθησοιμεθα
2	λυσοις	λυσοιτε	λυσοιο	λυσοισθε	λυθησοιο	λυθησοισθε
3	λυσοι	λυσοιεν	λυσοιτο	λυσοιντο	λυθησοιτο	λυθησοιντο

Appendix I ("EYE"): Conspectus of Noun Endings

	2nd Decl. Masc. λογος	2nd Decl. Neut ἐργον	1st Decl. Fem. eta ζωη	1st Decl. Fem. alpha ἡμερα	1st Decl. Fem. mixed δοξα	1st Decl. Masc. eta μαθητης	1st Decl. Masc. alpha Ἑλιας	3rd Decl. Masc./Fem. σωτηρ, σωτηρος, Stem: σωτηρ-	3rd Decl. Neut. σωμα, σωματος, Stem: σωματ- except where shown
Nom.Sing.	-ος	-ον	-η	-α	-α	-ης	-ας	----	----
Acc. Sing.	-ον	-ον	-ην	-αν	-αν	-ην	-αν	-α	----
Gen. Sing.	-ου	-ου	-ης	-ας	-ης	-ου	-ου	-ος	-ος
Dat. Sing.	-ῳ	-ῳ	-ῃ	-ᾳ	-ῃ	-ῃ	-ᾳ	-ι	-ι
Voc. Sing	-ε	-ον	-η	-α	-α	-α	-α	σωτερ	----
Nom. Pl.	-οι	-α	-αι	-αι	-αι	-αι	-αι	-ες	-α
Acc. Pl.	-ους	-α	-ας	-ας	-ας	-ας	-ας	-ας	-α
Gen. Pl.	-ων	-ων	-ων	-ων	-ων	-ων	-ων	-ων	-ων
Dat. Pl.	-οις	-οις	-αις	-αις	-αις	-αις	-αις	-σι(ν)	σωμασι(ν)
Voc. Pl.	-οι	-α	-αι	-αι	-αι	-αι	-αι	-ες	-α

	3rd Decl. -ις χαρις, χαριτος, Stem: χαριτ- except where shown	3rd Decl. -ος γενος, γενους Stem: γεν-	3rd Decl. Fem – ις/-σις, πολις, πολεως, Stem: πολ-	3rd Decl. Masc. -ευς, βασιλευς, βασιλεως, Stem: βασιλ-	Ἰησους Stem: Ἰησ-	ἰχθυς, ἰχθυος, Stem: ἰχθυ-	Μωυσης	νους
Nom.Sing.	χαρις	-ος	-ις	-ευς	-ους	-ς	-ης	νους
Acc. Sing.	χαριν	-ος	-ιν	-εα	-ουν	-ν	-ην	νουν
Gen. Sing.	χαριτος	-ους	-εως	-εως	-ου	-ος	-εως	νοος
Dat. Sing.	χαριτι	-ει	-ει	-ει	-ου	-ι	-ει/-ῃ	νοι
Voc. Sing	χαρι	-ος	-ι	-ευ	-ου	ἰχθυ	-η	νου
Nom. Pl.	χαριτες	-η	-εις	-εις		-ες		
Acc. Pl.	χαριτας	-η	-εις	-εις		-ας		
Gen. Pl.	χαριτων	-ων	-εων	-εων		-ων		
Dat. Pl.	χαρισι(ν)	-εσι(ν)	-εσι(ν)	-ευσι(ν)		-σι(ν)		
Voc. Pl.	χαριτες	-η	-ες	-ες		-ες		